

# دانلود کتاب



## فاوست

نویسنده : یوهان ولفگانگ فون گوته



# FAUST

## I & II



PRINCETON  
CLASSICS

JOHANN WOLFGANG VON  
GOETHE

*Edited and translated by Stuart Atkins*  
*With a new foreword by David E. Wellbery*





# FAUST

## I & II



PRINCETON  
CLASSICS

JOHANN WOLFGANG VON  
GOETHE

*Edited and translated by Stuart Atkins*  
*With a new foreword by David E. Wellbery*

# GOETHE FAUST I & II

# GOETHE

---

SELECTED POEMS

FAUST I & II

ESSAYS ON ART AND LITERATURE

FROM MY LIFE: POETRY AND TRUTH (PARTS ONE TO THREE)

FROM MY LIFE: CAMPAIGN IN FRANCE 1792 • SIEGE OF MAINZ (PART  
FOUR)

ITALIAN JOURNEY

EARLY VERSE DRAMAS AND PROSE PLAYS

VERSE PLAYS AND EPIC

WILHELM MEISTER'S APPRENTICESHIP

CONVERSATIONS OF GERMAN REFUGEES & WILHELM MEISTER'S

JOURNEYMAN YEAR OR THE RENUNCIANTS

THE SORROWS OF YOUNG WERTHER • ELECTIVE AFFINITIES • NOVELLA

SCIENTIFIC STUDIES

---

**Collected Works in 12 Volumes**

EXECUTIVE EDITORIAL BOARD  
Victor Lange, Princeton University  
Eric Blackall, Cornell University  
Cyrus Hamlin, Yale University

---

**Goethe's Collected Works, Volume 2**

Johann Wolfgang von

**GOETHE**

## **Faust I & II**

---

**Edited and Translated by Stuart Atkins**

**With a new introduction by David E. Wellbery**

**Princeton University Press**

**Princeton and Oxford**



Published by Princeton University Press, 41 William Street,  
Princeton, New Jersey 08540  
In the United Kingdom by Princeton University Press, 6 Oxford Street,  
Woodstock, Oxfordshire OX20 1TW  
Copyright © 1984 by Suhrkampnnsel Publishers, Boston, Inc.  
Foreword to the Princeton Classics edition copyright © 2014 by Princeton University Press

All Rights Reserved  
Reprinted in paperback by arrangement with Suhrkamp Verlag

First Princeton Paperback printing, 1994  
First Princeton Classics edition printing, 2014  
Paperback ISBN 978-0-691-16229-4  
Library of Congress Control Number: 93027617

Princeton University Press books are printed on acid-free paper and meet the guidelines for  
permanence and durability of the Committee on Production Guidelines for Book Longevity of  
the Council on Library Resources

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

# CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION xi

**FAUST: A Tragedy**

DEDICATION 1

PRELUDE ON THE STAGE 3

PROLOGUE IN HEAVEN 9

## **PART ONE**

NIGHT (Faust's Study I: Easter Eve) 13

OUTSIDE THE CITY GATE (Easter-Day Walk) 23

FAUST'S STUDY (II: Easter Night) 32

FAUST'S STUDY (III: Pact and Student Scene) 40

AUERBACHS WINE-CELLAR IN LEIPZIG 53

WITCH'S KITCHEN (Rejuvenation) 60

A STREET (I: Margarete Accosted) 67

EVENING (Margarete's Room I) 69

PROMENADE (Street II: Mephistopheles' Report) 72

THE NEIGHBOR'S HOUSE (The Story of Schwerdtlein) 73

A STREET (III: False Witness) 77

(Martha's) GARDEN (I: Promenading Couples) 79

A SUMMERHOUSE (Martha's Garden II) 82

FOREST AND CAVE (Faust's Conscience) 83

GRETCHEN'S ROOM (II: Margarete at Her Spinning  
Wheel) 87

MARTHA'S GARDEN (III: Faust's Credo) 88

AT THE WELL (Gretchen and Lieschen) 91

BY THE RAMPARTS (Gretchen's Prayer) 92

NIGHT (Street IV: Valentine's Death) 93

CATHEDRAL (Mass, with Organ and Choir) 97  
WALPURGIS NIGHT (Faust on the Brocken) 99  
    WALPURGIS NIGHT'S DREAM (Intermezzo) 108  
AN EXPANSE OF OPEN COUNTRY (Faust's Rage) 112  
NIGHT: OPEN FIELDS (The Gibbet) 114  
PRISON (Margarete's Death) 114

## **PART TWO, in Five Acts**

### **Act I**

A PLEASANT LANDSCAPE (Faust's Recovery) 121  
AN IMPERIAL PALACE  
    THE THRONE ROOM (Council of State) 124  
    A GREAT HALL (Masquerade and Faust's Masque) 132  
    A GARDEN (Benefits of Paper Money) 154  
    A DARK GALLERY (The Mothers) 158  
    BRIGHTLY LIT ROOMS (Waiting for Faust) 162  
    KNIGHTS' HALL (The Rape of Helen) 163

### **Act II**

A HIGH-VAULTED, NARROW GOTHIC ROOM (Faust's Study IV) 169  
LABORATORY (Creation of Homunculus) 175  
CLASSICAL WALPURGIS NIGHT 180  
    THE PHARSALIAN FIELDS 180 (Erichtho and the Aëronauts 180 • By the  
        Sphinxes 181 • Peneus and Nymphs 186 • Faust, Chiron, and  
        Manto 187 • Again by the Upper Peneus: Seismos' Mountain 191 •  
        Mephistopheles and the Lamiae 196 • Anaxagoras, Thales, and  
        Homunculus 200 • The Phorcides 202)  
    ROCKY INLETS OF THE AEGEAN SEA 204 (Nereus 206 • Proteus 209 •  
        Galatea 214 • Homunculus merges with the sea 215)

### **Act III (Helen: Classico-Romantic Phantasmagoria. An Intermezzo)**

BEFORE MENELAUS' PALACE AT SPARTA (Helen's Flight)  
    216  
INNER COURTYARD OF A CASTLE (The Wooing and

Defense of Helen) 231  
A SHADED GROVE (The Life and Death of Euphorion) 241

#### Act IV

HIGH MOUNTAINS 254 (Margarete Remembered 254 • Faust's  
Great Plan 256 • The Emperor in Danger 258 • Mephistopheles'  
Three Mighty Men 260)  
ON A FOOTHILL (Defeat of the Anti-Emperor) 261  
THE ANTI-EMPEROR'S TENT (Rewards of Victory) 272

#### Act V

A BROAD LANDSCAPE (Baucis and Philemon) 279  
FAUST'S PALACE  
BEFORE THE PALACE 281 (Faust's Discontent 281 • The  
Destruction of Baucis, Philemon and Their Guest 285)  
FAUST ON THE BALCONY 286 (Mephistopheles' Report 286 •  
Four Gray Women in the Courtyard 287)  
WITHIN THE PALACE (Care, and the Blinding of Faust) 288  
THE LARGE OUTER COURTYARD 290 (Faust's Death and  
Interment 292 • Mephistopheles Defeated 295)  
MOUNTAIN GORGES (Faust's Vision of Heaven and His  
Reunion with Margarete) 299

Chronology of the Composition of *Faust* 306

Goethe's *Faust* and the Present Translation 307

Bibliographical Note 314

Explanatory Notes 315

# INTRODUCTION

Due to its range and complexity, Goethe's *Faust* invites metaphors of all-inclusiveness. A vast continent, one is tempted to say, a world unto itself, a cosmos. World literature (a concept invented by Goethe) knows several en-compassing works, but their formal principles typically make for easy survey. Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey* are epics in twenty-four books, a pattern mimicked in Vergil's *Aeneid*, in which, of course, the number of books is halved. Dante's *Divine Comedy* unfolds in three parts, the cantos of each arranged according to theologically inspired symmetries. Milton's comparable world-historical poems yield cognate results. Moreover, all the mentioned works are cast in metrical patterns sustained from beginning to end. For *Faust*, a metrical jungle, no transparent principle of organization is available, and, for this reason, the reader engaging with the work for the first time (and the experienced reader, too) will do well to consult a map. Bare summary has its benefits. That's where we shall start.

*Faust* consists of two large, but asymmetrical parts. The first divides into what has come to be known as the "scholar's tragedy"—Faust's despair at attaining genuine knowledge, his near suicide, the formation of his alliance with the devil Mephistopheles—and the "Gretchen tragedy"—Faust's illicit and disastrous love affair with Margarete, called Gretchen. Between these two segments are wedged two transitional scenes, the zany "Witches Kitchen," in which the elderly Faust is rejuvenated by a magical potion, and the rowdy "Auerbach's Wine Cellar in Leipzig," a drinking bout that spills into violence. These two scenes anticipate the Satanic festival of "Walpurgis Night" that provides the Gretchen tragedy with its sexual subtext while delaying, in good Shakespearean fashion, the onset of the final catastrophe. The scholar's tragedy derives its internal coherence from Faust's mood swings, which find a kind of precarious stabilization in the agreement achieved between Faust and Mephistopheles. The Gretchen tragedy, by contrast, conducts the humble, inexperienced girl at its center to extremes of tragic experience worthy of an Oedipus or Lear.

**Part Two** of *Faust* is internally even more heterogeneous,

consisting of five loosely connected acts, each of which takes place in a different sphere of experience. It opens with a scene titled “A Pleasant Landscape” that, although included within Act I, is clearly something like a metaphysical prelude to the entire second part. Faust, awakening from a healing sleep following the trauma of the Gretchen tragedy, attempts to look directly at the rising sun, the very source of life, but must turn away, temporarily blinded. This supplies the play with the central figure (blindness) of its tragic conclusion. Act I proper shows Faust at the Imperial Court, where, aided as always by Mephistopheles, he orchestrates entertainments, draws the shade of Helen of Troy from the abyss of the past, and pulls off a bit of financial wizardry (the invention of paper money).

Act II returns to Faust’s Gothic study where the play began. Wagner, Faust’s amanuensis and pedantic counterpart from [Part One](#), has succeeded in creating a homunculus, a pure spirit whose only “body” is the test tube or “vial” he hops about in. We may take Homunculus, who becomes the leading character of Act II, as paradigmatic of the imaginary extravagance Goethe allows himself—and succeeds in making artistically necessary—throughout [Part Two](#). As pure mind, Homunculus has telepathic talents and he puts them to use interpreting for us the dream unfolding in the mind of the sleeping Faust. No latency here: Faust’s oneiric vision pictures the conception of Helen in the coital embrace of the swan-disguised Zeus and the bathing Leda. That dream gives the dramatic action its direction. Act II concludes with an elaborate “Classical Walpurgis Night” in which Faust, Mephistopheles, and Homunculus make their way across a series of encounters with somewhat obscure mythical figures. Mephistopheles finds his ancient counter-part among the one-eyed, one-toothed Phorcydes. Homunculus, rejecting his purely mental existence, smashes his vial on the mollusk shell that transports the lovely Galatea over the waves. Absent from the stage, Faust sets off in search of Helen.

In Act III of [Part Two](#), Faust finds himself in ancient Greece, where, in the guise of a late-medieval lord, he is joined in love with the beautiful but ghostly Helen only to see their offspring, Euphorion, fall from the cliffs to his death, at which point Helen too disappears. The act begins in the mode of Attic tragedy, transitions to Renaissance pastoral, and concludes as opera. The aesthetic theories of Goethe’s time all revolved around the distinction between Classical (ancient)

and Romantic (Christian, modern) forms of art and life. Viewed as a whole, Act III stages the momentary, but finally ill-fated synthesis of these historical-artistic worldviews. Act IV turns to the material forces that drive the modern world. Its subject is warfare and its dramatic action has Faust and Mephistopheles supply the technological and strategic innovations that secure victory for the emperor's forces. Faust's reward for this service is a swath of land at sea's edge, a province onto which he can impress his political will.

Consequently, in Act V Faust appears as a colonial lord who undertakes a vast project of engineering, both civil—building dikes to hold back the seas—and social—a utopian community of “autonomous” individuals. But Mephistophelian forces are at work here as well: piracy, slave labor, infernal flames. All of this ends with the murder of the ancient couple Philemon and Baucis, for which Faust bears responsibility, and then Faust's own death, when, blinded by Care, he mistakes the sound of the gravediggers' grim labor for the realization of his engineering enterprise. There follows a coda of sorts in which Faust's “immortal part” is snatched from Mephistopheles' grasp and borne upward through a medieval hierarchy of souls toward what appears to be a guiding feminine principle. Margarete makes her return as a penitent Beatrice serving as Faust's heavenly advocate and guide.

Our map must not neglect the fact that the entire work is introduced and framed by three extra-dramatic segments. The first is a poetic “Dedication,” a puzzling designation since there is no dedicatee, no rhetoric of admiration and gratitude, nor plea for acceptance of the modest gift of the poetic work to follow. In fact, the dedicatory poem is inwardly directed, a meditation on the self-driven and ghostly nature of poetic creation. This is followed by a “Prelude on the Stage,” a meta-theatrical episode that juxtaposes the views of Poet, Manager, and Player, the last mentioned clearly being a clown or fool. The operative fiction is that the play to follow is not yet complete, and the verbal exchanges among the three role-bearers bring out the clash of their individual conceptions of what a play should be. The reader is introduced to two essential principles of the entire *Faust* poem: the employment of ironic self-commentary and the juxtaposition of heterogeneous stylistic and ideological registers. The final preparatory segment is the “Prologue in Heaven,” in which the three roles configured in the “Prelude” have meta-morphosed into the

triad of Archangels (Poet), Lord (Manager), and Mephistopheles (Player/Clown). If the “Prologue” provides the theological frame of the play (it recalls the dialogue between God and Satan in the *Book of Job*), it does so through a filter of irony and self-conscious theatricality. Nevertheless, the “Prologue” does introduce two concepts, the tense interplay of which will determine everything that follows: Faustian “striving” and Mephistophelian “negation.” With these notions in place, the drama of Faust’s life can commence.

For the reader who scans this map, the question that naturally comes to mind is: What is this *Faust* of Goethe’s anyway? To what literary kind does it belong? Madame de Stael observed in her *De l’Allemagne* (1810) that the work belongs to no known genre, suggesting, somewhat desperately, that it is best considered the formless “dream” of its genius author. This stab-in-the-dark judgment is all the more notable because when de Stael wrote her influential defense of German letters the only published portion of *Faust* at hand was the relatively plot-driven [Part One](#), which had appeared in 1808. Had she known [Part Two](#), completed just six months before the poet’s death on March 22, 1832, her perplexity would doubtless have been greater still. Here, every remnant of dramatic intrigue is cast aside and each of the five acts seems independent, a world unto itself. The “tragedy,” as Goethe himself labeled the work, unfolds with the sweep of epic, although it obviously diverges from the pattern established by Homer and Virgil and modified by Ariosto, Milton, and Klopstock. An additional twist to the question of genre stems from the work’s thoroughgoing lyrical intensity. From Margarete’s folk-song tone in [Part One](#), to Faust’s artful love lyric in Act III of [Part Two](#), to the visionary canticle of the Chorus Mysticus that sounds the play’s last note, Goethe pulls out all the stops of lyrical expressivity. Should we infer, as some critics have, that *Faust* is a *ragout*, a stew in which float chunks of every literary kind? The gamut of styles Goethe draws on—from blank obscenity to mystical conceit, from ceremonious rhetoric to deeply personal lyricism, from learned allusion to ludic nonsense—would seem to support this assessment.

An alternative view is suggested by a thought Goethe advanced in the historical-critical treatise appended to his *West-East Divan* (1819). There he famously hypothesizes that beneath the apparently boundless variety of poetic conventions just three “natural forms” or modes establish the coordinates of verbal art: lucid narration,



enthusiastic excitement, and personal engagement in an unfolding action. These abstract types achieve their most familiar embodiments as, respectively, epic, lyric, and drama. The thought culminates in the claim that the three modes, together with their various intermediate stages, constitute a “system” or “circle,” much like the circular array of colors Goethe identified in his optical studies. Moreover, according to Goethe’s account in the *Divan* treatise, individual poetic works can combine all three modes, the ballad and Attic tragedy being prominent examples of such fusion. The relevance of this to *Faust* is evident. Goethe’s highly original genre theory supports the contention that *Faust* be regarded as a synthesis of poetry’s three natural forms, along with their transitional or hybrid phases. Bending Madame de Stael’s surmise toward a meaning she never intended, we might say that *Faust* is the dream of poetry in its totality. Its ambition is to reflect the full spectrum of possibilities intrinsic to the literary traditions Goethe so assiduously and productively labored to inherit. On its surface the work may seem farraginous, but its sponsoring vision is deeply holistic.

That vision, it is important to emphasize, was not there from the beginning. It realized itself across a protracted genesis, the phases of which punctuated some sixty years of Goethe’s mature life. Four major periods of concentrated creativity can be distinguished. The initial period falls within the years 1772 to 1775. Goethe, born in 1749, was in the storm-and-stress exuberance out of which his historical play *Götz von Berlichingen* (1773) and his epistolary novel *The Sufferings of Young Werther* (1774), as well as some of the most memorable poems in the German language emerged. During that effervescent time he sketched plans for several plays tracing the destinies of exceptional individuals whose vocations shattered the conventions of their age. Dramatic fragments on Mohammed, Caesar, Socrates, and Prometheus testify to the feverish productivity characteristic of this phase of Goethe’s artistic life. Of these early dramatic designs, the furthest advanced is a *Faust* fragment spectacularly discovered in 1887 among the papers of a certain Luise von Göschhausen, a Weimar lady-in-waiting who had made a copy from Goethe’s own manuscript. This early version—the so-called *Urfaust*—contains the core scenes of the Gretchen tragedy of [Part One](#), most of which found their way with surprisingly few alterations into the text that Goethe later published.

Goethe's literary mentor at this time was Johann Gottfried Herder (1744– 1802), whose views had liberated the young poet from the supercilious artificiality of rococo playfulness and drawn his astonished attention both to the expressive power of folk poetry and to the amplitude of human experience that Shakespeare's dramas bring to the stage. Shakespeare became Goethe's model and "nature" his mantra for everything wanting in contemporary culture: original invention, emotional authenticity, the heights and depths of human possibility. Such was his state of mind when Goethe seized on the story of the late-medieval magician Faust, whose exploits he condensed into a searing love story rendered in a swiftly paced suite of momentary scenes.

This brings us to the second phase in the work's evolution. In 1775, Goethe accepted the invitation of the young Archduke Karl August to move to the small city of Weimar where the ducal court of Saxony-Weimar-Eisenach is located. Apart from occasional journeys, Goethe would spend the remainder of his life there, acquiring a daunting portfolio of administrative positions that earned him the status of privy councilor. Goethe's manifold achievements in Weimar public life (it is fair to say that he transformed the provincial town into a center of European culture) are a story unto itself. That story concerns us here only insofar as the demands of his new position prevented Goethe from completing major literary projects. Thus, his *Faust* remained untouched while its author was preoccupied with worldly matters, taking up new interests and forging important personal relationships.

Then, in September of 1786, Goethe suddenly, and unbeknownst even to the Archduke, set out for Italy, where he remained until May of 1788. Goethe himself referred to his Italian sojourn as a "rebirth," and one might even say that he went there with the intention of making himself anew. His *Italian Journey*, based on his diaries and correspondence from the time, but written and edited between 1813 and 1817, gives a full account of this process of self-education beneath the Italian sky and in the presence of unimaginable natural and artistic abundance. Here, Goethe elaborated what is often referred to as his "classicism": a unified view of art, nature, and society that he would draw on, expand, and deepen for the remainder of his life. It was in Italy that Goethe encountered many of the paintings that would be alluded to in the immense cultural tapestry woven into [Part](#)

Two of *Faust*. And it was in Italy that he grasped for the first time the lawful character of natural transformation, what he would later call “metamorphosis,” the leading idea of the breathtaking array of scientific studies he pursued throughout his life.

The Italian sojourn afforded Goethe the sustained concentration needed to resume the various literary projects he had been unable to complete in Weimar. Most important from our perspective was the work on what would become his series of “classical” dramas. *Iphigenia in Tauris* was recast in verse, the historical drama *Egmont* was brought to completion, and work on the play *Torquato Tasso* advanced, although it would only be finished after Goethe’s return to Weimar. In Italy, Goethe came to view his career as an unfolding unity and began to assemble an edition of his collected writings. In this context he returned to the *Faust* drama begun in the early 1770s, a work stylistically and, for that matter, ideologically quite distant from his newly earned sense of classical moderation. Nonetheless, he drafted a plan for the entire play and began a labor of expansion and alteration that lasted until January of 1790, when he sent a manuscript entitled *Faust. A Fragment* to his publisher. The *Fragment* rearranges the *Urfaust* sequence and supplements it with new scenes, notably the magical rejuvenation of “Witch’s Kitchen.” “Auerbach’s Wine-Cellar in Leipzig” is rendered in verse and—surprisingly—the final “Prison” scene is excised, thus breaking off Margarete’s tragedy with the dramatically impressive, but inconclusive scene titled “Cathedral.” The first generation of *Faust* readers, a generation that included the early Romantics, encountered the drama in this fragmentary form.

Beginning in the mid-1790s, Goethe again resumed work on *Faust*. This is the period of what might be called his “programmatic classicism”: the collaboration with Friedrich Schiller (1759–1805), the publication of his second novel, *Wilhelm Meister’s Apprenticeship* (1795/96), as well as the novella collection *Conversations of German Refugees* (1795), and the modern (or bourgeois) epic poem in hexameters *Hermann and Dorothea* (1797). It is also a time of intense scientific activity. Goethe’s *Morphology of Plants* had appeared in 1790, followed by his *Contributions on Optics* (1791–92) that would, after much experimental work, flow into the brilliant *Theory of Colors* (1810) mentioned in passing above. During this period, Goethe promulgated his systematic views on art in the periodical *Propylaea* (1798–1800), co-edited with his most important mentor in matters of

the visual arts, the Swiss painter/writer Johann Heinrich Meyer (1760–1832).

In the background of this cultural-scientific program, of course, lurked the French Revolution and its aftermath, soon to spill over into the Napoleonic Wars (1803–1815) that would change the face of Europe. Goethe's work on the *Faust* project during this period included the addition of the "Dedication" and the "Prelude on the Stage" and the gradual solution of the delicate problem of Faust's "wager" with the devil. The "Prison" scene was reintegrated into the drama, its drastic emotionality now tempered by rhymed verse. During the first years of the new century, virtually all of [Part One](#) found its final form, a plan for [Part Two](#) was sketched, and even a quite polished first version of what would become Act III of [Part Two](#) was composed. Publication was delayed, however, as the turbulence of war—in 1805/6 Napoleon's troops defeated the Austrians at Austerlitz and the Prussians at Jena—spilled into Goethe's own life. When *Faust* [Part One](#) did appear in 1808 in the new edition of Goethe's *Works*, the Holy Roman Empire, which had defined the political order of Central Europe for more than a thousand years, had come to an end.

In the main, the composition of [Part Two](#) of *Faust* fell between the years 1825–1831. It is, then, the work of a man in the eighth decade of his life. The productivity of Goethe's late years is awesome to behold. At the age of sixty he brought out his profound and intricate novel, *Elective Affinities* (1809). At seventy he published his greatest lyric achievement, the cycle in the spirit of classical Persian poetry, *West-East Divan* (1819). His scientific work, issued regularly between 1817 and 1824 in the serial *On Morphology*, achieved an international following. A second serial, *On Art and Antiquity*, appeared in six compendious volumes between 1816 and 1832. And in 1829, the definitive version of his fourth novel, *Wilhelm Meister's Journeyman Years*, reached its uncomprehending readers. Throughout this last phase of his life, a phase that knew both serious illness and shattering personal loss, Goethe maintained that the completion of *Faust II* was his "main piece of business." In August of 1831, almost eighty-two years to the day from his birth, Goethe wrapped up and sealed the package containing his *Faust* manuscript. He would not live to see it published. The year of the poet's death had not yet passed, though, when *Faust II* appeared as the first volume of the *Posthumous Works*.

As the foregoing brief narrative of the work's genesis demonstrates, Goethe's *Faust* unites diverse temporal strata within its finished form. However, not only Goethe's personal history—his maturation, loves, travels, and artistic projects—influences the shaping of the play. In the course of the work's arduous production, the European world, too, was utterly transformed: politically, scientifically, economically, philosophically, and aesthetically. These changes, refracted through one of the most expansive and agile minds Europe has ever known, enter into the *Faust* drama and achieve there a complex, and yet internally consistent, fictional embodiment. For this reason, it is often said that Goethe's *Faust* is *the* poem of modernity. The thought is that the entire work is sustained by a forward-moving drive epitomized in that key word introduced in the "Prologue in Heaven": striving (*Streben*). Faust's character consists of just this: that he incessantly reaches beyond the satisfactions of the present moment, that he shakes off inherited structures of thought and morality, that his every accomplishment is merely the platform for the next undertaking. Whereas dramatic characters are typically defined by the substantive goals they pursue, for Faust, pursuit itself, regardless of goal, is primary. Exactly this open-endedness, this movement of self-transcendence, is the form of modern subjectivity. Aristotle had imagined that every being—including humankind—is endowed with a goal toward which its efforts are directed and the attainment of which is its unique perfection. This concept of a universe of preordained "places," in which action realizes its purpose and thereby achieves rest and fulfillment, was carried over into the Christian Middle Ages. With modernity, however, the closed universe opens onto infinity. In the anthropology of Thomas Hobbes (1588–1679), the Aristotelian principle of internal purpose (entelechy) is replaced by a principle of self-aggrandizement that Hobbes called "restless desire." Such restlessness is at the center of the philosophies of subjectivity that were formulated by Goethe's contemporaries. It is recognizable, for example, in Fichte's notion of the subject as self-constituting activity, in Hegel's notion of negativity, in Schopenhauer's concept of Will. *Faust* is an exploration of how human life unfolds when it emancipates itself from the ordinations of tradition and embarks on a project of energetic self-assertion and self-optimization. The decisive point, of course, is that Goethe stages the dynamic of modernity that his protagonist embodies as a tragic process.

The examination of a single thread of its intricate fabric must suffice here to illustrate how the poem gives tragic shape to the transformation of the world modernity brings about. In the scene entitled “Forest and Cave,” Faust compares himself to a mountain “cataract” crashing down from the heights and sweeping the idyllic “cottage” that symbolizes Margarete’s life into ruin. The metaphor has its immediate pertinence within the disastrous love story of the so-called Gretchen tragedy. But in the course of the entire poem, the shattering effect Faust’s passion has on Margarete’s world comes to exemplify a more encompassing cataclysm: European man’s self-emancipation from a world order at once cosmic, religious, and political. The manifold effects of this historical process—from a volatile economy of credit to the violence of mechanized warfare, from colonization to forced resettlements—are unfolded across [Part Two](#). In the figure of Faust, modernity is imagined as a thirst that won’t be slaked, a process of creative destruction. In “Forest and Cave,” Faust figures his condition as one of metaphysical “homelessness” (3348). We may interpret this to mean a self-willed exile from the world as the site of hospitality and welcome. Such is Goethe’s account of modern subjectivity. Once this is seen, we can comprehend why the play’s final act begins by summoning from the depths of time the mythic couple Philemon and Baucis.

In Ovid’s *Metamorphoses*, the elderly husband and wife are the paradigm of hospitality; the gods Jupiter and Mercury, pausing at the pair’s impoverished cottage to request refreshment, recognize that there is no richer gift than the couple’s spontaneous generosity. But Goethe evokes the mythic couple to an altogether different dramatic effect. The opening sequence of Act V shows the torching of their cottage merely because Faust covets their little piece of real estate. The sweet death that Ovid’s story affords Philemon and Baucis is replaced in Goethe’s drama by their murder at the hands of Mephistopheles’ thugs. Thus, Margarete’s ruination, which derives from the earliest stage of the poem’s composition, is mirrored in the immolation of the gentle couple’s cottage, conceived probably during the first months of 1831. The thought that finds its way to poetic articulation across sixty years of creative life is, finally, a single thought. Modernity explodes the very idea of the world as hospitable home. It deprives us of the experience of the world as a gift and chokes the pious gratitude that responds to such experience. This is



merely one strand of Goethe's synthetic achievement, but it provides an important clue for the reader. For what the exfoliation of the cottage metaphor shows is that the implacable logic governing both parts of the *Faust* tragedy is rooted in the insatiable character of Faustian striving.

From its beginnings in the sixteenth century (the first chapbook relating Faust's bargain with the devil appeared in 1587), the Faust legend gave voice to a broadly shared anxiety that hunger for worldly knowledge and power could displace humankind's most urgent concern, preparation for eternal salvation. The story of Faust's pact with the devil was clearly meant as a cautionary tale. However, already in Christopher Marlowe's tragedy (ca. 1590), especially in the conjuring of Helen of Troy, the rewards of magical empowerment are so compellingly imagined as to threaten subversion of the plot's moral and theological point. Even in the chapbook's final scene, which shows a Faustus rueful of his horrible error and eager to convince his fellow academics not to follow his example, the moralizing has a tinny ring. Ambivalence of this sort, oscillating between vicarious delight and terror, is the source of myth. The chiaroscuro of fascination provokes a cultural repetition compulsion, the incapacity to be done with the tale once and for all. The cultural life of myth consists in transformative retelling. Since Johann Spiess published his chapbook in 1587, Faust's story has been reconceived countless times in virtually every literary form and with multiple refractions in image and music. Goethe made his first acquaintance with the legend in a puppet show; Heinrich Heine recast it as a "dance poem"; today the mythic complex is elaborated in a series of lurid comics. As the critic Ian Watt observed, the modern world has produced few myths of such abiding appeal. Perhaps only the legend of Don Juan evinces comparable regenerative potency.

Throughout its variegated history, the idea of a pact or contract has remained the myth's foundational premise, motivating both the devil's service during Faust's exploits and the frightening dénouement. This narrative device, however, becomes increasingly difficult to deploy as the progressive disenchantment of the world hollows out belief in the devil's personal existence. Thomas Mann's novel *Dr. Faustus* (1948) is a telling example. There the contract is still in place; the price the Faustus figure must pay for unheard-of artistic inspiration is the hell of syphilitic madness. However, Mann

attenuates the premise of devil and pact with such irony that readers understand it as a self-consciously employed fiction, an extended metaphor for historical horrors so extreme as to defy literal depiction. A second historical tendency in the evolution of the Faust myth likewise comes to the fore in Mann's novel. The protagonist is no longer classifiable simply as a sinner. To be sure, he is deeply flawed by what seems an inborn coldness or incapacity to love, but his aspirations are nevertheless directed toward the highest cultural values, and his unstinting refusal of compromise is meant to elicit the reader's respect. Indeed, the very features that render Mann's Faustus figure admirable are at the source of his transgression.

The historical record shows, then, that a myth born out of a straightforward moral and theological parsing of the world achieves its most artistically distinguished reinventions in the mode of ironic distance and moral complexity. This holds for Goethe's drama as much as for Mann's novel. In fact, Goethe transforms the structural core of the mythic precedent with two richly significant inventions. He replaces the traditional pact with a wager and he grants his protagonist, despite the human wreckage left in his wake, an ambiguous salvation. Interpretive controversy surrounding these two innovations continues unabated.

Each reader will arrive at her own understanding of the wager between Faust and Mephistopheles, but a few general observations may usefully highlight its structural significance. Goethe's recasting of the traditional pact as a wager transforms the temporal horizon of the mythic story line. The pact not only fixed a definite time limit to Faustus' devil-enabled exploits, it also rendered the final outcome, damnation, ineluctable. The crucial property of a wager, however, is that the result is not settled in advance. Futurity thus acquires an insistent presence in the poem. In observing this, we are not merely viewing the work from the outside, but addressing one of its most pervasive thematic concerns. Goethe's *Faust* is about being in-time, about the dynamics of process and the way desire propels us beyond whatever moment we happen to occupy. According to the conditions laid down in the wager, what will decide the winner (and loser) is Faust's relationship to time:

If I should ever say to any moment:  
Tarry, remain!—you are so fair!



then you may lay your fetters on me,  
then I will gladly be destroyed. (1699–1702)

The semantic density of the passage defies explication. Faust is clearly betting on the unquenchable character of his striving, on the drive thrusting him ever onward. However, by rejecting what to his eyes appears as stasis or merely finite satisfaction, he may be foreclosing the possibility of experiencing the fullness of life (happiness), or beauty, or love, all of which require wholehearted investment in the present. Striving contains the potential for destruction and betrayal, and this potential too is built into the terms of cooperation to which Faust and Mephistopheles agree. In this sense, the wager ties the knot of tragic complication that leads to Margarete's horrible fate in [Part One](#) and to the death of Philemon and Baucis in [Part Two](#).

Because it lays down criteria for deciding the dramatic outcome, the wager focuses the reader's attention especially on those aspects of the action relevant to the question of Faust's desire and its relation to time. In the course of the play, three scenes occur when the fullness of the present moment seems close at hand. They are the moments of the play's greatest dramatic urgency. In the "Prison" scene of [Part One](#), Margarete, summoned out of her madness by the voice of her beloved, echoes the language of the wager with her plea: "Don't hurry! Stay!" (4479). Her love, in contradistinction to Faust's, seems capable of unconditional investment in the present moment. Of course, the day of her execution has already begun to dawn and hers is a wild, unrealizable wish. Nevertheless, it fleetingly evokes the possibility of the experience of time Faust had excluded for himself. And the final vision of the play will transform Margarete's love into a spiritual-cosmic force, as if love lived completely were the very source of salvation.

Love in a more classical and idealistic (albeit no less erotic) register is at the center of the second experience in which fulfillment, although so near, slips tragically out of reach. It occurs in Act III, the very apex of [Part Two](#). There, Faust and Helen spell out the temporal theme as a lesson in rhyme:

FAUST. There is no past or future in an hour like this,  
The present moment only

HELEN. is our bliss. (9381–82)

Just as in the “Prison” scene the executioner’s approach had compelled Faust to flee, in Act III the advance of Menelaus’ troops prevents the moment from achieving fruition. The dramatic parallelism is further secured by the fact that in both cases it is Mephistopheles who plays the role of interrupting messenger, suggesting that *this* sort of fulfillment is not the one he was betting on. Suffice it to remark that the union of Faust and Helen does finally take place after a bit of colonial warfare has dispersed the jealous Menelaus’ warriors. The site of the couple’s accomplished bliss, however, is a transparently fictional Arcadia. In *Faust*, even imaginary idylls must be shattered. The issue of Faust’s and Helen’s mythic-historical embrace, the high-spirited Euphorion, rejects the artificial enclosure and endeavors—Faust-like—to break out. The result is that Euphorion (in a scene reminiscent of the Faustian cataract) falls to his ruin from the cliffs of Faust’s Arcadian refuge.

The final emphatic reference to the terms of the wager occurs in Faust’s dying words. The blind and aged Faust mistakes the clanking of the gravediggers’ shovels for the realization of his land reclamation project. His vision of a free people on open ground (kindred to the vision tradition attributed to the blind and dying Moses) culminates in a counterfactual surmise that repeats the formula of the wager:

If only I might see that people’s teeming life,  
Share their autonomy on unencumbered soil,  
Then, to the moment, I could say:  
Tarry a while, you are so fair—(11,579–11,582)

Is this, as Mephistopheles claims, Faust’s “final, mediocre, empty moment” (11,589) or can we make out here, and in the other comparable moments (Margarete, Helen), the shape of meaningful human aspiration? In each case, the ironies are rich and Mephistopheles is quick to supply a deflationary interpretation. Mephistopheles’ assessment, however, is vitiated when Faust’s soul (if that’s what it is) is snatched from Mephistopheles’ grasp in the burlesque scene of Faust’s interment. Then the *misterioso* coda of the scene “Mountain Gorges” ends the play in a vision of endless becoming. That seems to confirm, post-mortally, Faust’s claim to

ceaseless striving while showing that wager and salvation, Goethe's major innovations to the Faust myth, are inextricably intertwined. But the picture of salvation at the conclusion of *Faust* comes so unexpectedly, and is so ironic and tentative, that a straightforward interpretation in terms of institutional religion is foreclosed. Goethe's *Faust* is held together by a synthetic religious-philosophical conception, but it is a conception unique to the poem and therefore accessible to us only via the poem's imaginative network.

The poetic thinking that achieves itself in *Faust* operates with parallelisms that mirror one phase of the poem in another. This structural device solicits a process of comparative reflection that gradually draws conceptual clarity out of the similarities and differences the focused parallelism brings out. We saw this with regard to the figure of the "cottage," metaphorically applied to Gretchen and literally applied in the case of Philemon and Baucis. In fact, though, the entire poem is an intricate weave of "answering counter-images," as Goethe himself called such correspondent moments, and this is what makes its interpretation at once so exhilarating and so difficult.

The instance of parallelism to which I wish to call attention conjoins the scene of Faust's near suicide at the end of the long scene "Night" and the account of Homunculus' self-sacrifice in Act II of [Part Two](#). Phrasing the matter this way already highlights the comparability of the two moments, but of course the concrete linkage—the signal of similarity—is provided by the "vial" (690) that in "Night" contains the poison and in Act II (6870) harbors the incorporeal Homunculus. The correspondence can seem contingent (an accident of word choice) until one realizes that Faust's suicide fantasy imagines release from the clunky encumbrance of corporeality. He envisions himself elevated to a state of "pure activity" (705). Suicide, then, is the wrong term. It's not death he wants, but a higher life, a life as mindedness, as the sheer movement of light. And this, of course, is just what Wagner has produced in his laboratory, obviating the "old-fashioned" (6838) folly of natural procreation. Faust's suicide fantasy is an attempt to escape finitude, not overcome it, and it is one of the most profound ironies of this irony-laced poem that the Easter message of Christ's resurrection—a message Faust can no longer believe in—pulls him back from death, renews his investment in *earthly* life. Homunculus' self-sacrifice moves

in the opposite direction. In what is clearly figured as erotic ecstasy, he shatters the ensconcing vial on Galatea's foam-borne shell, pouring his luminescent essence into the sea's fecundity. Faust would negate the body through suicidal fiat; Homunculus merges with the source of living corporeal forms. Faust's retreat from the vial's temptation is figured in the language of Christianity; Homunculus' breaking of the vial is accompanied by the Sirens' hymn to Eros, "creator of all" (8479).

The poetic juxtaposition of Faust and Homunculus ramifies into other regions of the drama, but enough has been said here to make plausible the thought of a post-mortal purification with which the drama closes. There is divinity in *Faust*, but it has its being as the infinite self-origination of ongoing creation. Salvation is not a single event that transports souls to another world; it is an immanent process of purifying transformation. One may see in this conception a version of Spinoza's God as the immanent and eternal (not transient) cause of all things, hence as self-creative activity. Or one may identify here the outlines of the creation myth Goethe concocted out of hermetic, Cabbalist, and Neo-Platonic sources, as reported in the eighth book of his autobiography *Poetry and Truth* (1816/17). The more compelling task, however, is to see how these sources achieve the richness and specificity of poetic thought. For example, our brief consideration of Homunculus along with the post-mortal coda of "Mountain Gorges" accentuates the significance of love within this entire complex. Briefly phrased, love is the force that carries creation toward the divinity from which it springs. The word "love," however, must be understood as embracing the full spectrum of amorous forms, from the all-creative Eros celebrated in Homunculus' self-outpouring to the gentle *caritas* of the penitent Margarete. The mythic-religious syncretism of *Faust* is deeply ironic throughout, but nowhere more so than in the scenes "Classical Walpurgis Night" and "Mountain Gorges." Such irony, however, is not exclusively negative. It is a component of what might be termed the post-traditional or poetic religion that marks the furthest horizon of Goethe's response to modernity.

Ironic distance also characterizes the representation of Mephistopheles, who is, as he remarks himself, a blatant anachronism. A pressing question that any serious reading of *Faust* must seek to answer is why Goethe elected to bring the devil—or one of his vicars—onto the stage in an age that had disabused itself of such

superstitions. Our gloss on the suicide scene as dramatizing Faust's fantasy of escaping finitude suggests the beginning of an answer. In fact, the scene "Night" contains two other such attempts, the visionary contemplation of the sign of the Macrocosm and the conjuring of the Earth Spirit. Both fail, of course, casting Faust back into the dusty reality of his study and the miserable limitations of his mundane existence. Indeed, the encounter with the Earth Spirit is succeeded by Wagner's visit, in whom Faust must see—for the audience or reader certainly does—a biting parody of his own scholarly life. This humiliation, a last straw added to his scathing rejection at the hands of the Earth Spirit, motivates Faust to lift the vial of poison to his lips.

The important fact to hold onto here is that the series of failures to escape or transcend conditionality not only precedes, but also motivates Faust's turn to Mephistopheles. Faust agrees to the wager, in other words, only after realizing that immediate access to the Absolute is foreclosed to him. The fraught alliance between Faust and Mephistopheles that the wager institutes, and which holds constant throughout the play, shows that Faust's life unfolds within the dimension of finitude. Finitude is the coincidence in humankind of free and spontaneous aspiration, on the one hand, and thoroughgoing conditionality and limitation, on the other. It places man, as Goethe writes in the passage from *Poetry and Truth* referred to above, in the situation of Lucifer and makes of us at once the most perfect and the most imperfect, the happiest and the unhappiest of creatures. It is a mistake to sever in thought Faust from Mephistopheles, to distinguish high ideals from evil machinations. This would be to betray Goethe's basic insight in the play: the insight that, like Prometheus to his rock, we are free beings fettered to our finitude.

The pairing of Faust and Mephistopheles generates a dramatic vision characterized by three structural tensions. Mephistopheles' doings bring to light the dependence of modern striving on instruments and mediations it does not fully master. He provides the enabling means for Faust's every project, from winning Gretchen to the evacuation of Philemon and Baucis from their idyllic hut. Precisely these means, however, eventually overwhelm each enterprise with murderous consequences. Second, Mephistopheles embodies the fact that the Faustian drive toward ultimate ideals, however elevated its avowed intentions, is intrinsically entwined with a violent, destructive tendency, which Goethe traces even to the core

of Faust's erotic desire. And third, Mephistopheles' inveterate cynicism—a feature that earns him all the cutting, comic lines in the play—illustrates the duplicity of modern consciousness, the ability to step outside itself and see, even in its highest aspirations, baseness; in its deepest convictions, mendacity. Under the conditions of finitude, every love is also a seduction and betrayal, every creation implies destruction, every truth averred is eventually belied. Conceived as constitutive of human existence, the contradictory structure of finitude becomes the sponsoring matrix of modern tragedy. That is, as noted above, the generic term that Goethe employed in titling his work. *Faust* is tragic in this sense: that it shows our actions taking place in a world we did not make and bearing consequences we can't foresee; that it understands human impulse as a monster of tenderness and destruction; and that it demonstrates the susceptibility of every intention to ironic reversal. Worst of all: the ineluctable necessity of this dual structure affords no exculpation. Gretchen's end is horrific and unacceptable, and Faust's hands are bloodied.

*Faust* is the dream of poetry in its totality. This summary characterization from which we began doesn't simply call attention to the fact that the work is allusively rich. To be sure, it interweaves the legend of Faust with the Book of Job and the Gospel of John. The section on Gretchen recapitulates the structure of Enlightenment or bourgeois tragedy with a generous use of Shakespearean technique. In [Part II](#), ancient myth, Homeric epic, Attic tragedy, medieval love poetry, the operas of Monteverdi, renaissance pastoral, Calderon's plays, the courtly masque, and Dante's heavenly comedy all make their expressive possibilities felt and are integrated within the course of the whole. The poem is a vast archive in which reticulate patterns of cultural memory come alive. The most significant synthetic achievement of the *Faust* poem, however, lies elsewhere. It is the poetically and intellectually compelling articulation of a double vision of modernity. Goethe gives us the modern world to see at once as tragedy *and* as encompassing poetic-religious vision. Reading *Faust*, we comprehend that these are two aspects of one reality, a reality that is both infinite self-creation and conflict-laden finitude. *Faust* is the poem of the immanent world in its irresolvable tension, and just for that reason it dreams poetry as totality. Perhaps for the last time.

David E. Wellbery

University of Chicago

# **GOETHE FAUST I & II**



# FAUST A Tragedy

## DEDICATION

Once more you hover close, elusive shapes  
my eyes but dimly glimpsed when I was young.  
Shall I now try to hold you captive?  
Do these illusions still attract my heart?  
Nearer yet you crowd! So be it! Do your will 5  
as forth from mist and fog you rise about me—  
the breath of magic that surrounds your train  
stirs in my breast a youthful strength of feeling.

Images of happy days accompany you,  
and many dear familiar shades emerge, 10  
first loves and early friendships too,  
like ancient tales whose words are half forgotten;  
pain is renewed, lament reiterates  
life's perplexing labyrinth  
and names kind friends, cheated of joy by fortune, 15  
who have disappeared ahead of me.

The souls for whom I sang my early songs  
will never hear the songs that follow;  
those many friends are all dispersed,  
their first response, alas! is long since muted. 20  
My tragic song will now be heard by strangers  
whose very praise must cause my heart misgivings,  
and those to whom my song gave pleasure,  
if still they live, roam scattered everywhere. 25

I feel the spell of long-forgotten yearning  
for that serene and solemn spirit realm,  
and like an aeolian harp my murmuring song  
lets its uncertain tones float through the air.  
I feel a sense of dread, tear after tear is falling,  
my rigid heart is tenderly unmanned— 30  
what I possess seems something far away  
and what had disappeared proves real.

---

## PRELUDE ON THE STAGE

*Enter* MANAGER, POET-PLAYWRIGHT, *and* PLAYER OF COMIC ROLES.

MANAGER. You two who have so often been of help  
to me in trial and tribulation,  
tell me, now that we're here in Germany, 35  
how well you think our enterprise will fare,  
I'd greatly like to satisfy the public—  
not least because they're easy-going.  
The posts are set, the boards are laid,  
and everyone expects a splendid show. 40  
Already in their places, quiet and expectant,  
they're hoping to be pleasantly surprised.  
I know what counts for popularity,  
and yet I've never been quite so uneasy—  
of course they are not used to anything first-rate, 45  
but still they've done an awful lot of reading.  
How shall we offer only what is fresh and new  
yet won't offend because it's just absurd?  
As well you know, I like to see the public  
when they are surging towards our tent 50  
and, with a litany of groans and grumbling,  
squeeze through the narrow gate of grace;  
when in broad daylight, not yet four o'clock,  
they shove and fight to reach our cash-box  
and, as at the bakery-door for bread in time of famine, 55  
they nearly break their necks to get a ticket.  
With people of such different kinds, poets alone  
perform this miracle—your task, my friend, today!

POET. Spare me your public and its varied kinds—  
to glimpse it is enough to put our thoughts to rout! 60  
Don't let me see the surging crowd that can,  
against our wills, draw us into its whirl.  
Take me instead to some celestial refuge  
where nothing blights the poet's quiet joy  
and where with godlike bounty love and friendship 65  
create and nurture the blessings of our hearts.  
Alas! what had its source in depths of feeling  
and timid lips could only stammer,  
defective here, but here perhaps successful,

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <p>is brutally engulfed by the tempestuous moment.<br/> Often it is expressed in perfect form<br/> only after many years of effort.<br/> What glitters, lives but for the moment;<br/> what has real worth, survives for all posterity.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 70  |
| <p>PLAYER. Don't talk about posterity to me!<br/> Suppose <i>I</i> chose to preach posterity,<br/> who'd entertain the present generation?<br/> Amusement's what they want, and what they'll get.<br/> A fine young fellow here and now is not,<br/> in my opinion, altogether worthless.<br/> If you know how to say your say and be relaxed,<br/> you aren't embittered by the public's whims—<br/> one even wants a good-sized audience,<br/> to be more sure of getting a response.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 75  |
| <p>So don't be shy or hide your excellence:<br/> let us hear Phantasy with all her choirs,<br/> hear Reason, Good Sense, Sentiment, and Passion,<br/> and take good care that Folly too is heard.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 80  |
| <p>MANAGER. The main thing, though, is having lots of action!<br/> Spectators come expecting something they can see.<br/> If you unreel enough before the public's eyes<br/> to make them marvel open-mouthed,<br/> a quantitative triumph is already won,<br/> and you're the man they idolize.<br/> Only by mass can you subdue the masses—<br/> there's then enough for all to have their pick.<br/> Offer a lot, and lots get what they want,<br/> and no one leaves the theater discontented.<br/> Don't wait because your piece is still in pieces!<br/> Whatever you've concocted is sure to be a hit,<br/> and simple recipes are simple to serve up.<br/> Nor does it help to offer anything complete—<br/> your audience will only tear it all apart.</p> | 85  |
| <p>POET. You don't appreciate how low such hackwork is,<br/> or how unworthy of a genuine artist.<br/> I see that you derive your principles<br/> from the fine efforts of incompetents.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 90  |
| <p>MANAGER. Your accusation doesn't hurt my feelings:<br/> a man who wants to be effective<br/> must know the worth of proper tools.<br/> Remember that the wood you have to split is soft,<br/> and don't lose sight of whom you're writing for!<br/> If one is driven here by boredom,</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 95  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 100 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 105 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 110 |

another's come from gorging at the table;  
 and worst of all, for many we are but 115  
 a change from reading magazines.  
 It's curiosity that makes them rush our way,  
 as mindless as if to a masquerade;  
 the ladies displaying themselves and their finery  
 take supporting parts at no expense to us. 120  
 What do you poets dream of on Parnassus?  
 Why should a full house make you happy?  
 Take a close look at the patrons you have,  
 half are indifferent, the rest are boors!  
 After the play, *he* counts on playing cards, 125  
 and *he* on a wild night in some girl's arms—  
 why, in a cause like this, must you poor fools  
 so sorely try the Muses' kindness?  
 If you just give them more and more, and then still more,  
 I guarantee you'll never miss the mark. 130  
 Just try to keep your audience distracted;  
 to please them is no easy task. ...  
 But what's this paroxysm—ecstasy or pain?  
 POET. Go find yourself another hireling  
 if you expect that merely for your sake the poet 135  
 shall wantonly forfeit the fundamental right  
 with which he and all men are endowed by Nature!  
 What is the force that lets him move all hearts  
 and even make the elements obey him?  
 The consonance between what surges from his heart 140  
 and what that heart in turn takes from the world!  
 When Nature, unconcerned, twirls her endless thread  
 and fixes it upon the spindle,  
 when all creation's inharmonious myriads  
 vex us with a potpourri of sound, 145  
 who then divides the strand monotonously unreeling  
 and gives it life and rhythmic motion,  
 who summons single voices to the general choir  
 where music swells in glorious accord?  
 Who endows the storm with raging passions 150  
 or lets the sunset glow in somber mood?  
 Who bestrews the paths of those we love  
 with all the fairest blooms of spring?  
 Who plaits from humble leaves of green  
 garlands that honor merit however achieved? 155  
 Who preserves Olympus and keeps the gods assembled?—  
 The Poet who incarnates this human power!

PLAYER. In that case, put your fine abilities to use  
 and manage your literary business  
 the way a love affair's conducted. 160  
 Two meet by chance, are smitten, don't go on,  
 and bit by bit they get involved;  
 there's growing happiness, with trials to test it;  
 joy knows no bounds, and then there's misery,  
 and so before you know it you have got a novel. 165  
 Let the play we give be just like that!  
 From the whole store of human life just grab some bit—  
 we all live life, and yet to most it's something strange,  
 so that it is of interest, whatever you may pick.  
 Lively scenes that aren't too lucid— 170  
 much confusion, a glimmer of truth—  
 best let you brew the drink that satisfies  
 and yet refreshes one and all.  
 If that's provided, then your play will draw  
 the young élite, alert for any revelation, 175  
 and from your work more tender souls  
 will suck the nourishment of melancholy,  
 and in the various emotions you arouse  
 all then will recognize what they themselves have felt.  
 They're still as prone to weeping as to laughter, 180  
 still like fine turns of speech, delight in make-believe—  
 there is no pleasing those who are adult and know it,  
 but those who're young won't fail to show appreciation.

POET. Then give me, too, those days again  
 when I was young and life still lay ahead, 185  
 when one new song after the other  
 welled forth in an unceasing stream,  
 when through a veil of fog I saw the world,  
 and every bud still promised miracles,  
 when I gathered the myriad flowers 190  
 profusely filling every vale.  
 I had no worldly goods, yet had enough:  
 desire for truth and joy in make-believe.  
 Give me again my untamed passions: 195  
 the power to hate, the strength to love—  
 give me back my youth again!

PLAYER. Perhaps, my friend, you may need youth  
 when you're beset by enemies in battle,  
 when all-too-charming girls insist 200  
 on throwing their arms about your neck,  
 when in a race the victor's wreath

beckons afar from the hard-sought goal,  
or when the frenzied whirl of dancing  
ends in a night of revelry and wassail. 205  
It's up to you old gentlemen, however,  
to play with sure and pleasing touch  
whatever instrument you've mastered  
and to meander gracefully  
toward the goals you've set yourselves— 210  
do that, and we won't think the less of you.  
The saying, age makes childish, is not true;  
it only finds us really children still.

MANAGER. This altercation's gone on long enough,  
it's time I saw some action too! 215  
While you are polishing fine phrases  
something useful could be going on.  
What's the point of harping on the proper mood?  
It never comes to him who shilly-shallies.  
Since you pretend to be a poet, 220  
make poetry obey your will.  
You know that what we need  
is a strong drink to gulp down fast,  
so set to work and brew it!  
What's left undone today, is still not done tomorrow; 225  
to every day there is a use and purpose;  
let Resoluteness promptly seize  
the forelock of the Possible,  
and then, reluctant to let go again,  
she's forced to carry on and be productive. 230

As well you know, these German theaters  
let everyone do exactly as he wants;  
since that's the case, this is no time to stint  
on scenery or stage effects.  
Put both the sun and moon to use, 235  
be lavish with the stars and planets—  
nor are we short of fire or water,  
of precipices, birds, or beasts.  
So now upon our modest stage act out  
creation in its every aspect,  
240

and move with all deliberate haste  
from heaven, through the world, to hell! [Exeunt.

---

## PROLOGUE IN HEAVEN

*Heaven opens, revealing the LORD and HEAVENLY HOSTS; three ARCHANGELS step forward.*

RAPHAEL. In ancient rivalry with fellow spheres  
the sun still sings its glorious song,  
and it completes with tread of thunder 245  
the journey it has been assigned.  
Angels gain comfort from the sight,  
though none can fully grasp its meaning;  
all that was wrought, too great for comprehension,  
still has the splendor of its primal day. 250

GABRIEL. The earth as well revolves in splendor  
with speed beyond all comprehending;  
brightness like that of paradise  
alternates with deep and awesome night;  
the sea's vast floods surge up and break 255  
in foam against the rocks' deep base,  
and rock and sea are hurled along  
in the eternal motion of the spheres.

MICHAEL. Contending storms sweep onward too  
from sea to land, from land to sea, 260  
and in their rage create a causal chain  
whose power is far-reaching and profound.  
Lo! a flash of devastation  
lightens the path of coming thunder.  
But still Your messengers, o Lord, 265  
revere the quiet movement of Your light.

THE THREE. Angels gain comfort from the sight,  
though none can fully grasp Your Being,  
and all the grandeur You have wrought

still has the splendor of its primal day. 270

*Enter MEPHISTOPHELES.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. Since, Lord, You once again are come  
to ask us how we're getting on,  
and before have often welcomed me,  
You see among Your servants me as well.  
I'm sorry I can't offer high-flown language, 275  
not even though all here assembled may deride me;

pathos from me, in any case, would make You laugh  
 if You had not stopped laughing long ago.  
 I've no remarks to make about the sun or planets,  
 I merely see how mankind toils and moils. 280  
 Earth's little gods still do not change a bit,  
 are just as odd as on their primal day.  
 Their lives would be a little easier  
 if You'd not let them glimpse the light of heaven—  
 they call it Reason and employ it only 285  
 to be more bestial than any beast.  
 Saving Your Grace's presence, to my mind  
 they're like those crickets with long legs  
 who won't stop flying though they only hop, and promptly  
 sing the same old song down in the grass again. 290  
 And if they'd only keep on lying in the grass—  
 they stick their noses into every dirty mess!  
 LORD. Do you have nothing else to tell me?  
 Do you ever come except to criticize?  
 Is nothing ever right for you on earth? 295  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. No, Lord! I find things there, as always, downright bad.  
 I am so sorry for mankind's unending miseries  
 that even I am loath to plague the wretches.  
 LORD. Do you know Faust?  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. The doctor?  
 LORD. And my servant!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. Indeed? He serves You in a curious way. 300  
 The fool is not content with earthly food or drink.  
 Some ferment makes him want what is exotic,  
 yet he's half conscious of his folly;  
 from heaven he claims as his the brightest stars,  
 and from the earth all of its highest joys, 305  
 but nothing near and nothing far away  
 can satisfy a heart so deeply agitated.  
 LORD. Though now he only serves me blindly and ineptly,  
 I soon shall lead him into clarity—  
 the gardener knows, when the sapling turns green, 310  
 that blossoms and fruit will brighten future years.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. What'll You bet? You'll lose him yet  
 if You grant me permission  
 to guide him gently along my road.  
 LORD. So long as he is still alive on earth, 315  
 nothing shall prohibit your so doing—



men err as long as they keep striving.

MEPHISTOPHELES. You have my thanks—as for the dead,  
I never did much care to bother with them.

Full healthy cheeks are what I best prefer. 320  
I'm not at home to any corpse,  
and like the cat prefer my mouse alive.

LORD. So be it! Do as you are minded!  
Divert this spirit from its primal source,  
and drag him, if you can keep hold of him, 325  
along your downward path,  
and stand abashed when you must needs admit:  
a good man, in his groping intuition,  
is well aware of what's his proper course.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Agreed! The business won't take long. 330  
As for my bet, I'm not the least bit worried.  
When I achieve my purpose,  
let me beat my breast triumphantly.  
Dust shall he eat, and greedily,  
like my celebrated serpent-cousin. 335

LORD. When that occurs, again come uninvited.  
I have no hate for creatures of your kind.  
Of all the spirits of negation  
rogues like you bother me the least.  
Human activity slackens all too easily, 340  
and people soon are prone to rest on any terms;  
that's why I like to give them the companion  
who functions as a prod and does a job as devil.  
But may, true sons of heaven, you delight  
in beauty's living richness! 345  
May the power of growth that works and lives forever  
encompass you in love's propitious bonds,  
and may you give the permanence of thought  
to that which hovers in elusive forms.

*Heaven closes; exeunt ARCHANGELS, severally.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. (*Solus*) I like to see the Old Man now and 350  
then,  
and take good care to keep on speaking terms.  
It is quite decent of a mighty lord to chat  
and be so human with the very devil. [Exit.

---

# PART ONE OF THE TRAGEDY

## NIGHT

*A high-vaulted, narrow Gothic room. FAUST, sitting restless at a desk.*

FAUST. I've studied now, to my regret,  
Philosophy, Law, Medicine, 355  
and—what is worst—Theology  
from end to end with diligence.  
Yet here I am, a wretched fool  
and still no wiser than before.  
I've become Master, and Doctor as well, 360  
and for nearly ten years I have led  
my young students a merry chase,  
up, down, and every which way—  
and find we can't have certitude.  
This is too much for heart to bear! 365  
I well may know more than all those dullards,  
those doctors, teachers, officials, and priests,  
be unbothered by scruples or doubts,  
and fear neither hell nor its devils—  
but I get no joy from anything, either, 370  
know nothing that I think worthwhile,  
and don't imagine that what I teach  
could better mankind or make it godly.  
Then, too, I don't have land or money,  
or any splendid worldly honors. 375  
No dog would want to linger on like this!  
That is why I've turned to magic,  
in hope that with the help of spirit-power  
I might solve many mysteries,  
so that I need no longer toil and sweat 380  
to speak of what I do not know,  
can learn what, deep within it,  
binds the universe together,  
  
may contemplate all seminal forces—  
and be done with peddling empty words. 385  
O radiant moon for whom I have  
so often, waking at this desk,

sat at midnight watching until  
 I saw you, melancholy friend, appear  
 above my books and papers—would that this 390  
 were the last time you gazed upon my grief!  
 If only I, in your kind radiance,  
 could wander in the highest hills  
 and with spirits haunt some mountain cave,  
 could rove the meadows in your muted light 395  
 and, rid of all learned obfuscation,  
 regain my health by bathing in your dew!  
 Alas! I'm still confined to prison.  
 Accursed, musty hole of stone  
 to which the sun's fair light itself 400  
 dimly penetrates through painted glass.  
 Restricted by this great mass of books  
 that worms consume, that dust has covered,  
 and that up to the ceiling-vault  
 are interspersed with grimy papers, 405  
 confined by glassware and wooden boxes  
 and crammed full of instruments,  
 stuffed with the household goods of generations—  
 such is your world, if world it can be called!  
 And still you wonder why your heart 410  
 is anxious and your breast constricted,  
 why a pain you cannot account for  
 inhibits your vitality completely!  
 You are surrounded, not by the living world  
 in which God placed mankind, 415  
 but, amid smoke and mustiness,  
 only by bones of beasts and of the dead.  
 You must escape from this confining world!  
 And will not this mysterious book  
 from Nostradamus' very hand 420  
 amply provide the guidance you need?  
 If you can read the courses of the stars  
 and take from Nature your instruction,  
 you will understand the psychic power  
 by which the spirit world communicates. 425  
 But arid speculation won't explain  
 the sacred symbols to you. –  
 Spirits that hover near to me,

give me an answer if you hear my voice!

*(Opening the book and seeing the sign of the Macrocosm.)*

Ha! as I gaze what rapture suddenly 430

begins to flow through all my senses!

I feel youth's sacred-vital happiness

course with new fire through every vein and fiber.

Did some god inscribe these signs

that quell my inner turmoil, 435

fill my poor heart with joy,

and with mysterious force unveil

the natural powers all about me?

Am I a god? I see so clearly now!

In these lines' perfection I behold 440

creative nature spread out before my soul.

At last I understand the sage who says:

"The spirit world is not sealed off—

*your* mind is closed, *your* heart is dead!

Go, neophyte, and boldly bathe 445

your mortal breast in roseate dawn!"

*(Contemplating the sign.)*

How all things interweave as one

and work and live each in the other!

Lo! heavenly forces rise, descend,

pass golden urns from hand to hand, 450

crowd from on high through all the earth

on pinions redolent of blessings,

and fill the universe with harmony!

How grand a show! But, still, alas! mere show.

Infinite Nature, when can I lay hold of you 455

and of your breasts? You fountains of all life

on which the heavens and earth depend,

towards which my withered heart is straining—

you flow, you nurse, and yet I thirst in vain!

*(Turning the pages angrily, he sees the sign of the Earth Spirit.)*

How different is this sign's effect on me! 460

You, Spirit of Earth, are closer—

I feel my faculties becoming more acute,

I know the quickening glow of new-made wine.

I now feel brave enough to venture forth

and bear earth's torments and its joys, 465

to grapple with the hurricane  
 and not to quail although the creaking ship break up. –  
 The sky becomes overcast —  
 the moon hides its light —  
 my lamp's flame vanishes! 470  
 Mists arise! – Beams of red flash  
 about my head — a dread chill  
 flows down from the ceiling-vault  
 and has me in its hold!  
 Spirit to whom I pray, I feel you hover near. 475  
 Reveal yourself!  
 How my heart is tom asunder!  
  
 Strange feelings  
 stir my entire being!  
 My heart is now completely yours! 480  
 Obey! Obey, although my life should be the price!  
     *He takes the book and mysteriously utters the sign of the spirit.*  
     *In a flash of reddish flame the EARTH SPIRIT appears.*  
 SPIRIT. Who calls to me?  
 FAUST (*turning away*). A fearful apparition!  
 SPIRIT. You've used great efforts to attract me,  
     have long exerted suction on my sphere,  
     and now –  
 FAUST. Alas, I lack the strength to face you! 485  
 SPIRIT. You beg and pant to see me,  
     to hear my voice, to view my face;  
     your urgent prayer has made me well disposed,  
     so here I am! What paltry fear  
     now crows a demigod! Where is the summoning soul, 490  
     the breast that in itself conceived a world  
     it bore and cherished, the breast that swelled  
     in trembling joy to reach our spirit-plane?  
     Where are you, Faust, whose ringing voice I heard,  
     who strove with all his faculties to reach me? 495  
     Can he be you who in my aura  
     tremble in all your depths of being—  
     a worm that writhes away in fright?  
 FAUST. I stand my ground before you, shape of flame!  
     I am that Faust, I am your peer! 500  
 SPIRIT. In the tides of life, in action's storm,  
     I surge and ebb,

move to and fro!  
 As cradle and grave,  
 as unending sea, 505  
 as constant change,  
 as life's incandescence,  
 I work at the whirring loom of time  
 and fashion the living garment of God.

FAUST. How close I feel to you, industrious spirit, 510  
 whose strands encompass all the world!

SPIRIT. Your peer is the spirit you comprehend;  
 mine you are not! [Disappears.

FAUST (*collapsing*). Not yours?  
 Whose then? 515  
 I, made in God's image,  
 not even your counterpart!

*(A knocking is heard.)*

Damnation! I know the sound of my assistant—  
 my happiest moment is destroyed.  
 Why must that humdrum plodder  
 disturb this plenitude of visions! 520

*Enter WAGNER, in dressing-gown and nightcap, a lamp in his hand. FAUST turns, irritated.*

WAGNER. Excuse me, but I hear you are declaiming;  
 no doubt you've been reciting some Greek tragedy?  
 That's a skill I wish I could improve,  
 since it's so useful nowadays. 525  
 I've often heard it said, with no disparagement,  
 that actors could give preachers useful lessons.

FAUST. They can, if the preachers are only performers,  
 which I suppose may sometimes be the case. 530

WAGNER. Still, confined to one's study so much,  
 even on holidays hardly seeing people  
 and getting only distant glimpses with a spyglass,  
 how can one hope to affect them with rhetoric?

FAUST. That can't be done unless you feel some passion,  
 unless there's something bursting from within 535  
 that by its easy innate force  
 conquers the hearts of all who hear you.  
 You may sit and compile forever,  
 concoct a stew of morsels left by others,  
 and from your feeble heap of ashes 540  
 fan paltry flames,  
 if you've an appetite for adulation

from children and from simpletons;  
 and yet, unless your heart is where all starts, 545  
 your efforts won't affect the hearts of others.

WAGNER. Delivery alone can make a speech a hit—  
 I'm well aware how much I've still to learn.

FAUST. Just try to make an honest living,  
 and don't put on a cap and bells!  
 Intelligence and proper sense 550  
 need little art to be expressed;  
 if you have something that you really want to say,  
 is there a need to hunt for words?  
 Let me be blunt: those sparkling speeches you admire,  
 those paper baubles for mankind's amusement, 555  
 give no more solace than fog-laden winds  
 that sigh through withered autumn leaves!

WAGNER. Alas, that art is long,  
 and human life so short! 560  
 Even when I'm involved in critical endeavors  
 my heart and mind will often have misgivings.  
 How hard it is to get the tools  
 that let one get back to the sources—  
 and even before one's halfway there  
 he's very likely to be dead. 565

FAUST. Is parchment then the sacred fount,  
 and does one drink from it forever slake our thirst?  
 There's nothing you can gain refreshment from  
 except what has its source in your own soul.

WAGNER. Excuse me if I think it a great treat 570  
 to put oneself into the spirit of past ages;  
 we see how wise men thought before our time,  
 and to what splendid heights we have attained at last.

FAUST. Oh yes, we've reached the very stars!  
 My friend, for us the ages that are past 575  
 must be a book with seven seals.  
 What's called the spirit of an age  
 is in the end the spirit of you persons  
 in whom past ages are reflected.  
 And then it often is a sorry sight— 580  
 one look's enough to make you run away!  
 A trash bin and a lumber-garret;  
 at most, a grand-historical display  
 with excellent pragmatic maxims  
 well suited to the mouths of puppet-actors! 585

WAGNER. Still, the world, the human heart and mind—

everyone wants some knowledge of these things!  
 FAUST. Yes, what they choose to call knowledge!  
 Who dares give the child its proper name?  
 The foolish few who, with such knowledge, failed 590  
 to keep their wealth of intuitions in their hearts,  
 revealed their feelings and their visions to the rabble,  
 have in all times been crucified and burned. –  
 Excuse me, friend, the night is far advanced;  
 we'll have to stop for now. 595  
 WAGNER. I would have gladly stayed up longer  
 discussing such learned matters with you.  
 But tomorrow's Easter Sunday, when I hope  
 you'll let me ask a few more questions—  
 I've been assiduous in my pursuit of learning; 600  
 true, I know much, but all is what I'd like to know. [Exit.  
 FAUST. How can a person still have any hopes  
 who is addicted to what's superficial,  
 who grubs with greedy hand for treasures  
 and then is happy to discover earthworms! 605  
 Is it right to let that voice be heard  
 where inspiration compassed me about?  
 And yet, this once you have my gratitude,  
 you sorriest of mortals—  
 you snatched me from a desperation 610  
 that threatened to destroy my mind.  
 So gigantic was the apparition  
 that I, alas, could only think myself a dwarf.  
 I, made in God's image, who fancied  
 that I was close to truth's eternal mirror, 615  
 who, sloughing off mortality,  
 reveled in clear celestial radiance;  
 I, more than Cherub, whose presentient powers then  
 dared flow untrammelled through the veins of Nature  
 and share the gods' creative life— 620  
 how I am punished!  
 One thundered word has been my death.  
 It's arrogance to claim I am your peer.  
 Although I had the power to attract you,  
 I lacked the strength to hold you fast. 625  
 In that blest moment  
 I felt so small and yet so great;  
 ruthlessly you thrust me back  
 into the uncertainties that are man's lot.



Who will now teach me? What am I to shun, 630  
is there an impulse that I must obey?  
Alas, the things we do, no less than those we suffer,  
impose restraints upon our lives.

More and more that is extraneous  
obtrudes upon what's noblest in our minds; 635  
When we attain this world's material goods,  
all better things are called a madman's fancies.  
Feelings that before were glorious and vital  
grow torpid in the mundane hurly-burly.

Sustained by hope, Imagination once 640  
soared boldly on her boundless flights;  
now that our joys are wrecked in time's abyss,  
she is content to have a narrow scope. –  
Deep in our heart Care quickly makes her nest,  
there she engenders secret sorrows 645  
and, in that cradle restless, destroys all quiet joy;  
the masks she wears are always new—  
she may appear as house and home, as wife and child,  
as fire, water, dagger, poison;

we live in dread of things that do not happen 650  
and keep bemoaning losses that never will occur.

No peer of gods! I suffer from that truth—  
my counterpart's the worm that grovels in the dust  
and, as in dust it eats and lives,  
is crushed and buried by a vagrant foot. 655

What else but dust is cramped within  
these high and multi-alcoved walls of mine—  
the heap of countless, useless things  
that in this world of moths beset me?  
Is this the place to find the help I need? 660  
Should I perhaps peruse a thousand books to learn  
that people everywhere have suffered,  
that now and then someone was happy? –  
You empty skull, why bare your teeth at me  
unless to say that once, like mine, your addled brain 665  
sought buoyant light but, in its eagerness for truth,  
went wretchedly astray beneath the weight of darkness.  
You instruments are only mocking me  
with wheel and cogs, with cylinder and bridle—  
you were to be my key when I stood at the gate, 670  
but though it's intricate, the key will lift no bolts.  
Nature, mysterious in day's clear light,  
lets none remove her veil,

and what she won't discover to your understanding  
 you can't extort from her with levers and with screws. 675  
 You ancient implements I've never used are here  
 only because you served my father's needs. –  
 You, ancient scroll, have gotten ever grimier  
 since the dim lamp beside this desk first smouldered.  
 Far better to have squandered the little I have 680  
 than to sweat here beneath that little's burden!  
 If you would own the things your forebears left you,  
 you first must earn and merit their possession.  
 What serves no use becomes a heavy burden;  
 the moment can use only what it itself creates. 685  
 But what is there that holds my gaze—  
 does that vial act as magnet on the eye?  
 Why do I sense a sudden gentle brightness,  
 as when in some dark forest moonlight stirs about us?  
 Hail, vial of vials! With reverence 690  
 I take you down—my homage to  
 the human wit and skill embodied in you.  
 You essence of kind soporific forces,  
 you extract of all subtle poisons,  
 bestow your favors on your master! 695  
 I see you, and my pain is eased,  
 I hold you, and my striving lessens—  
 my turbulence of spirit slowly ebbs away.  
 I am transported to the open sea,  
 its surface sparkles down below, 700  
 and a new day beckons to new shores.  
 On airy wings a chariot of fire  
 sweeps towards me! I am now ready  
 for the fresh course that lets me pierce the sky  
 and reach new spheres of pure activity. – 705  
 Yet, you but now a worm, do you deserve  
 this grand existence, this celestial joy?  
 Yes, if you will but turn with firm resolve  
 your back upon the sun-lit earth!  
 Be bold and fling the doors asunder 710  
 which mortals all prefer to pass in silence!  
 The time has come to prove by deeds that a brave man  
 is not intimidated by celestial grandeur;  
 to stand and not to quake before the pit  
 in which imagination damns itself to torment; 715  
 to strive on toward that passageway

about whose narrow mouth all hell spouts flame  
 and, even at the risk of total dissolution,  
 to take this step with firm serenity. 720

Now, long-forgotten cup of flawless crystal,  
 come you down—  
 forth from your ancient case!  
 You glistened at ancestral celebrations,  
 enlivening the solemn guests  
 who raised you as they pledged each other. 725

The lavish splendor of the artist's pictures,  
 the drinker's duty to make verses on their meaning  
 and in one draught to drain the bowl,  
 bring many memories of nights when I was young.  
 I shall not offer you to some companion now, 730  
 nor use your art to demonstrate my wit.  
 Here is a juice that soon intoxicates,  
 and whose brown stream now rises to your brim.  
 The last drink that I have prepared and that I take,  
 let me with all my heart now pledge it, 735

in solemn salutation, to the Morrow!  
*As he places the cup to his lips, church bells and a choir are heard.*

CHOIR (*Angels' chorus*). Christ is arisen!  
                                 Joy to the mortal  
                                 freed from the baneful,  
                                 insidious ills 740  
                                 that man is heir to.

FAUST. What depth of resonance, what clarity of tone,  
 can drag the goblet from my lips?  
 Do you announce so soon, you muffled bells,  
 the first solemnities of Eastertide? 745

Do you sing now, you choirs, the hymn of consolation  
 that by the darkened tomb, from angels' lips,  
 proclaimed the certainty of a new covenant?

CHOIR (*Women's chorus*).  
                                 With balm and spices  
                                 we ministered to Him, 750  
                                 we who were faithful  
                                 laid down His body,  
                                 carefully wrapped it  
                                 in pieces of linen—  
                                 lo! we discover 755

|                                     |                                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|
|                                     | Christ is not here.                                 |     |
| CHOIR ( <i>Angels' chorus</i> ).    | Christ is arisen!                                   |     |
|                                     | Blessed the Loving One,                             |     |
|                                     | He has sustained                                    |     |
|                                     | the grievous ordeal                                 | 760 |
|                                     | that bringeth salvation.                            |     |
| FAUST.                              | Celestial tones, so gently strong,                  |     |
|                                     | why do you seek me here amid the dust?              |     |
|                                     | Be heard where tender mortals dwell!                |     |
|                                     | Although I hear your gospel, I lack your faith,     | 765 |
|                                     | a faith whose dearest child is the miraculous.      |     |
|                                     | I do not dare aspire to the spheres                 |     |
|                                     | from which your word of grace peals forth,          |     |
|                                     | and yet these sounds, familiar since my youth,      |     |
|                                     | summon me now again to life.                        | 770 |
|                                     | There was a time when in the sabbath's solemn quiet |     |
|                                     | the kiss of heaven's love would overcome me,        |     |
|                                     | when there were portents in the choiring chimes,    |     |
|                                     | and when a prayer was fervent pleasure;             |     |
|                                     | some strange sweet longing would compel me          | 775 |
|                                     | to rove through wood and meadow,                    |     |
|                                     | and to a flood of ardent tears                      |     |
|                                     | I'd feel a world arise within me.                   |     |
|                                     | This hymn announced the lively games of youth,      |     |
|                                     | the happy freedom of spring celebrations;           | 780 |
|                                     | the memory of childlike feelings now                |     |
|                                     | keeps me from taking the last, solemn step.         |     |
|                                     | O sweet celestial songs, sound on—                  |     |
|                                     | my tears well forth, and I am earth's again!        |     |
| CHOIR ( <i>Disciples' chorus</i> ). |                                                     |     |
|                                     | Sublime in this life,                               | 785 |
|                                     | He who was buried                                   |     |
|                                     | now has ascended                                    |     |
|                                     | to glory on high,                                   |     |
|                                     | joyous to live again                                |     |
|                                     | and still to be active.                             | 790 |
|                                     | But we, to our sorrow,                              |     |
|                                     | remain on earth's breast;                           |     |
|                                     | abandoned disciples,                                |     |
|                                     | we languish and suffer—                             |     |

|                   |                              |     |
|-------------------|------------------------------|-----|
|                   | Master, your happiness       | 795 |
|                   | makes us shed tears!         |     |
| (Angels' chorus). | Christ is arisen             |     |
|                   | from the womb of corruption. |     |
|                   | Be of good cheer             |     |
|                   | and get rid of your bonds!   | 800 |
|                   | You whose deeds praise Him,  |     |
|                   | who demonstrate charity,     |     |
|                   | nourish your brethren,       |     |
|                   | wander and teach them,       |     |
|                   | promise them bliss—          | 805 |
|                   | to you is your Master near,  |     |
|                   | for you He is here!          |     |

---

## OUTSIDE THE CITY GATE

*A variety of people, coming from the city.*

|                   |                                                 |     |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----|
| SOME APPRENTICES. | Why are you going that way?                     |     |
| OTHERS.           | We're off to Hunter's Lodge.                    |     |
| THE FIRST.        | And we're heading out toward the Mill.          | 810 |
| ONE.              | I'd recommend the River Tavern.                 |     |
| A SECOND.         | That's not a very pleasant walk.                |     |
| THE OTHERS.       | And what will you do?                           |     |
| A THIRD.          | Go with the others.                             |     |
| A FOURTH.         | Come on up to Burgdorf—there you can count on   |     |
|                   | the prettiest girls, the best of beer,          | 815 |
|                   | and picking a first-class quarrel too.          |     |
| A FIFTH.          | You have a strange idea of fun—                 |     |
|                   | do you want to be tanned a third time?          |     |
|                   | That's not the place for me—it makes me queasy. |     |
| SERVANT GIRL.     | No, no! I'm going back to town.                 | 820 |
| ANOTHER.          | We'll surely find him near those poplars.       |     |
| THE FIRST.        | As if I cared!                                  |     |
|                   | He'll walk with you, and on the green           |     |

he'll only dance with you.  
 Your good time is no help to me! 825  
 THE OTHER. I'm sure he won't be by himself today;  
 he said that Curly would come with him.  
 STUDENT. See that stride! those girls have some life in them!  
 Come on, it's up to us to give them company!  
 I'm all for good strong beer, tobacco with real flavor— 830  
 and maids who have put on their Sunday best.  
 BURGHER'S DAUGHTER. Do you see those fine looking fellows!  
 It really is a shame—  
 they could keep perfectly nice company,  
 and go running after those servant girls! 835  
 SECOND STUDENT (*to the First*).  
 Take your time! Back there two more are coming;  
 they are not flashily dressed.  
 And one is from next door—  
 she's someone I really like.  
 They may be walking most sedately, 840  
 but in the end they'll let us come along.  
 THE FIRST. Not me! I'd rather not be on my best behavior.  
 Hurry now, or we won't catch anything!  
 The hand that plies the broom on Saturday  
 you'll find on Sundays has the softest touch. 845  
 BURGHER. No, our new burgomaster doesn't suit me!  
 Now he's in, he gets more high-handed every day.  
 And what is he doing for the city?  
  
 Aren't things getting steadily worse?  
 More than ever we're told what we must do, 850  
 and it all costs more than ever before.  
 BEGGAR (*singing*).  
 Kind gentlemen and ladies fair,  
 in handsome clothes and rosy-cheeked,  
 please condescend to look at me  
 and ease this misery you see! 855  
 Don't let me turn my crank in vain!  
 Who gladly gives, alone is glad.  
 Today, when everyone is idle,  
 I hope my work will reap a harvest.  
 SECOND BURGHER.  
 Sundays and holidays there's nothing I like more 860  
 than to discuss a war and military matters

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| when armies far away—off there in Turkey—<br>engage in battle with each other.<br>You can stand at the window, drinking<br>and watching all the ships that move downstream,<br>then go cheerfully home in the evening,<br>thankful for peace and its advantages. | 865 |
| A THIRD. Neighbor, amen! That goes for me as well—<br>let them crack each other's skulls<br>and everything be topsy-turvy,<br>if only nothing changes here at home.                                                                                              | 870 |
| OLD WOMAN ( <i>to the Burghers' Daughters</i> ).<br>Oh, how dressed up you are, you pretty young things!<br>Who could fail to find you adorable? –<br>Don't be so haughty—no offense was meant!                                                                  |     |
| You know that I can get you what you want.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 875 |
| BURGHER'S DAUGHTER. Agatha, come! I don't want anyone to see<br>a witch like that and me together—<br>though on Saint Andrew's night she let me see<br>with my own eyes the man I am to marry.                                                                   |     |
| AGATHA. In her crystal she showed me mine,<br>one in a group of daring soldiers—<br>I keep on looking for him everywhere,<br>but he refuses to show up.                                                                                                          | 880 |
| SOLDIERS. Fortresses raising<br>battlements high,<br>girls unrelenting<br>in their proud scorn—<br>these would I capture!<br>Boldness of effort<br>pays splendid rewards!                                                                                        | 885 |
| We let the trumpet<br>announce our intention,<br>be it love's pleasure<br>or be it grand ruin.<br>To the assault—<br>that's how to live!                                                                                                                         | 890 |
| The girls and the castles<br>will surely surrender.<br>Boldness of effort<br>pays splendid rewards!                                                                                                                                                              | 895 |
| And then the soldiers                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 900 |

are off and away.

*Enter FAUST and WAGNER.*

FAUST. River and brooks are released from their ice,  
are given new life by the soft gleam of Spring,  
and verdure in valleys gives hope of bliss; 905  
deprived of his strength, old Winter withdrew  
into rugged, unfriendly mountains.  
From them, retreating, he only can launch  
impotent showers of sleet  
over the lands that begin to be green, 910  
but the Sun is hostile to whiteness  
and seeks to enliven with color the forms  
that everywhere strive to develop;  
yet the countryside still has no flowers,  
and so he takes smartly dressed people instead. 915  
Turn around, now we're up here,  
and look back down at the city!  
Out from the depths of its gloomy gate  
a teeming mass of color is surging—  
everyone's eager to get into the sun. 920  
They celebrate the resurrection of their Lord,  
for they themselves are risen;  
from wretched houses and dreary rooms,  
from the bonds of their crafts and professions,  
from the pressing weight of roof and gable, 925  
from the narrow, cramping streets,  
from their churches' night-like solemnity—  
they all have been brought forth into the light.  
Look and see how quickly the crowd  
disperses through the gardens and fields, 930  
how the whole expanse of the river  
carries colorful vessels along,  
and how, so crowded that it almost sinks,  
the last small boat is pushing off.  
Even on distant hillside paths 935  
clothing affords us flashes of color. –  
But now I hear the bustle of the village;  
here is the common man's true heaven,  
here great and small exult contented—  
here I am human and can be myself. 940

WAGNER. To take a walk with you, Professor,  
is a great honor, and edifying too;  
but on my own I wouldn't stray this way,  
detesting as I do whatever's vulgar.



|                                                                 |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Fiddling, shouts, the noise of the bowls                        | 945 |
| are sounds that I do much abhor;                                |     |
| the people carry on as if the fiend possessed them,             |     |
| then call it entertainment, call it singing.                    |     |
| VILLAGERS ( <i>dancing and singing beneath a linden tree</i> ). |     |
| When for the dance the shepherd dressed                         |     |
| in ribbon, wreath, and colored vest                             | 950 |
| he was the height of fashion.                                   |     |
| Beneath the tree no room remained,                              |     |
| and all were dancing madly.                                     |     |
| Hey-day! hey-day!                                               |     |
| and a hey-nonny hey!                                            | 955 |
| was what the fiddle played.                                     |     |
| He quickly pushed into the whirl,                               |     |
| but as he did so hit a girl                                     |     |
| ungently with his elbow;                                        |     |
| a sturdy lass, she turned and said,                             | 960 |
| “You, must you be so clumsy?”                                   |     |
| Hey-day! hey-day!                                               |     |
| and a hey-nonny hey!                                            |     |
| “Pretend you have some manners!”                                |     |
| But in the ring their feet were light,                          | 965 |
| they danced to left, they danced to right,                      |     |
| with skirt and coat-tail flying.                                |     |
| They got all flushed, were over-warm,                           |     |
| and rested panting arm in arm—                                  |     |
| Hey-day! hey-day!                                               | 970 |
| and a hey-nonny hey!—                                           |     |
| and hips in elbow-hold.                                         |     |
| “And don’t you make so free with me—                            |     |
| how many girls as brides-to-be                                  |     |
| are victims of deceivers!”                                      | 975 |
| He coaxed her nonetheless aside,                                |     |
| but from afar they still heard shouts:                          |     |
| hey-day! hey-day!                                               |     |
| and a hey-nonny hey!                                            |     |
| and the fiddle under the linden.                                | 980 |
| OLD PEASANT. Professor, it is good of you                       |     |
| to deign to be with us today                                    |     |
| and, learned doctor though you are,                             |     |
| to mingle with us ordinary folk.                                |     |
| And so accept our finest tankard,                               | 985 |

which we have filled afresh for you;  
 I pledge it to you, and I voice the wish  
 that it not only slake your thirst,  
 but also that each drop it holds 990  
 be one more day that's added to your life.

FAUST. Your tankard I accept and its refreshment  
 with thanks and wishes of good health to all.

*The VILLAGERS form a circle about FAUST and WAGNER.*

OLD PEASANT. It is indeed appropriate  
 that on this festive day you come among us;  
 as well we know, when times were bad 995  
 you always were disposed to help us!  
 Many a man is here alive  
 who, at the time your father stopped the plague,  
 was snatched by him at the last moment 1000  
 from the burning frenzy of his fever.  
 You too—you were a young man then—  
 would enter every stricken house  
 and yet, although they carried off so many corpses,  
 you always would come out unharmed,  
 surviving every trial and test— 1005  
 by the Helper above our helper was helped.

VILLAGERS. Good health to one who's tried and true,  
 and may he be our help for many years to come!

FAUST. Offer your homage to the Helper above  
 Who teaches that we all should help each other. 1010

*FAUST and WAGNER resume their walk.*

WAGNER. What feelings, sir, you must derive  
 from the respect of all these people for your greatness!  
 How happy is the man who is allowed  
 to turn his talents to such good account!  
 Some father points you out to his young boy, 1015  
 and people ask your name, stand still and crowd about you,  
 the fiddle stops, the dancers pause.  
 As you move on, they stand in rows  
 and fling their caps into the air—  
 a little more, and they would genuflect 1020  
 as if the blessed sacrament were going by!

FAUST. It's but a few more steps up to that stone;  
 here we can rest a while from walking.  
 I've often sat alone here with my thoughts  
 and agonized in prayer and fasting. 1025  
 Still full of hope and firm of faith,  
 I wept and sighed and wrung my hands

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| believing that such efforts could extort<br>from God in heaven termination of the plague.<br>Now, in the people's praise I only hear derision.<br>If you could read my soul and see<br>how little either son or father<br>deserved such approbation!                                                                                                                 | 1030                             |
| My father was a worthy commoner<br>who in good faith, but in his own eccentric way,<br>labored at fanciful speculations<br>about the mystic spheres of nature,<br>and who, together with his adepts,<br>would shut himself within his blackened kitchen<br>and mix contrary elements                                                                                 | 1035<br><br><br><br><br><br>1040 |
| according to recipes that never seemed to end.<br>There a mercurial suitor, the Red Lion,<br>would in a tepid bath be married to the Lily,<br>then both be driven by tormenting flames<br>out of one bridal chamber to another;                                                                                                                                      | <br><br><br>1045                 |
| when in the beaker the Young Queen<br>at last appeared, a mass of color,<br>that was our medicine—the patients died,<br>and no one thought to ask if anyone was healed.<br>And so, with diabolical electuaries,                                                                                                                                                      | <br><br><br><br>1050             |
| we ravaged in these hills and valleys<br>with greater fury than the plague.<br>I have myself dosed thousands with the poison;<br>they wasted away—and I must live to hear<br>the brazen murderers adulated.                                                                                                                                                          | <br><br><br>1055                 |
| WAGNER. How can you be disturbed by that!<br>Is it not sufficient for an honest man<br>to practice with punctilious exactness<br>the skills of the profession he's been taught?<br>If, in your youth, you venerate your father,<br>you're pleased to take what he can give you;<br>if you, as man, augment our knowledge,<br>your son may reach an even higher mark. | <br><br><br><br>1060             |
| FAUST. Happy the man who still can hope<br>to swim to safety in this sea of error.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <br>1065                         |
| What we don't know is what we really need,<br>and what we know fulfills no need at all. –<br>But we must not let such dark thoughts spoil<br>the wealth of beauty that this hour can afford!<br>See how, against the green about them,                                                                                                                               | <br><br><br>1070                 |

cottages gleam in the blazing sunset.  
The sun moves on, retreats, and, after day is done,  
hastens away to nurture life elsewhere— 1075  
if only I had wings to raise me from the ground  
so that I might pursue it on its course forever!  
I'd see the silent world below  
in an eternal evening-radiance,  
all peaks aflame, all valleys hushed,  
the silver brook debouching into golden rivers;  
no savage mountain or its many gorges 1080  
would then impede my godlike passage—  
astonished eyes survey the ocean now  
and inlets that the sun has warmed.  
At last the sungod seems about to sink from view,  
but then my urge to follow is again aroused; 1085  
I hasten on, to drink its everlasting light,  
the day before me and, behind me, night,  
the sky above me and, beneath, the sea.  
A glorious dream—meanwhile the sun is gone!  
Alas! it is so hard to find corporeal wings 1090  
that match those of the human mind.  
Yet in us all there is an innate urge  
to rise aloft and soar along  
when, lost in the blue space above us,  
the lark pours forth its vibrant song, 1095  
when high above fir-covered crags  
the eagle floats on outspread wing,  
and when above the plains and lakes  
the crane seeks out its native place.  
WAGNER. I've often had my momentary fancies, 1100  
but that's an urge I never yet have felt.  
One quickly gets his fill of seeing woods and fields,  
and I shall never envy any bird its wings.  
How different is the way the pleasures of the mind  
transport us from book to book, from page to page! 1105  
Then winter nights are pleasant and congenial,  
a vital happiness gives warmth to your whole being,  
and if you do unroll some precious manuscript  
celestial joy is yours on earth.  
FAUST. You only know one driving force, 1110  
and may you never seek to know the other!  
Two souls, alas! reside within my breast,  
and each is eager for a separation:  
in throes of coarse desire, one grips

the earth with all its senses; 1115  
 the other struggles from the dust  
 to rise to high ancestral spheres.

If there are spirits in the air  
 who hold domain between this world and heaven—  
 out of your golden haze descend, 1120  
 transport me to a new and brighter life!  
 If I but had a magic cloak  
 that could bear me away to exotic places,  
 I'd not exchange it for the choicest garments,  
 not even for the mantle of a king. 1125

WAGNER. Do not invoke the too familiar host  
 that floods the murky air,  
 threatening mankind from every quarter  
 with danger in a thousand forms.  
 Out of the North the fanged spirits  
 1130  
 come to press upon you with their pointed tongues;  
 from the East they make their withering advance  
 to feed upon your lungs;  
 and if the South should send them from the desert  
 to heap fire upon fire about your head, 1135  
 the West will bring a troop that first refreshes,  
 then drowns you and your fields and meadows.  
 They are all ears and eager to do harm,  
 gladly obey because they gladly cheat us,  
 pretend that they are sent from heaven, 1140  
 and murmur like angels when telling their lies.

But let us go! Already all is gray,  
 the air grown cool, the fog descending:  
 when evening comes, we know a home's full worth. –  
 Why are you standing still and staring off there? 1145  
 What can so impress you in this failing light?

FAUST. Do you see the black dog scour the grain that sprouts  
 from the stubble?

WAGNER. I saw it long ago, but thought it unimportant.

FAUST. Observe it well! What do you think the creature is?

WAGNER. A poodle that in the usual way 1150  
 goes to the trouble of tracking its master!

FAUST. Do you notice how it races around us  
 in a great spiral, getting closer and closer?  
 And unless I'm mistaken, an eddy of fire  
 follows closely wherever it goes. 1155

WAGNER. A mere black poodle is what I see—

you, I suspect, some optical illusion.  
 FAUST. It's my impression that, with quiet magic, the dog  
 is laying about our feet the snares of future bondage. 1160  
 WAGNER. I see it run around us, timid and unsure  
 because it sees two strangers, not its master.  
 FAUST. The circle is narrowing, the dog's close at hand!  
 WAGNER. You see a dog, there's no spectre there.  
 It snarls and hesitates, lies down on its belly,  
 it wags its tail—all just what dogs do. 1165  
 FAUST. Come and join us! Come here!  
 WAGNER. It's a silly sort of creature:  
 if you stand still, it sits attentive;  
 speak to it, and it's all over you;  
 let something drop, and it will fetch it— 1170  
 even jump in the water for your cane.  
 FAUST. No doubt you're right: I find  
 no trace of mind—it's only training.  
 WAGNER. When a dog has been well taught,  
 even a man of sense can like it. 1175  
 So apt a pupil of our students  
 indeed deserves to be in your good graces. [Exeunt through city gate.

---

## FAUST'S STUDY

*Enter FAUST, with the poodle.*

FAUST. I've left behind the fields and meadows  
 that night now veils in darkness—  
 night, whose presentient holy dread 1180  
 awakes in us our better soul.  
 Forces of passion are lulled to sleep  
 as restless action ceases;  
 love of our fellow man is rousing,  
 and with it love of God as well. 1185  
 Easy, Poodle! Stop running about!  
 Why are you sniffing the sill of that door?  
 Lie down behind the stove—  
 here's my best cushion!  
 Your running and jumping along the road 1190

entertained us out on the hillside,  
now let me entertain you in my turn—  
a welcome guest if you'll stay quiet.

1195

Ah, when within our narrow chamber  
the friendly lamp again is lit,  
our inner being too is brightened—  
our heart, that then can know itself.  
The voice of reason is heard again,  
and hope again begins to flower;  
we thirst for life-giving waters,  
we long for life's fountainhead.

1200

Poodle, don't growl! that animal sound  
jars with the sacred harmonies  
that now encompass my whole being.  
We take it for granted that people jeer  
at what they do not understand,  
and groan in the presence of goodness and beauty,  
which often just makes them embarrassed.  
Must a dog, like them, snarl at such things?

1205

Alas! despite the best intentions, I feel  
contentment ebbing in my breast already.  
Why must its stream run dry so soon  
and leave us thirsting once again,  
as has been the case with me so often?

1210

Still, this want can be supplied:  
we have been taught to find great worth in what's celestial;  
we pine and yearn for revelation,  
whose fire burns in the New Testament  
with dignity and beauty not elsewhere matched.

1215

I feel impelled to open the text on which all rests  
and, deeply moved, properly translate  
the sacred Greek original  
into my own dear native tongue.

1220

(*Opening a large volume and preparing to write.*)

It is written, "In the beginning was the *Word*."  
How soon I'm stopped! Who'll help me to go on?  
I cannot concede that *words* have such high worth  
and must, if properly inspired,  
translate the term some other way.

1225

It is written: "In the beginning was the *Mind*."  
Reflect with care upon this first line,  
and do not let your pen be hasty!  
Can it be *mind* that makes all operate?  
I'd better write: "In the beginning was the *Power*!"

1230

Yet, even as I write this down,  
 something warns me not to keep it. 1235  
 My spirit prompts me, now I see a solution  
 and boldly write: "In the beginning was the Act."  
 If I'm to share the room with you,  
 Poodle, stop your baying,  
 stop that barking! 1240  
 In these close quarters I can't bear  
 to keep so bothersome a companion.  
 One of us—either you or I—  
 will have to leave the room:  
 I'm sorry to be no longer hospitable, 1245  
 the door is open, you're free to go.  
 But what do I see!  
 Is that a natural occurrence,  
 illusion or reality?  
 How long and broad my poodle's becoming! 1250  
  
 It's rising prodigiously—  
 that is not a canine form!  
 What a ghastly thing I've brought into the house!  
 Hippopotamus-like it looks,  
 with fire-red eyes and frightful jaws. 1255  
 But I will master you!—  
 for such a hybrid spawned in Hell  
 Solomon's Key will do quite well.  
 SPIRITS (*in the passage*). One of us inside is caught—  
 stay outside and join him not! 1260  
 Like the fox in an iron snare,  
 a sly old devil's quivering there.  
 Now take good heed:  
 hover high, hover low,  
 to and fro, 1265  
 and from durance he'll get free!  
 You can assist him,  
 don't leave him victim—  
 long we owe him, every one,  
 many favors he has done. 1270  
 FAUST. Merely to challenge the creature  
 I must employ the Spell of Four:  
 Glow, Salamander!



|                                        |      |
|----------------------------------------|------|
| Undine, meander!                       |      |
| Sylph, disappear!                      | 1275 |
| Gnome, toil away here!                 |      |
| None who lacks knowledge—              |      |
| of the Elements,                       |      |
| of their powers                        |      |
| and attributes—                        | 1280 |
| ever should claim                      |      |
| to be master of Spirits.               |      |
| O vanish in fire's gleam,              |      |
| Salamander!                            |      |
| Merge with a murmuring stream,         | 1285 |
| O Undine!                              |      |
| In meteoric beauty shine,              |      |
| O Sylph!                               |      |
| Help about the house as friend,        |      |
| Incubus, Incubus! –                    | 1290 |
| Spirit, emerge, that I may end.        |      |
| None of the Four                       |      |
| hides in the creature.                 |      |
| It lies all still and sneers disdain—  |      |
| till now I've failed to cause it pain. | 1295 |
| But you shall hear me                  |      |
| cast a stronger spell:                 |      |
| Fellow, if you be                      |      |
| a fugitive from Hell,                  |      |
| behold the Sign                        | 1300 |
| before which incline                   |      |
| the legions of darkness!               |      |
| It starts to swell—its hair's on end.  |      |
| Being damned and reprobate,            |      |
| can you read this token?—              | 1305 |
| Him that never was create,             |      |
| Him whose name must not be spoken,     |      |
| Who pervades the universe,             |      |
| though transpierced by lance accursed. |      |
| Driven back of the stove by the spell, | 1310 |
| it is dilating to elephant size;       |      |
| filling every bit of space,            |      |

it's now about to melt away as mist.

Stop ascending to the ceiling!

Lie down at your master's feet!

1315

Now you know I make no empty threats.

I can scorch you with sacred fire!

Do not wait until you see

the glowing light of the Trinity,

do not wait until you see

1320

the mightiest of all my arts!

*Enter MEPHISTOPHELES from behind the stove as the mist subsides; he is dressed as a goliard.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. What's all the noise? Sir, how can I be of service?

FAUST. So that is what was hidden in the poodle:

a wandering scholar! The *casus* is amusing.

MEPHISTOPHELES. My compliments to your learning, sir!

1325

you made me sweat profusely.

FAUST. What is your name?

MEPHISTOPHELES. That seems a petty question

from one who is so scornful of the Word

and who, aloof from mere appearance,

only aspires to plumb the depths of essence.

1330

FAUST. The essence of such as you, good sir,

can usually be inferred from names

that, like Lord of Flies, Destroyer, Liar,

reveal it all too plainly.

But still I ask, who are you?

MEPHISTOPHELES. A part of that force

1335

which, always willing evil, always produces good.

FAUST. That is a riddle. What does it mean?

MEPHISTOPHELES. I am the Spirit of Eternal Negation,

and rightly so, since all that gains existence

is only fit to be destroyed; that's why

1340

it would be best if nothing ever got created.

Accordingly, my essence is

what you call sin, destruction,

or—to speak plainly—Evil.

FAUST. You call yourself a part, yet stand before me whole?

1345

MEPHISTOPHELES. I only speak the sober truth.

You mortals, microcosmic fools,

may like to think of yourselves as complete,

but I'm a part of the Part that first was all, 1350  
 part of the Darkness that gave birth to Light—  
 proud Light, that now contests the senior rank  
 of Mother Night, disputes her rights to space;  
 yet it does not succeed, however much it strives,  
 because it can't escape material fetters.  
 Light emanates from matter, lends it beauty, 1355  
 but matter checks the course of light,  
 and so I hope it won't be long  
 before they both have been annihilated.  
 FAUST. Now I see your meritorious function!  
 You can't achieve wholesale destruction 1360  
 and so you've started out at retail.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. And to be candid, the business doesn't thrive.  
 This awkward world, this Something  
 which confronts as foe my Nothing—  
 despite all efforts up to now, 1365  
 I've failed to get the better of it:  
 in spite of tempest, earthquake, wave, and fire,  
 ocean and land are unperturbed!  
 And as for that stupid stuff, the spawn of beast and man,  
 there's no way to make inroads on it. 1370  
 To think how many I've already buried,  
 yet fresh young blood still keeps on circulating.  
 On and on—it could make anyone see red!  
 From air, from water, and from earth 1375  
 a myriad of germs crawl forth  
 in dryness, moisture, heat, or cold!  
 If I had not kept fire for myself,  
 there would be nothing I could call my own.  
 FAUST. And so you raise your frigid fist,  
 clenched in futile diabolic malice, 1380  
 against the power of ever-stirring,  
 beneficent creativity!  
 You would do well, strange Son of Chaos,  
 to try some other enterprise.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. We'll really have to give some thought to this; 1385  
 let's talk about it more at our next meetings.  
 May I assume that I am now excused?  
 FAUST. I don't see why you ask permission.  
 Now that I've made your acquaintance,  
 you may pay me a visit whenever you wish. 1390  
 The window's here, and here the door;

a flue would suit you quite as well.

MEPHISTOPHELES. There's a confession I must make.  
 A little obstacle prevents my walking out:  
 the incubus-foot on the sill of your door! 1395

FAUST. You are distressed by the pentagram?  
 Well, tell me then, you Son of Hell,  
 how you got in while subject to its spell,  
 and how a spirit such as you was tricked.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Look carefully and you will find it's badly  
 drawn: 1400  
 one point (the one that faces outward)  
 is, as you see, not quite completely closed.

FAUST. That is indeed a lucky chance,  
 and so—you claim—you are my prisoner?  
 This is a triumph that was not intended! 1405

MEPHISTOPHELES. The poodle noticed nothing when it bounded  
 in,

but now the situation's changed:  
 the demon's caught inside your house.

FAUST. Why don't you go through the window, then?

MEPHISTOPHELES. For demons and for spectres there's a rule: 1410  
 where they've got in is where they must go out.  
 The former's up to us, the latter's not in our control.

FAUST. So even Hell is bound by laws?  
 I like your implication that one could  
 safely make contracts with you gentlemen! 1415

MEPHISTOPHELES. You can be sure of getting all we promise,  
 without a single niggardly deduction.  
 But it takes time to work out such arrangements,  
 so let's discuss the matter fairly soon.  
 Right now, however, I urgently request 1420  
 that this one time you give me leave to leave.

FAUST. Do stay another moment and, before you go,  
 let me hear more of your fine stories.

MEPHISTOPHELES. It's time you let me go! I'll call again soon,  
 and then you can ask any question you wish. 1425

FAUST. I didn't lay a snare for you!  
 You put yourself into the trap.  
 A devil in hand is well worth keeping:  
 it takes a good while to catch one again.

MEPHISTOPHELES. If it's your wish, of course I'm glad to stay 1430

and keep you company—but only if  
you'll let me use the arts in which I'm skilled  
to entertain you in a proper way.

FAUST. I've no objection, and leave the choice to you.

Just see to it your arts are entertaining! 1435

MEPHISTOPHELES. My friend, from this conjuncture you'll obtain  
more pleasure of a sensuous kind  
than from a whole monotonous year.

What you hear these gentle spirits sing,  
the lovely pictures that they bring, 1440  
are more than empty magic-show.

Your sense of smell will be delighted,  
your palate, too, will be excited,  
and then your sense of touch ecstatic glow.

For preparation there's no need; 1445  
you have me here, so just proceed!

SPIRITS. Vanish, dark arches,  
high but confining!  
Let azure blueness,  
brighter, more friendly, 1450  
show from on high!  
Would that the dark clouds  
quickly departed!

Little stars twinkle;  
planets among them 1455  
gleam in the sky.

Beauty ethereal—  
youths truly heavenly,  
gracefully bending—  
floats lightly past. 1460

Fond yearnings follow  
them on their paths:  
fluttering bits  
of garments abandoned  
brighten the landscape, 1465  
brighten the bower  
where lost in illusion  
lover unites

|                                |      |
|--------------------------------|------|
| with lover for ever.           |      |
| Bowers are vineyards!          | 1470 |
| Tendrils luxuriate!            |      |
| Grapes hanging heavy           |      |
| hasten to fill                 |      |
| the vats that will press them; |      |
| wines, effervescent,           | 1475 |
| hasten as brooks               |      |
| through crystalline rocks      |      |
| that never are sullied,        |      |
| soon leave behind              |      |
| the arbors above,              | 1480 |
| becoming broad lakes           |      |
| that mirror and nurture        |      |
| hills and their verdure.       |      |
| Birds of the air,              |      |
| imbibing delight,              | 1485 |
| fly on toward the sun,         |      |
| fly off to far islands,        |      |
| brilliant and bright,          |      |
| deceptively rocking            | 1490 |
| on cradling waters—            |      |
| islands with meadows           |      |
| where we see dancers           |      |
| gathered in groups             |      |
| and finding amusement          | 1495 |
| out in the country.            |      |
| Lo! some are climbing          |      |
| over the highlands,            |      |
| others are swimming            |      |
| in quiet lakes                 | 1500 |
| or float through the air—      |      |
| all seeking life's fullness,   |      |
| hoping to find                 |      |
| the far-distant star           |      |
| of rapture and bliss.          | 1505 |

MEPHISTOPHELES. The rest, my insubstantial lads, can keep;  
you've done your duty, he's lulled to sleep,

and for your concert I am much obliged. –  
 But you're not yet the man to hold a demon captive! –  
 Encompass him with lovely apparitions, 1510  
 plunge him into a sea of mad illusion!  
 But to undo this doorsill-magic,  
 tooth of rat is what I need.  
 I will not have to conjure long;  
 the one I hear scurrying will quickly hear me. 1515  
 The Lord of Rats and Lord of Mice,  
 Lord of the Flies, Frogs, Bugs, and Lice,  
 summons you to venture forth  
 and, at the spot he dabs with oil,  
 to nibble away the wood of the sill. 1520  
 So soon you come bounding into view!  
 To work, at once! The point that cast the spell  
 to keep me here is on the very outer edge.  
 Just one more bite and you'll be done. –  
 Now, Faustus, till we meet again, dream on! [Exit. 1525  
 FAUST (*awakening*). Have I been duped once more?  
 Are life-giving forces so quickly spent—  
 did a lying dream invent my devil,  
 and did a poodle simply run away?

---

## FAUST'S STUDY

FAUST *and, heard offstage*, MEPHISTOPHELES.

FAUST. A knock? Come in! Who bothers me this time? 1530  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. It's me.  
 FAUST. Come in!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. That must be said three  
 times.  
 FAUST. Come in, then!  
 MEPHISTO (*entering*). Now you've done it right!  
 I hope we may get on well together;  
 to cure you of your anxious fancies,

|                                                         |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------|
| I've come as a young nobleman                           | 1535 |
| in scarlet suit with golden trim;                       |      |
| my cloak is heavy corded silk,                          |      |
| there's a cock's-feather on my hat                      |      |
| and, at my side, a long, sharp sword.                   |      |
| Take my advice and get yourself                         | 1540 |
| an outfit similar to mine,                              |      |
| so that, released from bondage, you can learn           |      |
| what life and freedom really are.                       |      |
| FAUST. No matter what I wear, I hardly can escape       |      |
| the torment of a life confined to earth.                | 1545 |
| I am too old to live for pleasure only,                 |      |
| too young to be without desire.                         |      |
| What can I hope for from this world?                    |      |
| You must abstain, refrain, renounce—                    |      |
| this is the everlasting song in every ear,              | 1550 |
| one that, our whole life long,                          |      |
| we hear each hour hoarsely singing.                     |      |
| When morning comes, I always wake in terror             |      |
| and feel like shedding bitter tears                     | 1555 |
| because the day I see will not fulfill                  |      |
| a single wish of mine before it's over,                 |      |
| will dampen any faintest hope of pleasure               |      |
| by its capricious strictures,                           |      |
| and with a thousand petty matters                       | 1560 |
| will stifle the creative urge that stirs my heart.      |      |
| At nightfall, too, I'm filled with apprehension         |      |
| when it is time to go to bed,                           |      |
| for there as well I'll fail to gain repose              |      |
| and will be frightened by wild dreams.                  | 1565 |
| The god that dwells within my breast                    |      |
| can deeply stir my inmost being;                        |      |
| the one that governs all my faculties                   |      |
| cannot realize its purposes;                            |      |
| and so for me existence is a burden,                    | 1570 |
| death to be welcomed, and this life detested.           |      |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. And yet Death never is a wholly welcome |      |
| guest.                                                  |      |
| FAUST. Happy the victor on whose brow                   |      |
| Death binds the blood-flecked wreath of laurel!         |      |
| And happy he who, after the mad dance,                  | 1575 |
| is found by Death in love's embrace!                    |      |
| What ecstasy to feel that lofty spirit's might—         |      |



if only, then, my soul had left this body!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. Still, someone, on that Easter night,  
 failed to imbibe a certain brownish fluid. 1580  
 FAUST. You seem to like to play the spy.  
 Mephistopheles. I may not be omniscient, but I do know  
 quite a lot.  
 FAUST. Though, then, sweet music long familiar  
 rescued me from a host of terrors,  
 and echoes of an earlier, happier time 1585  
 confused what still remained of childhood feelings,  
 now I can only curse all the enticements  
 that delude my soul with cheating visions,  
 all powers of persuasion and deception  
 that hold it here within its dreary cave! 1590  
 Cursed be, to start, the high opinion  
 that the mind has of itself!  
 Cursed be what as appearance  
 intrudes on and deludes our senses!  
 and cursed be the falseness of our dreams, 1595  
 their empty promise of a lasting name!  
 Cursed be what flatters us as things we own,  
 as wife and child, as fields our workmen plow!  
 Cursed be Mammon too, both when he, with his treasures,  
 incites us to bold enterprise 1600  
 and when, to provide us idle pleasure,  
 he cushions us a bed of ease!  
 A curse upon the nectar of the vine!  
 A curse upon love's highest favors!  
 A curse on hope! a curse on faith! 1605  
 but cursed be patience most of all!  
 CHORUS OF SPIRITS (*invisible*).  
 Grief and woe!  
 A beautiful world  
 that, by your violence,  
 has been destroyed, 1610  
 collapses and shatters,  
 crushed by a demigod!  
 Into the Void  
 we bear off the fragments,  
 singing a dirge 1615  
 for beauty now lost.  
 Build it again,

|                 |                                                                                                                                                                                               |      |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                 | O great child of Earth,<br>within your own bosom<br>build it anew                                                                                                                             | 1620 |
|                 | in still greater splendor!<br>Take a fresh course<br>and, no longer despairing,<br>start a new life;                                                                                          |      |
|                 | and may other songs<br>welcome it in!                                                                                                                                                         | 1625 |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. | Those little creatures<br>are my young dependents,<br>wise for their years;<br>fun and action—that's their counsel!                                                                           | 1630 |
|                 | They'd like to get you<br>out into the world,<br>away from a solitude<br>that stifles all life. –                                                                                             |      |
|                 | Be done with toying with your sorrows<br>that, vulture-like, consume your being;                                                                                                              | 1635 |
|                 | the worst society there is could show you<br>that you are just another human being.<br>Not that I mean you should be thrust<br>among the rabble!                                              | 1640 |
|                 | I'm not one of the great myself;<br>but should you wish<br>to make your way through life with me,<br>I'll gladly place myself at your disposal<br>here and now.                               | 1645 |
|                 | I will be your companion<br>and, if I suit you,<br>become your servant and your slave!                                                                                                        |      |
| FAUST.          | And in return for this, what am I to do?                                                                                                                                                      |      |
| MEPHISTO.       | You've lots of time until that needs to be<br>considered.                                                                                                                                     | 1650 |
| FAUST.          | Oh no! The devil is an egoist<br>and is not apt, for love of God,<br>to offer anyone assistance.<br>State in clear terms what you expect—<br>there's trouble in the household otherwise.      | 1655 |
|                 | Mephistopheles. I'll bind myself to serve you <i>here</i> ,<br>be at your beck and call without respite;<br>and if or when we meet again <i>beyond</i> ,<br>then you will do the same for me. |      |

FAUST. With the Beyond I cannot be much bothered; 1660  
 once you annihilate this world,  
 the other can have its turn at existing.  
 This earth's the source of all my joys,  
 and this sun shines upon my sorrows;  
 if ever I can be divorced from them, 1665  
 it cannot matter what then happens.  
 I do not want to hear still more discussion  
 of whether there'll be future loves and hates,  
 and whether also, in those spheres,  
 there's an Above or a Below. 1670

MEPHISTOPHELES. You can, on these conditions, take the risk.  
 Commit yourself, and you'll soon have the pleasure  
 of seeing here what my skills are;  
 I'll give you things no mortal's ever seen.

FAUST. And what have you to give, poor devil! 1675  
 Has any human spirit and its aspirations  
 ever been understood by such as you?  
 Of course you've food that cannot satisfy,  
 gold that, when held, will liquify  
 quicksilverlike as it turns red, 1680  
 games at which none can ever win,  
 a girl who, even in my arms, will with her eyes  
 pledge her affections to another,  
 the godlike satisfaction of great honor  
 that like a meteor is gone at once. 1685  
 Show me the fruit that, still unplucked, will rot  
 and trees that leaf each day anew!

MEPHISTOPHELES. These commissions don't dismay me,  
 I can oblige you with such marvels.  
 But, friend, there also comes a time when we prefer 1690  
 to savor something good in peace and quiet.

FAUST. If on a bed of sloth I ever lie contented,  
 may I be done for then and there!  
 If ever you, with lies and flattery,  
 can lull me into self-complacency 1695  
 or dupe me with a life of pleasure,  
 may that day be the last for me!  
 This is my wager!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Here's my hand!

FAUST. And mine again!

If I should ever say to any moment:  
     Tarry, remain!—you are so fair! 1700  
 then you may lay your fetters on me,  
 then I will gladly be destroyed!  
 Then they can toll the passing bell,  
 your obligations then be ended—  
 the clock may stop, its hand may fall, 1705  
 and time at last for me be over!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Consider well your words—we'll not forget  
 them.

FAUST. Nor should you! What I've said  
 is not presumptuous blasphemy.  
 If I stagnate, I am a slave— 1710  
 why should I care if yours or someone else's?

MEPHISTOPHELES. This very day at the doctoral banquet,  
 I'll do my duty as your servant.  
 One other matter!—as insurance  
 I must request a line or two in writing. 1715

FAUST. So you want something written, too, you pedant?  
 Have you not ever known a man whose word was good?  
 Is it not enough that my spoken word  
 grants perpetual title to my days?  
 Do not the tides of life race on unceasing— 1720  
 how could a promise obligate me!  
 But still our hearts have their illusions,  
 and who would care to live without them?  
 Happy the man whose heart is loyal to his pledges—  
 he'll not be grieved by any sacrifice they ask. 1725  
 And yet, a parchment document that bears a seal—  
 that is a spectre that all people shun.  
 The word begins to die before it's left the pen,  
 and wax and goatskin take control.  
 What do you, evil spirit, want from me— 1730  
 marble or brass, foolscap or parchment?  
 Am I to write with chisel, stylus, pen?  
 You are at liberty to choose.

MEPHISTOPHELES. How can you work yourself up so quickly  
 to this heat of rhetorical exaggeration? 1735  
 Any small scrap of paper is all right.  
 A tiny drop of blood will do to sign your name.

FAUST. If this is all that you require,  
 we may as well go through with the tomfoolery.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Blood is a very special juice. 1740

FAUST. You need not fear that I will break this contract!  
 It is to strive with all my might  
 that I am promising to do.  
 My self-esteem was overly inflated—  
 my proper place is on your level. 1745  
 The Great Spirit rejected me with scorn,  
 and Nature's doors are closed against me.  
 The thread of thought is tom asunder,  
 and I am surfeited with knowledge still.  
 Let us sate the fervors of passion 1750  
 in depths of sensuality!  
 May your magic be ready at any time  
 to show me miracles whose veil cannot be lifted!  
 Let's plunge into the torrents of time,  
 into the whirl of eventful existence! 1755  
 There, as chance wills,  
 let pain and pleasure,  
 success and frustration, alternate;  
 unceasing activity alone reveals our worth.

MEPHISTOPHELES. You are not limited in any way. 1760  
 You can sample whatever you like  
 and snatch what suits your passing fancy—  
 nothing you like will give you indigestion.  
 I urge you: help yourself and don't be bashful!

FAUST. You heard me say that pleasure doesn't matter. 1765  
 Excitement, poignant happiness, love-hate,  
 quickening frustration—to these I'm consecrated!  
 Henceforth my heart, cured of its thirst for knowledge,  
 will welcome pain and suffering  
 and I'm resolved my inmost being 1770  
 shall share in what's the lot of all mankind,  
 that I shall understand their heights and depths,  
 shall fill my heart with all their joys and griefs,  
 and so expand my self to theirs  
 and, like them, suffer shipwreck too. 1775

MEPHISTOPHELES. Take someone's word who has been chewing  
 on this tough morsel many thousand years:  
 no one, from cradle to the bier,  
 is able to digest that stale and sour dough!  
 This universe—believe a devil— 1780  
 was made for no one but a god!  
 God lives surrounded by eternal glory,  
 He cast us into utter darkness,

and you must be content with day-and-night.  
 FAUST. I've told you what I want!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Then well and good! 1785  
 Yet, there's one point that troubles me:  
 that human life's so short, and art is long.  
 I think that you could use a bit of guidance.  
 Go get yourself a poet-partner  
 and let his fancy have free rein 1790  
 to heap upon your honored head  
 all virtues and distinctions:  
 a lion's heart,  
 the quickness of the stag,  
 hot Italian blood, 1795  
 the North's reliability.  
 Let him provide you with the secret arts  
 of wedding magnanimity to malice,  
 of scheming how to fall in love  
 with the impulsive ardor of the young. 1800  
 I wouldn't mind meeting such a fellow myself  
 and would grant him the title of Sir Microcosm.

FAUST. What am I, then, if there is no attaining  
 those crowning heights of humanness  
 toward which my every fiber's straining? 1805

MEPHISTOPHELES. The upshot is: you are just what you are.  
 Pile wigs with countless curls upon your head,  
 wear shoes that lift you up an ell,  
 and still you will remain just what you are.

FAUST. How futile it has been to have amassed 1810  
 a treasury of human thought and knowledge!  
 Even when I finally stop and rest,  
 I feel no source of renewed strength within me;  
 I have not grown one whit in stature,  
 I am no nearer to the Infinite. 1815

MEPHISTOPHELES. You're looking at these matters, my dear sir,  
 the way that ordinary people do;  
 we've got to be a bit more clever,  
 to get some joy from life before it's fled.  
 Good heavens! It is obvious your hands and feet, 1820  
 your head—and other parts—belong to you;  
 but all the things I have free use of,  
 don't they belong to me as fully?  
 If I can pay for six strong horses,

|                                                                   |        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| do I not own their power?—                                        | 1825   |
| as if my legs were twenty-four                                    |        |
| I run about and am important.                                     |        |
| So don't be glum! Stop all this brooding,                         |        |
| be off with me at once into the world!                            |        |
| Take my word for it, anyone who thinks too much                   | 1830   |
| is like an animal that in a barren heath                          |        |
| some evil spirit drives around in circles                         |        |
| while all about lie fine green pastures.                          |        |
| FAUST. How do we start?                                           |        |
| MEPHISTOPHELES.           We simply leave.                        |        |
| What sort of torture chamber have we here?                        | 1835   |
| What kind of life do you call this,                               |        |
| boring yourself and your beardless youths?                        |        |
| Leave that to your colleague Paunch!                              |        |
| Why knock yourself out making bricks of straw?                    |        |
| If any case, you cannot risk                                      | 1840   |
| telling the boys the best of what you know. –                     |        |
| I hear one now out in the hall.                                   |        |
| FAUST. I cannot bring myself to face him.                         |        |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. The poor fellow has had a long wait,              |        |
| he mustn't leave without some consolation.                        | 1845   |
| Just let me have your cap and gown—                               |        |
| ( <i>Changing clothes.</i> ) this costume's certain to become me— |        |
| and rely on my common sense!                                      |        |
| A quarter of an hour's all I need;                                |        |
| meanwhile, get ready for our glorious expedition!                 | 1850   |
|                                                                   | [Exit  |
|                                                                   | FAUST. |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. Scorn learning, if you must, and reason,          |        |
| the highest faculty mankind possesses,                            |        |
| let your fondness for self-deception                              |        |
| involve you deeper still in magic and illusion,                   |        |
| and it's dead certain you'll be mine! –                           | 1855   |
| Fate has endowed him with a spirit                                |        |
| that cannot curb its onward rush                                  |        |
| and that, precipitately striving,                                 |        |
| overleaps the joys that this world affords it.                    |        |
| I'll drag him through a life of riot,                             | 1860   |
| through meaningless inanities;                                    |        |
| he'll writhe, be paralyzed, and when he's stuck,                  |        |

before his avid, starving lips  
 I'll dangle food and drink; 1865  
 he'll plead in vain for nourishment,  
 and even if he had no contract with the devil,  
 he'd end up ruined anyhow!

*Enter a STUDENT.*

STUDENT. I've only been here a short time,  
 and come to pay you my respects,  
 and to consult a man whose name is mentioned 1870  
 in tones of reverence by all.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Your courtesy is much appreciated!  
 As you can see, I'm just a man like all the rest.  
 Have you paid any other calls as yet?

STUDENT. I hope you'll please be my advisor. 1875  
 I'm here with all the best intentions,  
 am energetic and in no great need of money;  
 my mother hesitated to send me away;  
 now I'm out here, I really want to learn.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Then you have come to the right place. 1880

STUDENT. To tell the truth, I'd like to go on somewhere else:  
 I really don't feel comfortable  
 inside these walls, within these halls.  
 It's awfully cramped, and one can't see  
 a bit of green, a single tree, 1885  
 and in those classrooms with their benches  
 I can no longer hear or see or think.

MEPHISTOPHELES. It's simply a matter of what you're used to.  
 Just as an infant is at first  
 reluctant to take its mother's breast, 1890  
 at which it soon feeds eagerly,  
 so will you, with each successive day,  
 be happier at Wisdom's breasts.

STUDENT. I'm eager to be at her bosom;  
 but tell me, please, how can I get there? 1895

MEPHISTOPHELES. Before you go on, would you first say  
 in what faculty you intend to study?

STUDENT. I'd like to be a proper scholar  
 and have a comprehensive knowledge  
 of what there is on earth and in the sky, 1900  
 of nature and all the branches of learning.

MEPHISTOPHELES. You certainly are on the right track;  
 but you must be sure that nothing distracts you.

STUDENT. Body and soul I'm bent upon it;



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| and yet, I must admit, I wouldn't mind<br>some free time and recreation<br>when there's a pleasant summer holiday.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 1905 |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. Don't waste your time, it's gone so fast,<br>but arranging it right will save you plenty of it.<br>Accordingly, dear friend, my first advice<br>is that you hear the <i>Collegium Logicum</i> .<br>The course will discipline your mind<br>and lace it tight in iron-boots<br>so that it will no longer rush<br>headlong along the paths of thought<br>or, like a will-o'-the-wisp perhaps,<br>wander at random everywhere.<br>Days on end will be used to teach you<br>that what you once did as a single act,<br>as easily as you eat or drink, | 1910 |
| must really be done as one-two-three.<br>Although in fact the fabric of thought<br>is like a masterpiece of weaving,<br>for which one treadle moves a thousand threads<br>as back and forth the shuttles fly<br>and threads move quicker than the eye<br>and a single stroke makes a thousand ties,<br>nonetheless the philosopher comes<br>and proves to you it had to be thus:<br>the first was so, the second so,                                                                                                                                              | 1915 |
| and hence the third and fourth are so;<br>but if there were no first and second<br>the third and fourth could never exist.<br>Students applaud this everywhere,<br>but fail to master the weaver's art.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 1920 |
| To understand some living thing and to describe it,<br>the student starts by ridding it of its spirit;<br>he then holds all its parts within his hand<br>except, alas! for the spirit that bound them together—<br>which chemists, unaware they're being ridiculous,<br>denominate <i>encheiresin naturae</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 1925 |
| STUDENT. I don't quite follow what you're saying.<br>MEPHISTOPHELES. It will be much easier very soon,<br>when you have learned the use of syllogisms<br>and how to put all things in their right classes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 1930 |
| STUDENT. I am as stupefied by this<br>as if there were a mill-wheel turning in my head.<br>MEPHISTOPHELES. After this, and before anything else,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 1935 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 1940 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 1945 |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| you've got to tackle metaphysics!                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 1950 |
| Make sure you grasp in all its profundity<br>what never was meant for the human brain;<br>but whether it was or whether it wasn't,<br>there's always some high-sounding word available.<br>But in your first semester, most of all,<br>you must be faithfully methodical!                                                                                 | 1955 |
| You'll have five classes every day;<br>when the bell rings be in your seat!<br>Be well prepared before you go<br>and memorize each section you're assigned<br>so that, once you are there, you can make sure<br>nothing is said but what is in the book;<br>but by all means keep diligently writing<br>as if you heard the Holy Ghost dictating!         | 1960 |
| STUDENT. That's nothing you need tell me twice!<br>I see how useful it will be—<br>what you've got down in black and white<br>you can take home and then be sure of it.                                                                                                                                                                                   | 1965 |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. Now tell me what's the faculty you've chosen!                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |      |
| STUDENT. I can't quite bring myself to take up law.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |      |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. Nor can I blame you very much for that,<br>knowing as I do the state it's in today.<br>Statutes and laws, like inherited sickness,<br>are languidly transmitted<br>from one generation to the next<br>and slowly shift from one place to another.                                                                                         | 1970 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 1975 |
| Sense becomes nonsense, or a benefit a nuisance—<br>it's just too bad you're a descendant!<br>As for the right that's ours by birth,<br>alas! that never is at issue.                                                                                                                                                                                     |      |
| STUDENT. You make my own aversion greater.<br>Happy he, who has you as teacher!<br>Now I'm almost willing to study theology.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 1980 |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. I wouldn't want you to be led astray.<br>To tell the truth about this branch of learning,<br>it's hard to keep from taking the wrong course,<br>and there's a lot of latent poison in it<br>that hardly differs from the medicines it offers.<br>Here, too, it's best to listen to a single teacher<br>and swear by every word he utters. | 1985 |
| Make it a principle to give words your allegiance!<br>You then will enter by the one safe gate                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 1990 |

|                                                                 |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| into the temple of certitude.                                   |      |
| STUDENT. But there must be ideas behind the words.              |      |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. That's true, but do not fret too much about it, |      |
| since it's precisely when ideas are lacking                     | 1995 |
| that some word will appear to save the situation.               |      |
| Words are perfect for waging controversies,                     |      |
| with words you can construct entire systems,                    |      |
| in words you can place perfect faith,                           |      |
| and from a word no jot or tittle may be taken.                  | 2000 |
| STUDENT. Pardon my detaining you with so many questions,        |      |
| but I must trouble you still further.                           |      |
| Would you be willing to provide me, too,                        |      |
| with a few helpful words on medicine?                           |      |
| Three years are a short time, alas!                             | 2005 |
| and yet the subject is so vast.                                 |      |
| If one could only get a pointer,                                |      |
| he wouldn't have to grope so in the dark.                       |      |
| MEPHISTOPHELES ( <i>aside</i> ).                                |      |
| I've had enough of a sober tone,                                |      |
| it's time to play the real devil again.                         | 2010 |
| ( <i>Aloud.</i> ) The essence of medicine's easily grasped:     |      |
| you study nature, you study man,                                |      |
| but in the end you let things take                              |      |
| the course God wills.                                           |      |
| It's pointless to waste time by being scientific—               | 2015 |
| you learn only as much as you possibly can;                     |      |
| but if you profit from your opportunities                       |      |
| you're a made man.                                              |      |
| You have a rather pleasing figure, too,                         |      |
| and no doubt the assurance to go with it,                       | 2020 |
| so if you only have self-confidence,                            |      |
| others will place their confidence in you.                      |      |
| Above all, learn to handle women;                               |      |
| their myriads of aches and pains,                               |      |
| that never never cease,                                         | 2025 |
| can all be cured if you know the right spot—                    |      |
| and if your behavior is halfway discreet                        |      |
| they all will be at your beck and call.                         |      |
| A title's needed first, to reassure them                        |      |
| that you have greater skill than other men,                     | 2030 |
| and right away you're welcome to investigate                    |      |
| what someone else needs years to reconnoiter;                   |      |
| you will know how to take a dainty pulse                        |      |
| and, with a cautious ardent glance,                             |      |

to put your arms about her slender hips 2035  
and see how tightly she is laced.

STUDENT. Now that's more like it—and it's practical!

MEPHISTOPHELES. All theories, dear friend, are gray;  
the golden tree of life is green.

STUDENT. I'd swear I'm in some sort of daze. 2040  
Perhaps you'll let me bother you again,  
to hear the rest of all your wisdom?

MEPHISTOPHELES. I'm always glad to be of service.

STUDENT. I cannot bear to take my leave  
until you've written in my album. 2045  
Grant me, I beg, that token of your favor!

MEPHISTOPHELES. With pleasure.  
*He writes, and returns the album.*

STUDENT (*reading*).  
*Eritis sicut Deus, scientes bonum et malum.*  
*Closing the album reverently, the STUDENT bows and withdraws.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. Follow the ancient saw, and my cousin the serpent,  
and I warrant your likeness to God will some day perplex  
you. 2050

*Enter FAUST.*

FAUST. And now, where are we going?

MEPHISTOPHELES. Where you please.  
Let's first see ordinary life, the *grand monde* later;  
you'll find this course—don't pay the registrar a fee—  
both practical and entertaining!

FAUST. Yet as you see from my long beard 2055  
I lack all nonchalance of manner.  
I know that this experiment won't work;  
I never could adapt to people.  
When I'm with them I feel so insignificant;  
I'll never be at ease at all. 2060

MEPHISTOPHELES. Everything will work out fine, my friend;  
once you gain confidence, your manners will be easy.

FAUST. But how are we to start our travels?  
Where have you horses or a coach and groom?

MEPHISTOPHELES. We'll simply lay my cloak out flat; 2065  
it will carry us through the air.  
But just be sure, since there's a certain risk,  
that you don't carry too much luggage.  
Some heated air that I'll concoct

will lift us off the ground with ease,  
and if we're light enough, we'll quickly be high up.  
Congratulations on your new career!

---

2070

[*Exeunt.*]

## AUERBACH'S WINE-CELLAR IN LEIPZIG

*A lively drinking-party.*

FROSCH. Why aren't you drinking? Why is nobody laughing?

I'll teach you not to make long faces!

Today you're like wet straw,

although you normally are scintillating.

2075

BRANDER. It's all your fault; you haven't contributed  
anything silly or piggishly bawdy.

FROSCH (*emptying a glass of wine on BRANDER'S head*).

There's both for you!

BRANDER. You pig twice over!

FROSCH. That's what you wanted, isn't it!

2080

SIEBEL. Kick anyone out who starts to quarrel!

Now drink, let's fill our lungs and sing a good loud round!

Wake up! Hey there! Halloo!

ALTMAYER. Ouch! he's done me in!

Some cotton, quick! The fellow's splitting my ears.

SIEBEL. It's only when the ceiling echoes

that you feel the full power of the bass.

2085

FROSCH. That's right, kick anyone out who doesn't approve!

Trala, trala, trala!

ALTMAYER. Trala, trala, trala!

FROSCH. Our throats are now on pitch.

(*Singing.*) Our Holy Roman Empire, lads,

2090

what holds it still together?

BRANDER. A nasty song! For shame—political,

disgusting! Thank the Lord each time you wake  
that the Empire is none of your affair.

I, at least, think myself better off  
not being emperor or chancellor.

2095

But we must have our leader too,  
 so let's elect ourselves a pope—  
 you know capacity is the main factor  
 for deciding who'll be elevated. 2100  
 FROSCH (*singing*).  
     O nightingale, soar on above,  
     and bring ten thousand greetings to my love.  
 SIEBEL. No greetings to that love! I'll have none of that!  
 FROSCH. Greetings, and kisses too! You're not the one to stop  
     me!  
 (*Singing.*)      Draw the bolt, the night is clear. 2105  
     Draw the bolt, your lover's here.  
     Shut the bolt, now dawn draws near.  
 SIEBEL. Go on and sing, and praise her all you want.  
     The time will come when I will have the laugh on you.  
     She made a fool of me, and you'll get the same treatment. 2110  
     She ought to have a goblin for her lover!  
     He could have fun with her at any crossroads,  
     and some old goat, back from the witches' sabbath,  
     should bleat good night to her as he goes galloping by!  
     A decent fellow of real flesh and blood 2115  
     is far too good for such a slut.  
     Greetings! the only kind I'd bring her  
     are those that break her window-panes!  
 BRANDER (*pounding on the table*).  
     Order, order! I demand order, sirs!  
     You will admit I know what's proper; 2120  
     we have some lovers sitting with us,  
     and I must offer them a serenade  
     befitting their condition.  
     The song's brand-new, so pay attention,  
  
     and join me loudly for the refrain! 2125  
 (*Singing.*)      A rat in a cellar had built him a nest  
     and daily grew fatter and smoother;  
     he lined his paunch with butter and lard,  
     was as portly as Doctor Luther.  
     The cook, she set some poison out; 2130  
     and then he felt as helpless as if—  
     as if he'd fallen in love.  
 CHORUS (*with gusto*). As if he'd fallen in love!  
 BRANDER.      He ran around, and in and out,  
     and drank at every puddle, 2135

he gnawed and scratched, tore up the house,  
but still was in a fuddle;  
he leaped and leaped in frantic pain,  
but soon he knew it was in vain—  
as if he'd fallen in love. 2140

CHORUS. As if he'd fallen in love!

BRANDER. In terror then and broad daylight  
he ran into the kitchen,  
flopped on the hearth and, sad to say,  
lay gasping, moaning, twitching. 2145  
The poisoner now only laughed:  
that sounds to me like a last gasp—  
as if he'd fallen in love.

CHORUS. As if he'd fallen in love!

SIEBEL. The stupid fools find that amusing! 2150

I do not think it's very nice  
to go and poison some poor rat.

BRANDER. Are rats some special favorites of yours?

ALTMAYER. He's getting fat and growing bald!

His own misfortunes have made him soft-hearted, 2155  
and what he sees in a bloated rat  
is a spitting image of himself.

*Enter FAUST and MEPHISTOPHELES.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. I must, to get us started right,  
now introduce you to conviviality  
and let you see how merry life can be. 2160  
Here, for these people, every day's a holiday.  
Without much wit, but with great satisfaction,  
they whirl in narrow, separate rounds  
like kittens chasing their own tails.

And if they can't complain of headache 2165  
and still have credit with the landlord,  
they're pleased with life and free of cares.

BRANDER. Those two are travelers who've just arrived,  
as you can see from their peculiar manner;  
they haven't been in town an hour. 2170

FROSCH. That's it, of course! That's why I'm all for Leipzig!

It is a smaller Paris and refines one's manners.

SIEBEL. What do you think these strangers are?

FROSCH. Leave it to me! Before they've drunk a glass of wine  
I'll worm their secrets out of them 2175

as easily as you pull out a baby-tooth.  
I think that they're aristocrats,  
since they look haughty and dissatisfied.  
BRANDER. I'd wager that they're mountebanks.  
ALTMAYER. Perhaps!

FROSCH. Just watch how I bamboozle them! 2180

MEPHISTOPHELES (*to FAUST*).  
Simple folk never sense the devil's presence,  
not even when his hands are on their throats.  
FAUST. Our greetings, gentlemen!

SIEBEL. And ours to you, with  
thanks!

(*In a low voice, looking at MEPHISTOPHELES sidewise.*)  
Why does the fellow limp with that one foot?

MEPHISTOPHELES. Do we have your permission to sit down with  
you? 2185

Instead of a good drink, since that's not to be had,  
we'll have the pleasure of your company.

ALTMAYER. You seem a very fastidious man.

FROSCH. No doubt you got away from Rippach rather late?  
Did you have supper first with Mr. Jack? 2190

MEPHISTOPHELES. We didn't stop and call today;  
on our last trip we had a word with him.  
He had a lot to say about his cousins  
and sends his best regards to every one of them.

*He bows to FROSCH.*

ALTMAYER (*sotto voce*). He got you there! He knows the game!

SIEBEL. The rascal's  
sly! 2195

FROSCH. Just wait and see, I'll catch him yet!

MEPHISTOPHELES. If I am not mistaken, we could hear  
some well-trained voices doing choral songs?  
I'm sure that with this vaulted ceiling  
all singing has a fine, full resonance. 2200

FROSCH. Are you by any chance a virtuoso?

MEPHISTOPHELES. Oh no! I lack the strength, although I love to  
sing.

ALTMAYER. Give us a song!

MEPHISTOPHELES. As many as you may request!

SIEBEL. No old stuff, though! Some piece that's new.

MEPHISTOPHELES. We've only just come back from Spain,  
that lovely land of wine and song. 2205



(*Singing.*) A king there was they tell of  
who had a great big flea –

FROSCH. Hear that! A flea! Did you catch what he said?  
A flea's nice company, I'm sure! 2210

MEPH. A king there was they tell of  
who had a great big flea  
and loved him no less dearly  
  
than if a son were he.  
And so he calls his tailor, 2215  
and in the tailor goes:  
Measure my squire for breeches  
and for a suit of clothes!

BRANDER. Don't you forget to have the tailor clearly told  
to take his measurements precisely 2220  
and, if he values his own neck,  
to leave no wrinkles in the breeches!

MEPHISTOPHELES. In cloth of silk and velvet  
the squire now was dressed,  
had ribbons on his jacket, 2225  
a cross upon his breast,  
was minister directly  
and wore a splendid star.  
At court all his relations  
were soon advanced quite far. 2230  
Court life was then a torment  
for ladies and their knights,  
both queen and waiting-woman  
had many stings and bites,  
but no one dared to crack them 2235  
or scratch the place that itched.  
We're free to crack and crush them  
whenever there's a twitch.

CHORUS (*con gusto*). We're free to crack and crush them  
whenever there's a twitch. 2240

FROSCH. Bravo! Bravo! That was fine!

SIEBEL. Down with all fleas, now and forever!

BRANDER. Use your nails well, don't let any escape!

ALTMAYER. Hurrah for liberty! Hurrah for wine!

MEPHISTOPHELES. I'd gladly drink a glass to liberty 2245  
 if only your wines were a trifle better.

SIEBEL. We don't want to hear that complaint again!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Did I not fear the landlord might object,  
 I would offer these worthy guests  
 some samples from our private cellar. 2250

SIEBEL. Just bring them on! I'll be responsible.

FROSCH. If you have something good, we'll sing your praises.  
 But don't pour just a little in the glass;  
 if I'm to be a proper judge  
 my mouth must be well filled. 2255

ALTMAYER (*sotto voce*). I see they're from the Rhineland.

MEPHISTOPHELES. An auger, please!

BRANDER. And what's it for?  
 You can't have left your casks outside?

ALTMAYER. Back there's a basket with the landlord's tools.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*taking the auger*).  
 (*To FROSCH.*) Tell me what wine you'd like to taste. 2260

FROSCH. How do you mean your question? Is there so great a  
 choice?

MEPHISTOPHELES. You each can have whatever you prefer.

ALTMAYER (*to FROSCH*).  
 Ah, you're licking your lips already, I see.

FROSCH. Well, then! if I can choose, I'll have a good Rhine  
 wine.  
 One's native products are the best. 2265

MEPHISTOPHELES (*boring a hole next to FROSCH in the edge of the table*).  
 Get me some wax, so I'll have stoppers ready.

ALTMAYER. Oh! it is only a magician's trick.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*to BRANDER*). How about you?

BRANDER. I'll have  
 champagne,  
 and of the kind that's really bubbly!  
*While Mephistopheles bores, one of the students makes wax stoppers and plugs  
 the holes.*

BRANDER. Imported goods can't always be avoided— 2270  
 what's best is often not home-grown.  
 Your proper German can't abide those Frenchmen,  
 but he's quite glad to drink their wines.

SIEBEL. (*as MEPHISTOPHELES approaches his place*).  
 To tell the truth, I don't like wine too dry—

give me a glass of something good and sweet! 2275  
 MEPHISTOPHELES (*boring*). This tap will soon give you Tokay.  
 ALTMAYER. Come, sirs, admit what you are doing!  
 It's plain to me you're making fools of us.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. Hardly that! With such worthy company  
 to do so would be just a bit too risky. 2280  
 Speak up! Don't beat about the bush!  
 What kind of wine do you prefer?  
 ALTMAYER. Any will do! Don't waste time asking!  
*The boring and plugging of the holes is now finished.*  
 MEPHISTOPHELES (*with fantastic gestures*).  
 On the vine grapes grow,  
 on the he-goat, horns; 2285  
 wine is juice, vine is wood,  
 wooden tables give wine as good.  
 Nature's secret is now revealed!  
 Faith provides a miracle!  
 Now draw the plugs and drink your fill! 2290  
 ALL (*as they draw the stoppers and the several wines flow into  
 their  
 glasses*). O lovely fountain, all for us!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. But I must warn you—do not spill one drop!  
*They drink glass after glass.*  
 ALL (*singing*). We are as happy as cannibals,  
 five hundred swine can't beat us!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. There's freedom for you—see a happy people! 2295  
 FAUST. I wish we could go on our way.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. First wait and see a demonstration  
 of marvelous animal spirits.  
 SIEBEL (*drinking carelessly and spilling wine which turns to flame  
 as it  
 hits the floor*). Help! fire! help! The flames of hell!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES (*conjuring the flame*).  
 Peace, friendly element, be still! 2300  
 (To SIEBEL.) That time it wasn't much—a spark from  
 purgatory.  
 SIEBEL. What do you mean? You wait! You'll pay for this!  
 Do you know whom you're dealing with?  
 FROSCH. Don't try that trick a second time with us!  
 ALTMAYER. I think we might tell him to make himself scarce. 2305  
 SIEBEL. I say, sir, you are impudent

to practice your hocus-pocus here!  
MEPHISTOPHELES. Be still, old wine-tun!  
SIEBEL. Broomstick, you!  
To injury you want to add your insults!  
BRANDER. You wait! You're asking for a beating! 2310  
ALTMAYER (*pulling a stopper, so that fire shoots out from the table at him*). I'm burning! I'm on fire!  
SIEBEL. It's black magic!  
Stab him! The fellow is outside the law!  
*They rush at MEPHISTOPHELES with drawn knives.*  
MEPHISTOPHELES (*with gravity of tone and gesture*).  
Eye, see what's not!  
Charm, change the scene!  
Stay here, but be there! 2315  
*Standing still, they look in amazement at each other.*  
ALTMAYER. Where am I? What a pretty country!  
FROSCH. Do I see vineyards!  
SIEBEL. And grapes everywhere!  
BRANDER. Look underneath the leaves of this green arbor!  
See the fine vine! See all the grapes!  
*He grabs SIEBEL'S nose; the others do the same with each other, raising their knives.*  
MEPHISTOPHELES (*as before*).  
Remove your blindfold from them, Error! 2320  
And you! remember well the devil's joke.  
MEPHISTOPHELES *disappears with FAUST; the revelers separate.*  
SIEBEL. What's going on!  
ALTMAYER. What's this?  
FROSCH. Was that your nose?  
BRANDER (*to SIEBEL*). And here I'm holding yours right now!  
ALTMAYER. I felt a shock that went all through me.  
I can't stand up, get me a chair! 2325  
FROSCH. Just what did happen? Can you tell me?  
SIEBEL. Where is that fellow? If I find him,  
he won't get out of here alive!  
ALTMAYER. With my own eyes I saw him—riding on a keg  
out through the tavern door. – 2330  
Somehow my feet are as heavy as lead.  
(*Turning toward the table.*)  
I say, could there still be some wine?

SIEBEL. It was all make-believe—deception and illusion.

FROSCH. I really thought that I was drinking wine.

BRANDER. But did we ever see those grapes?

2335

ALTMAYER. And yet some people claim there are no miracles!

---

## WITCH'S KITCHEN

*A low hearth with a caldron on the fire; various figures appear in the vapor rising from it. A SHE-APE sits beside the caldron, skimming it and watching lest it boil over. The BUCK and YOUNG APES are sitting beside her and warming themselves. Ceiling and walls are decorated with the most grotesque utensils of sorcery. – Enter FAUST and MEPHISTOPHELES.*

FAUST. I do not like this sorcery at all!

How can you promise I'll be cured of anything  
in such a mad hodgepodge of lunacy?

Am I to seek assistance from some crone? 2340

Can the foul mess that she concocts  
take thirty years from my existence?

Poor me, if you don't know a better way!

Now any hope I had is gone.

Is there no natural specific 2345  
discovered by a less ignoble mind?

MEPHISTOPHELES. My friend, you're talking sense again.

Nature does have a way to make you young;

but it's recorded in another book,

and in a rather curious chapter. 2350

FAUST. I demand you tell me.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Very well! A recipe

that takes no money, magic, or physician:

Go out at once into the country

and set to hoeing and to digging;

confine yourself—and your thoughts too— 2355

within the narrowest spheres;

subsist on food that's plain and simple,

live with your cattle as their peer, and don't disdain

to fertilize in person fields that you will reap.

Take my word for it, there's no better way 2360

to remain young until you're eighty.

FAUST. That's work I am not used to, nor can I bear the  
thought

of having to do labor with a shovel.

A life so much constricted would never do for me.

MEPHISTO. Since that's the case, your crone will have to help us. 2365

FAUST. Why does it have to be a witch?  
Can't you yourself concoct the potion?

MEPHISTOPHELES. A fine way, that, for me to spend my time!  
I could construct a thousand bridges quicker.  
Knowledge and skill are not enough; 2370  
a job like this requires patience.  
A calm, still spirit must toil for many years,  
only time gives the subtle ferment potency.  
And the ingredients are very special! 2375  
Of course the devil taught her how to do it,  
but he can't do the work himself.

(*Seeing the APES.*) Look, aren't these people elegant—  
that is the maid, and he is the flunkey!  
(*To the APES.*) Your mistress, I infer, is not at home? 2380

THE APES. Dining out!  
Off she went  
by the chimney vent!

MEPHISTOPHELES. How long do her sprees normally last?

THE APES. As long as we rest and warm our paws. 2385

MEPHISTOPHELES (*to FAUST*).  
What do you think of these mannerly beasts?

FAUST. I've never seen any less attractive.

MEPHISTOPHELES. I can't agree—their conversation  
is just the kind that I like best.

(*To the APES.*) But tell me, my little jackanapes! 2390  
why are you stirring that sickening mush?

THE APES. We are cooking a watery soup for the needy.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Make it truly insipid, and many others will want it.

BUCK APE (*sidling up to MEPHISTOPHELES*).  
Come, sir, play dice!  
To be rich is so nice— 2395  
just let me win!  
Brains I'm not strong in,  
but if I had pence  
they'd say I had sense.

MEPHISTOPHELES. This ape would think it was a privilege 2400  
to be allowed to play the lottery!  
*The YOUNG APES, who have been playing with a large sphere, now roll it forward.*

BUCK APE. This is your world:

rising and falling,  
constantly whirling;  
it tinkles like glass, 2405  
which breaks so fast,  
and it's hollow, alas!  
Here's a bright spot,  
and here one still brighter—  
here I'm alive! 2410  
Son, if you love me,  
have nothing to do with it  
or it will kill you—  
the clay that it's made of  
turns into sharp splinters. 2415

MEPHISTOPHELES. What is the sieve for?

BUCK APE (*taking it down*).

If you're a thief  
I'd know it at once.

(*Running to the SHE-APE and having her look through it.*)

Look through the sieve!  
You know the thief well, 2420  
but his name you won't tell!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*approaching the hearth*). And what is this pot?

BUCK AND SHE-APE. Poor idiot he!

He's not heard of the pot,  
not heard of the caldron! 2425

MEPHISTOPHELES. Beasts with no manners!

BUCK APE. Hold on to this hearth-brush  
and sit down in a chair!

*The APE forces MEPHISTOPHELES into an armchair.*

FAUST (*who meanwhile has been standing before a mirror,  
sometimes approaching and sometimes moving away  
from it*).

What am I seeing in this magic mirror?  
A form whose beauty is divine! 2430  
O lend me, Love, your fleetest wings  
and lead me to Elysium!  
Alas, that when I leave this point  
and venture any closer to her,  
I see her only in a sort of haze! – 2435  
A picture of a woman of surpassing beauty!



Can any woman be so lovely?  
 Am I allowed to see, in this recumbent form,  
 the essence of all paradises?  
 Does earth contain its counterpart? 2440

MEPHISTOPHELES. It's obvious that if a god works six hard days  
 and, when he's done, himself cries bravo,  
 something is bound to turn out right.  
 While you are at it, look your fill!  
 I can easily find you a girl just like that, 2445  
 and the man will be happy whom fate allows  
 to take her as his lawful wife!  
*While FAUST continues to look into the mirror, MEPHISTOPHELES lounges in the  
 armchair, toying with the hearth-brush.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. Here I sit like a king on his throne,  
 holding a scepter, lacking only my crown.  
*THE APES, who have been jostling each other and making various strange  
 movements, now shout loudly and bring MEPHISTOPHELES a crown.*

THE APES. Be ever so kind 2450  
 and patch up this crown  
 with sweat and with blood!  
*(They handle the crown clumsily, breaking it into two pieces, with which they  
 dance about.)*  
 Now we have done it! –  
 We've speech and we've sight,  
 we listen and write – 2455

FAUST (*looking into the mirror*). Can this be driving me to  
 madness!  
 Mephistopheles (*pointing to the APES*).  
 Even my head begins to reel and pound.

THE APES. AND IF IT'S OUR LUCK  
 to make some bit of sense,  
 our writing's profound! 2460

FAUST (*as before*). A fire has been kindled in my heart!  
 Let's get away from here, and quickly!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*still pointing*).  
 Well, there's one thing you must admit:  
 these poets are completely honest.  
*The caldron, which the SHE-APE has meanwhile neglected, begins to boil  
 over; there is great flame, which flares up the chimney.*

THE WITCH (*descending through the flame and screaming horribly*).  
 Ouch! Ow! Ouch! Ow! 2465  
 You stupid beast! You filthy sow,

forgetting the kettle and scorching your mistress!  
Confounded beast!

*She sees* FAUST *and* MEPHISTOPHELES.

WITCH. What's going on here? 2470

Why are you two here?

What do you want here?

How did you get here?

Here is some fire

to torment your bones!

*She plunges the skimming ladle into the caldron and splashes flames towards*

FAUST, MEPHISTOPHELES, *and the APES; the latter whimper.*

MEPHISTOPHELES (*reversing the brush he has been holding, and smashing glassware and pottery*).

To pieces! to pieces! 2475

See the brew run,

see the glass break!

It's jolly good fun

to be beating the time

to the song of a slut. 2480

*The WITCH recoils in rage and horror.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. You horrid bag of bones! Do you know who I  
am?

Do you not recognize your lord and master?

I see no reason not to punish you,

to dash you and your spirit-apes to pieces.

Have you lost all respect for my red doublet? 2485

Is this cock's-feather now unknown to you?

Have I concealed my countenance?

Am I supposed to introduce myself?

WITCH. Pardon, my lord, the rude reception—

it's all because I miss your cloven hoof! 2490

And where on earth are your two ravens?

MEPHISTOPHELES. This one time your excuse will do;

it has indeed been quite a while

since we two saw each other last.

Refinement's making everybody slick, 2495

and so the devil too has been affected;

the Northern phantom's gone and vanished,

you see I have no horns or tail or claws;

as for the foot I cannot do without,

it would impair my social chances, 2500

and so, like many a young man,  
 I wear false calves, and long have done so.  
 WITCH (*dancing*). It's more than my poor mind can grasp,  
 seeing here Squire Satan again!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. Woman, I will not tolerate that title! 2305  
 WITCH. Why not? What harm is there in it?  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. It is now only mythological;  
 yet mankind is no better off: the Evil One  
 they may be rid of, evil ones have still not vanished.  
 If you just call me Baron, that is fine; 2510  
 like other gentry, I'm a cavalier.  
 You cannot doubt my noble blood—  
 look at the coat of arms I wear!  
*He makes an indecent gesture.*  
 WITCH (*laughing immoderately*).  
 Ha, ha! I recognize your style!  
 You always were a rogue, you rascal! 2515  
 MEPHISTOPHELES (*to FAUST*).  
 Observe, my friend, and learn a lesson  
 on how you have to deal with witches.  
 WITCH. Now tell me, gentlemen, what is your pleasure?  
 MEPHISTO. We'll have one good-sized glass of your well-known  
 elixir,  
 but only of the oldest brewage, please, 2520  
 since every year the potency is doubled!  
 WITCH. I am most happy to oblige! Here is a bottle  
 from which I sometimes take a nip myself  
 and which, besides, no longer stinks at all;  
 I hope you'll let me offer you a serving. 2525  
 (*Sotto voce.*) Of course you know that if he drinks it  
 without due preparation, he won't live an hour.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. He's a good friend—we can't have any bad  
 effects;  
 we'll let him have all benefits your kitchen offers.  
 So draw your circle, speak your spells, 2530  
 and then give him the well-filled cup!  
*The WITCH, making fantastic gestures, draws a circle and places curious objects in  
 it; simultaneously, glasses begin to ring and caldrons to vibrate, providing a  
 musical accompaniment. Next, she fetches a great book and stations the APES in a  
 circle, where they are made to serve her as reading-desk and torch-holders, and  
 then beckons to FAUST to join her.*  
 FAUST (*to MEPHISTOPHELES*).

Don't tell me anything will come of this!  
 The silly apparatus, the demented gestures—  
 I've seen enough of such jejune deceptions  
 to know that I cannot abide them. 2535

MEPHISTOPHELES. Of course it's nonsense! You're supposed to  
 laugh;  
 don't be a sober-sided prig!  
 This hocus-pocus is her privilege as doctor,  
 a guarantee the drink will take effect.

MEPHISTOPHELES *shoves* FAUST *into the circle*.  
 WITCH (*declaiming bombastically from the book*).

See how it's done! 2540  
 Make ten of one,  
 and let two be,  
 make even three,  
 then you'll be rich.  
 Cast out the four! 2545  
 Now heed the witch:  
 from five and six  
 make seven and eight,  
 and now you're done:  
 Then nine is one, 2550  
 and ten is none. —

That is the witches' one-times-one.

FAUST. I think she sounds delirious.

MEPHISTOPHELES. She's far from being finished yet.

The book is all like that, as I well know; 2555  
 it made me waste a lot of time:  
 self-contradiction, when complete, is to the wise  
 as much a mystery as to the fool.  
 Her art is ancient, friend, as well as modem.  
 In every age it's been the fashion, 2560  
 with three-and-one and one-and-three  
 instead of truth, to propagate confusion.  
 That's how they get away with teaching silliness—  
 who cares to waste his time on idiots!  
 When people hear some words, they normally believe 2565  
 that there's some thought behind them.

WITCH (*continuing*). And so our lore  
 has wondrous power,  
 although completely hidden!

Who takes no thought,  
will have no cares  
because it's at his bidding. 2570

FAUST. What is this nonsense she's reciting?  
If this goes on my head will split.  
I seem to hear the voices of 2575  
a hundred thousand fools in chorus.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Enough, enough, o excellent sibyl!  
Now let us have your beverage!  
Be quick and fill the goblet to the brim—  
the draught will do my friend no harm, 2580  
for he is certainly no novice  
and has drunk plenty in his day.  
*The WITCH, with much ceremonial, pours the drink into a cup; as FAUST sets it to  
his lips, there rises from it a slight flame.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. Down with it quickly! Don't stop now!

It is a cordial that works promptly.  
As thick as you are with the devil, 2585  
can you be frightened by a flame?

*The WITCH breaks the circle, and FAUST steps forth.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. And now, away! You must keep moving!

WITCH. I hope the dose will do you good!

MEPHISTOPHELES'(to *the WITCH*).  
And if there's any favor I can do for you,  
be sure to tell me on Walpurgis Night. 2590

WITCH. Here, take this song, and sing it now and then;  
you'll find it adds a lot to the effect.

MEPHISTOPHELES (to FAUST).  
Come quickly now, and follow my instructions!  
It is essential that your body sweat  
if it's to benefit inside as well as out. 2595  
I'll teach you later to enjoy your well-earned leisure,  
and soon you'll feel, to your profound delight,  
young Cupid stir and then race to and fro.

FAUST. Please let me take a last quick look into the mirror—  
that woman was so beautiful! 2600

MEPHISTOPHELES. No, no! It won't be long before you see  
the paragon of womankind in person.  
(*Sotto voce.*) With this drink in you, you'll soon see  
in every woman a Helen of Troy. [Exeunt.

---

## A STREET

*Enter FAUST and MARGARETE, who walks past him.*

FAUST. My lovely young lady, may I perhaps venture  
to give you my arm and be your escort? 2605

MARGARETE. I'm not a young lady, or lovely either,  
and need no escort to get home.

*Freeing her arm, she leaves.*

FAUST. By God, that girl is a real beauty!  
I've never seen one quite like her. 2610

She is all modesty and virtue,  
yet there's a bit of pertness too.

As long as I live I won't forget  
those glowing cheeks and ruby lips!

Even the way she lowered her eyes  
is stamped forever on my heart; 2615  
as for the brusqueness of her manner,  
that was especially delightful!

*Enter MEPHISTOPHELES.*

FAUST. You must get me that girl, I tell you.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Which one?

FAUST. The one that just went by. 2620

MEPHISTOPHELES. What, her? She is returning from confession;  
the priest absolved her of all sin—

I crept up close to the confessional.

She is an innocent, and so much so  
that she had nothing to confess; 2625  
over that girl I have no power.

FAUST. She's over fourteen, isn't she!

MEPHISTOPHELES. You're talking like Jack Reprobate;

he covets every pretty flower,  
and fancies there's no honest favor 2630  
which can't be plucked if he but tries;  
that isn't always so, however.

FAUST. My dear Professor Dogmatist,  
you may spare me your moral lessons!

And let me tell you very bluntly, 2635  
unless that sweet young thing is lying  
within my arms this very night,  
at stroke of twelve we part forever.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Consider practicalities!  
 I'll need at least a good two weeks 2640  
 to ferret out an opportune occasion.

FAUST. If I could have a simple girl like that  
 alone for seven hours, to seduce her  
 I would not need the devil's help.

MEPHISTOPHELES. You're almost talking like a Frenchman now, 2645  
 but please don't think of this as mere frustration!  
 What good is pleasure when it's rushed?  
 It's much less satisfactory  
 than when in various ways before,  
 and with all sorts of fuss and bother, 2650  
 you've shaped her up a bit and got her ready—  
 this can be learned from many foreign novels.

FAUST. I don't need that to whet my appetite.

MEPHISTOPHELES. No more of this tomfoolery!  
 I'm telling you once and for all 2655  
 that with this pretty child it is no use to hurry.  
 You won't take anything by storm;  
 we must resort to strategy.

FAUST. Get me some souvenir of her!  
 Bring me to where my angel sleeps! 2660  
 Get me a kerchief from her breast,  
 a garter to excite my passion!

MEPHISTOPHELES. To prove to you that I am eager  
 to be of service when you suffer,  
 let us not waste another moment— 2665  
 I'll take you to her room this very day.

FAUST. And shall I see her, have her?

MEPHISTOPHELES. No!  
 She will be at a neighbor's house.  
 You can, while she's away, be there alone  
 and, in the aura that her presence sheds, 2670  
 anticipate the taste of future joy.

FAUST. Can we go now?

MEPHISTOPHELES. It's still too soon.

FAUST. Then get a present for me to take her! [Exit.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Presents right off? Good work! He'll have success!  
 I know some excellent locations 2675  
 with lots of ancient buried treasure.  
 I'd better do a little looking. [Exit.

---

## EVENING

*A small, neatly kept room.*

MARGARETE (*braiding and tying up her hair*).

I'd give a lot if I could know  
who was that gentleman today.  
He really was quite debonair, 2680  
and is no doubt of noble birth;  
that I could tell from his eyes and forehead—  
and he wouldn't have been so forward otherwise. [Exit.

*Enter* MEPHISTOPHELES *and* FAUST.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Come in, but don't make noise—don't  
hesitate!

FAUST (*after a silence*). I beg you, leave me here alone! 2685

MEPHISTOPHELES (*snooping about*).

Not all young women are this neat. [Exit.

FAUST (*looking around carefully*).

How welcome is the gentle twilight glow  
that permeates this sanctuary!  
Possess my heart, sweet pain of love  
that lives and languishes on dewes of hope! 2690  
How all here breathes a sense of calm,  
of order, of contentedness!  
What abundance in this poverty,  
what blessedness within this prison!

*(He throws himself into a leather armchair beside the bed.)*.

Grant me a welcome, you whose open arms 2695  
have held in joy or pain past generations!  
To think how many times some group of children

clung to the sides of this ancestral throne!  
Perhaps when still a plump-cheeked child, my love,  
thanking her grandfather for his Christmas gift, 2700  
here kissed his withered hand with dutiful respect.  
I feel, dear girl, stirring about me  
the spirit of that rich contentment  
which daily teaches you maternal virtues,



bidding you place the table-cover neatly, 2705  
and even strew the sand upon the floor in patterns.  
Your precious hand is godlike in its power  
to make this cottage paradise!  
And here!

*(He lifts one of the bed-curtains.)*

What awesome ecstasy enralls me!  
I wish that I had hours to spend here. 2710  
Here Nature brought, in happy dreams,  
the innate angel to harmonious perfection!  
Here the child lay, her tender breast  
overflowing with the warmth of life,  
and here upon the sacred loom of purity 2715  
was wrought the image of a goddess!

And you! What drew you here?  
How deeply stirred I feel!  
What are you seeking here? Why is your heart so heavy?  
Unhappy Faust, so changed I do not know you! 2720  
Is there some magic fragrance here?

My impulse was to gain immediate enjoyment;  
a dream of love suffuses all my being.  
Are we the sport of every change of air?  
And if she suddenly should enter now, 2725  
how you would suffer for this profanation!  
The gentleman, become a beggar,  
would lie and languish at her feet.

*Enter MEPHISTOPHELES.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. Be quick! Down there I see her coming.  
FAUST. Yes, go! I'm never coming back! 2730

MEPHISTOPHELES. Here is a little casket, rather heavy,  
that I picked up somewhere or other.  
Just place it in this chest of drawers,  
and, on my word, she won't believe her eyes;  
you'll find that in it I have put 2735  
knickknacks enough to win two girls.  
Still, children will be children, and a toy's a toy.

FAUST. I wonder, should I?

MEPHISTOPHELES. Is there any question?  
You surely don't intend to hoard my treasure-trove?

If that's the case, then I'd advise Your Lustfulness 2740  
to put my time to better use  
and spare me further wasted trouble.  
I do hope you're not miserly!  
I've scratched my head and wrung my hands—

*(He puts the casket in a chest of drawers and relocks it.)*

Hurry, we must be gone!— 2745  
in my concern to make a sweet young girl  
complaisant to your heart's desires,  
and yet you look as glum  
as if you had to go to class  
and see before you, gray as life, 2750  
Physics and Metaphysics both!  
Away! [Exeunt.

*Enter MARGARETE, carrying a lamp.*

MARGARETE. It is so sultry here, so close,

*(She opens a window.)*

and yet it's not so warm outside.  
I have a feeling I can't describe— 2755  
if only Mother would come home!  
Something is making my whole body tremble—  
I really am a silly, timid thing!

*(She begins to sing as she changes her clothes.)*

There was a king in Thule  
faithful until the grave; 2760  
his dying mistress gave him  
a goblet made of gold.

He had no greater treasure,  
used it at solemn feasts;  
whenever he drank from it, 2765  
his eyes would fill with tears.

And when he saw death coming,  
he counted all his towns,  
and left his heirs his kingdom,

but not the cup of gold. 2770

He held a royal banquet  
in a castle by the sea,  
and with his knights was seated  
in the ancestral hall.

Drinking, the old man stood there, 2775

and drank his life's last glow,  
then flung the precious goblet  
into the flood below.

He watched it fall, and drinking  
sink deep into the sea; 2780  
his eyes grew heavy, closing,  
he never drank again.

*(Opening the chest to put away her clothes, she sees the jewel box.)*

What a fine casket! How did it get here?  
I'm almost certain that I locked the chest.  
This certainly is strange! I wonder what is in it? 2785

Perhaps it is someone's security,  
brought for a loan my mother's made.  
Here on this ribbon there's a little key,  
I've a good mind to open it.

What is all this? Good heavens! Look! 2790

I've never seen the like in all my days!

A set of jewels that any lady  
might wear on highest holidays!

How would this necklace look on me?  
To whom can all these gorgeous things belong? 2795

*(She puts on various pieces of jewelry, then stands before her mirror.)*

If only I could have these earrings—  
I look so very different right away!  
What use are looks to us young girls?

That is all very well and good,  
but it's just that, and nothing more; 2800  
the praise you get is half in pity.

Wealth is what's wanted,  
only gold counts.

And if we're poor—too bad!

---

## PROMENADE

FAUST, *preoccupied, is walking back and forth; he is joined by*  
MEPHISTOPHELES.

MEPHISTOPHELES. By all love ever scorned! By all the fires of hell! 2805

I wish I knew things even worse by which to swear!

FAUST. What ails you now? What's given you the gripes?

I've never seen a face like yours in all my life.

MEPHISTOPHELES. I'd have the devil take me here and now if only I were not myself a devil! 2810

FAUST. Is something out of place there in your head?

You make a splendid raving maniac!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Imagine this! The jewels we got for Gretchen

—  
a priest has gone and grabbed the lot! –

No sooner does the mother see the stuff than she begins to have her private horrors. 2815

That woman has the keenest sense of smell;

her snout is always in a book of prayers;

she sniffs all objects to discover

whether they're sacred or profane; 2820

and with those jewels her nose knew right away

that they were hardly any godsend.

Treasures of wickedness, she cried, ensnare the soul, my child, and then consume our blood.

We'll consecrate them to the Holy Mother, 2825

and she'll delight our hearts with heaven's manna!

Our Maggie made a sour face

and thought, it is a gift-horse, after all,

and surely he can't be a godless man

who was so gallant as to bring it. 2830

The mother then sent for a priest;

as soon as he had heard the curious story,

he looked quite pleased with what he saw.

He spoke: Those are the proper sentiments,

for he that overcometh shall inherit! 2835

The Church is blessed with a good stomach,

has gobbled down whole countries even,

yet never suffered from repletion;

only the Church is able to digest

treasures of wickedness, dear ladies. 2840

FAUST. That isn't any special talent—

kings and usurers practice it too.

MEPHISTOPHELES. And then he swept brooch, necklace, and the rings into his pocket like so many trifles,

and thanked them neither more nor less 2845  
 than if he'd gotten a basket of nuts,  
 promising them all sorts of heavenly rewards—  
 which left them highly edified.

FAUST. And Gretchen?

MEPHISTOPHELES. She is restless, and just sits, 2850  
 uncertain what she wants or ought to do,  
 thinks day and night about the jewels,  
 and even more about who may have brought them for her.

FAUST. I hate to hear my love is grieving.  
 Get her another set at once!  
 The first one didn't look like much to me. 2855

MEPHISTOPHELES. I know you gentlemen think such things bagatelles!

FAUST. Don't waste your time, just follow my instructions—  
 and cultivate the woman who's her neighbor!  
 Don't dawdle and delay, you devil,  
 but go and get me the new set! 2860

MEPHISTOPHELES. As you command, my lord, and gladly. [*Exit* FAUST.  
 To entertain their ladies, love-sick fools like this  
 would take the sun and moon, the planets and the stars—  
 and blow them up as fireworks. [*Exit.*

---

## THE NEIGHBOR'S HOUSE

DAME MARTHA, *alone.*

MARTHA. My dear husband—may God forgive him!— 2865  
 hasn't done very well by me.  
 Without a warning he goes away  
 and leaves me to grass-widowhood.  
 And yet, God knows, I never caused him grief,  
 and always loved him tenderly. 2870

(*Weeping*). Perhaps he's even dead! – O misery ...  
 If I but had a death certificate!

*Enter* MARGARETE.

MARGARETE. Dame Martha!

MARTHA. Gretelchen, what is it?

MARGARETE. My knees are weak, I can barely stand!

Now I have found another casket, 2875  
 this time of ebony, inside the chest,

with lots of really gorgeous things;  
it's far more splendid than the first.

MARTHA. You mustn't tell your mother this;  
right off she'd take it to confession too. 2880

MARGARETE. Just take a look! Do look and see!

MARTHA (*putting jewelry on MARGARETE*).  
You are indeed a lucky one!

MARGARETE. I can't appear in the streets, alas,  
or in church either, with them on.

MARTHA. Come over here whenever you can 2885  
and dress up in them privately.  
Then you can walk a while before the looking-glass,  
that will afford us both great pleasure;  
and soon there'll be occasions or some holidays  
when you'll display one piece and then another. 2890  
A necklace first, then a pearl earring next—  
your mother may well not notice, but we'll have some story for her.

MARGARETE. Who on earth could have brought those caskets?  
There's something not quite right about it! (*A knock.*)  
Good heavens! Can that be my mother? 2895

MARTHA (*peeping through the curtain*).  
It's a strange gentleman. – Come in!

*Enter MEPHISTOPHELES.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. I know I'm intruding, unannounced,  
and hope you ladies will pardon me.  
(*He steps back respectfully from MARGARETE.*)  
I was looking for Dame Martha Schwerdtlein.

MARTHA. That's me. What is your message, sir? 2900

MEPHISTOPHELES (*to MARTHA, in a low voice*).  
It's enough now that I know who you are;  
I see you have a genteel visitor.  
Excuse the liberty I took,  
I'll return in the afternoon.

MARTHA (*aloud*). For heaven's sake! Imagine, child, 2905  
the gentleman believes you are a lady!

MARGARETE. I'm nothing but a poor young girl;  
dear me! the gentleman is much too kind;  
the set of jewelry isn't mine.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Oh, it is not the jewels alone: 2910  
you have an air, such piercing eyes,  
I'm much obliged that I may stay.

MARTHA. What is your news, I'm very eager ...

MEPHISTOPHELES. I wish that it were happier,  
and hope you won't hold it against me: 2915  
your husband's dead and sends regards.

MARTHA. Is dead? That faithful soul! Oh no!  
My husband dead! My end has come!

MARGARETE. Oh don't, dear woman, don't despair!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Let me tell you the mournful story. 2920

MARGARETE. I couldn't bear to be in love, not ever,  
I'd die of grief from such a loss.

MEPHISTOPHELES. There is no joy but has its sorrow.

MARTHA. Tell me about the way he died!

MEPHISTOPHELES. He lies interred in Padua, 2925  
beside the church of San Antonio;  
in duly consecrated ground  
he has his cool and everlasting rest.

MARTHA. And do you bring me nothing else?

MEPHISTOPHELES. Yes, one request of grave importance: 2930  
be sure to have three hundred masses sung for him!  
My pockets otherwise are empty.

MARTHA. What, not one lucky coin? No single piece of  
jewelry?—  
what any journeyman has deep down in his bag

and that to keep as souvenir 2935  
he'd rather starve or be a beggar!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Madam, you have my sympathy;  
still, he didn't throw money away, I assure you.  
Besides, he much repented all his faults  
and even more, in fact, bemoaned his wretched luck! 2940

MARGARETE. It's sad that people have so much misfortune!  
Many's the requiem I'll pray for him, that's sure.

MEPHISTOPHELES. A kind, sweet girl like you deserves  
to get a husband right away.

MARGARETE. That isn't possible as yet. 2945

MEPHISTOPHELES. If not a husband, meanwhile then a lover.  
It's one of heaven's greatest blessings  
to have a nice girl to embrace.

MARGARETE. That's not the custom in these parts.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Custom or not, it's still a practice. 2950

MARTHA. Please tell me more!

MEPHISTOPHELES. I was beside him when he died.  
His deathbed was some straw, half-rotten,  
though better than a dunghill; yet he died a Christian,  
discovering some largish debts to his account.

How I'm compelled to loathe myself, he cried, 2955  
 forsaking as I did my trade, my wife!  
 Alack, to think of that is torment.  
 If only she'd forgive me while I'm still alive ...

MARTHA (*weeping*). The dear, good man! I have long since forgiven him.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Yet she, God knows! was more to blame than 2960  
 I.

MARTHA. He lies! And at death's door, at that!

MEPHISTOPHELES. In the last throes he was no doubt delirious,  
 if I am even half an expert in these matters.  
 I never was allowed, he said, to rest and contemplate,  
 but had first to get children, then the bread they needed— 2965  
 bread in its most extended meaning—  
 and couldn't even eat my share in peace and quiet.

MARTHA. Did he forget, then, all my love, all my devotion,  
 and how I was his drudge both day and night!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Oh, no! That never left his heart or mind. 2970  
 He said, the time that I left Malta  
 I prayed with fervor for my wife and children,  
 and Heaven duly granted us its favor,  
 and let us take a Turkish barque  
 that bore a treasure of the Sultan's. 2975  
 Then valor got its just reward,  
 and I received, as was my right,  
 my proper share of booty too.

MARTHA. How then! Can he have buried it somewhere?

MEPHISTOPHELES. Who knows which of the winds now have it! 2980  
 A stranger, he was wandering about in Naples  
 when a young, pretty lady there befriended him;  
 she gave him lots of loving-kindness,  
 he felt its consequences till his dying day.

MARTHA. The thief! A villain who steals from his own children! 2985  
 Not even all that misery, all that distress,  
 deterred him from his life of shame!

MEPHISTOPHELES. How true! But, then, that's why he now is  
 dead.  
 If I were in your place, however,  
 I'd mourn him chastely for a year, 2990  
 and meanwhile set my sights on a new lover.

MARTHA. Ah, God! This side of heaven I won't find  
 another like my first so easily!



There hardly could have been a man more lovable.  
 Only he liked to travel much too much, 2995  
 was fond of foreign wines and women,  
 and had a wicked passion for a game of dice.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Well, then, things would have been all right  
 if, on his part, he'd been  
 about as tolerant of you as you of him. 3000  
 Upon my honor, given some such terms,  
 I would myself exchange engagement rings with you!

MARTHA. The gentleman is pleased to jest.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*aside*).  
 It's now high time for me to leave—  
 she'd hold the very devil to his word! 3005

(*To GRETCHEN.*) And what's the state of your own heart?

MARGARETE. Sir, how's your question meant?

MEPHISTOPHELES (*aside*). You innocent!

(*Aloud.*) Ladies, farewell!

MARGARETE. Farewell!

MARTHA. A quick word first!  
 I'd like to have some proof to show  
 where, how, and when my dear departed died, was buried. 3010  
 I've always done things in the proper way,  
 and would like, too, to see his death in the newspaper.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Of course, dear lady. As you know, it always  
 takes  
 two witnesses' word to establish a truth;  
 I have a friend, an excellent fellow, 3015  
 with whom I'll go before the judge.  
 I'll bring him here.

MARTHA. By all means, do!

MEPHISTOPHELES. And the young lady, will she too be here? –  
 A fine young man! He is well-traveled,  
 and treats young ladies with impeccable politeness. 3020

MARGARETE. Before the gentleman I'd be all blushes.

MEPHISTOPHELES. You wouldn't need to blush before a king.

MARTHA. There in the garden, behind my house,  
 we will expect you gentlemen this evening. [*Exeunt.*]

## A STREET

*Enter FAUST and MEPHISTOPHELES.*

FAUST. How do things stand? Have you progressed? Will it be  
 long? 3025  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. Bravo! I see you're now all fire!  
 It won't be long before you have your Gretchen.  
 At neighbor Martha's you'll see her this evening—  
 now there's a woman made to order  
 for gypsy work and for procuring! 3030  
 FAUST. So far, so good!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. But we are asked to do a favor.  
 FAUST. Well, one good turn deserves another.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. We simply have to make a proper deposition  
 to the effect her husband's limbs have been laid out  
 in consecrated ground at Padua. 3035  
 FAUST. How clever! Now we have to make the trip there first!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. *Sancta simplicitas!* There is no need of that;  
 just testify without specific knowledge!  
 FAUST. I must reject the scheme, if that's your best suggestion.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. You saint! If this is not just like you! 3040  
 Is this the first time in your life  
 that you've committed perjury?  
 Have you not, with bold impudence, defined,  
 and in the most forceful language too,  
 God, and the world, and all that moves therein, 3045  
 and what goes on in human minds and hearts?  
 Yet if you really searched your soul, you would confess  
 you knew as much about these matters  
 as now you do about one Schwerdtlein's death!  
 FAUST. You'll always be a liar and a sophist. 3050  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. But not the only one, if you'll just think some  
 more.  
 Tomorrow will you not, with much protested honor,  
 attempt to turn poor Gretchen's head  
 and swear upon your soul you love her?  
 FAUST. Yes—and sincerely!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. Well and good! 3055  
 And then your talk about devotion evermore,  
 about love's one all-overpowering urge—  
 will that as well be so sincere?  
 FAUST. Stop there! It will! – When I am deeply moved  
 and for the turbulence I feel 3060  
 vainly endeavor to find a name,  
 yet range the world with all my senses  
 and search for words sublime enough  
 and call this ardor that consumes me

infinite, endless, and eternal, 3065  
is that some diabolical delusion?  
MEPHISTOPHELES. And yet I'm right!  
FAUST. Now listen, and remember  
this,  
and please don't let me waste my breath:  
if someone claims he's right, and simply has a tongue,  
he's certain to be right. 3070  
Now come, I'm sick of all this verbiage; [Exeunt.  
and you are right—I have no other choice.

---

### A GARDEN

*Enter MARGARETE, on FAUST'S arm, and MARTHA walking back and forth  
with MEPHISTOPHELES.*

MARGARETE. I'm well aware the gentleman's just being kind  
and condescending so that I won't feel embarrassed.  
You travelers are so accustomed 3075  
to taking anything you get politely.  
I know only too well that my poor conversation  
can't entertain someone with your experience.  
FAUST. One look or word from you is far more entertaining  
than all the wisdom of this world. 3080  
*He kisses her hand.*

MARG. Oh, don't! You really shouldn't! How can you bear to  
kiss it?  
My hand's so ugly, it's so rough.  
It's all the work I've had to do—  
my mother's so particular.

*MARGARETE and FAUST walk on.*

MARTHA. And must you, sir, be always traveling like this? 3085

MEPHISTOPHELES. Alas that business obligations force us to!  
With what regret one leaves so many places,  
and yet one simply can't stay on!

MARTHA. It's fine, I'm sure, when one's still energetic,  
to wander anywhere one wants; 3090  
but the hard years will come along,  
and dragging on alone, a bachelor, to the grave  
was never good for anyone.

MEPHISTOPHELES. That prospect fills me with dismay.

MARTHA. That's why, dear sir, you must plan well ahead. 3095

MARTHA *and* MEPHISTOPHELES *walk on.*

MARGARETE. Yes, out of sight and out of mind!

It's easy for you to be so polite;  
but you must have a lot of friends,  
and much more sensible than I.

FAUST. Dear girl, believe me! What people call good sense 3100  
is often vain stupidity.

MARGARETE. How can that be?

FAUST. Alas that artless innocence  
cannot appreciate itself or its own worth!  
that modesty, humility, the highest gifts  
which Nature lovingly bestows – 3105

MARGARETE. Though you but think of me for one short  
moment,

I shall have ample time to think of you.

FAUST. You and your mother see few visitors?

MARGARETE. Oh, yes, our household is a modest one,  
but still it has to be attended to. 3110

We have no maid; it's up to me to cook and sweep,  
to knit and sew, and to be always on my feet;  
and Mother is so fussy!

It's not that she needs to be so economical; 3115

more than a lot of people, we could be living well—  
my father left a nice estate,  
a small house, and, outside the town, a garden-plot.  
But now my days are mostly quiet;

my brother is a soldier, 3120

my little sister's dead.

She was a lot of trouble, to be sure,  
but I'd be glad to have it all again,  
I loved the child so much.

FAUST. An angel, if like you!

MARGARETE. I had the care of her, she loved me very much. 3125

When she was born, my father had already died.

We gave my mother up for lost,  
she lay there in such misery,  
and she got better very slowly, bit by bit.

That's why it was impossible 3130

for her to nurse the little mite herself,  
and so, all by myself, I raised her  
on milk and water; she became my child that way.

Held in my arms, and lying on my lap,  
 she smiled and kicked, began to grow. 3135

FAUST. You've truly known the purest form of happiness.

MARGARETE. But many a hard hour, truly, too.  
 At night the baby's cradle stood  
 beside my bed; no sooner would she stir  
 than I'd wake up; sometimes I'd have to feed her, 3140  
 sometimes I had to lay her down beside me  
 or, if she was not quiet, get up out of bed  
 and pace the room to dandle her,  
 and be up early in the morning at the washtub;  
 then do the marketing and watch the stove, 3145  
 and on and on like that day in, day out.  
 At times, good sir, you feel discouraged;  
 but then you do enjoy your meals, and sleep well too.

MARGARETE *and* FAUST *walk on.*

MARTHA. It's hard on women, though, you must admit:  
  
 your long-time bachelor can hardly be reformed. 3150

MEPHISTOPHELES. All it would take would be someone like you  
 to teach me something better.

MARTHA. Speak plainly, sir! Haven't you yet found anything?  
 Is there no romantic attachment anywhere?

MEPHISTOPHELES. The proverb says: a home of one's own, 3155  
 a virtuous woman, are as precious as gold and pearls.

MARTHA. My question's whether you have ever wanted one.

MEPHISTOPHELES. I've found great kindness everywhere.

MARTHA. I meant your feelings—were they ever serious?

MEPHISTOPHELES. To trifle with a woman's heart is most 3160  
 improper.

MARTHA. You simply will not understand!

MEPHISTOPHELES. I'm very sorry!  
 But I do understand – that you are very kind.

MARTHA *and* MEPHISTOPHELES *walk on.*

FAUST. My little angel recognized me right away  
 when I was entering the garden?

MARGARETE. Didn't you see how I lowered my eyes? 3165

FAUST. And you forgive my liberty the other day—  
 it really was presumptuous impudence—  
 when you were coming out of the cathedral?

MARGARETE. I was dismayed, I'd never had that happen;  
 till then, nobody could speak ill of me. 3170  
 Dear me, I thought, can he have seen in your behavior  
 something immodest or improper?

It was as if he felt he had the right  
 to treat me as an ordinary girl.  
 Yet to be honest, right away inside me 3175  
 something began to intercede for you;  
 but just the same I was quite angry with myself  
 because I couldn't be still angrier with you.  
 FAUST. Sweet love!  
 MARGARETE. Let me do this!  
*Picking a daisy, MARGARETE plucks its petals one by one.*  
 FAUST. Is it for a bouquet?  
 MARGARETE. No, just a game.  
 FAUST. How's that?  
 MARGARETE. Stay there! You'd only laugh.  
*She pulls off petals, murmuring.*  
 FAUST. What are you murmuring?  
 MARGARETE (*half aloud*). He loves me – loves me not.  
 FAUST. That lovely, that angelic face!  
 MARGARETE (*continuing*).  
 Loves me – not – loves me – not –  
 (*Elated, she plucks the last petal.*)  
 He loves me!  
 FAUST. Yes, my child! Let what this flower says 3185  
 serve you as oracle. He loves you!  
 Do you know what that means? He loves you!  
 Faust *clasps her hands*.  
 MARGARETE. I'm trembling!  
 FAUST. Don't be afraid! Look in my eyes,  
 let them and let these hands that now clasp yours  
 express what tongue can never say: 3190  
 complete devotion and a sense of bliss  
 that must endure eternally!  
 Eternally! – Its end would be despair.  
 There must not be an end! Not ever!  
 MARGARETE *presses his hands, frees herself, and runs off. FAUST stands pensive for a*  
*moment, then follows her.*  
 MARTHA (*entering*). It's starting to get dark.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. And we must go. 3195  
 MARTHA. I'd ask you to remain here longer,  
 but this is such an evil-minded town.  
 It's just as if nobody had a thing to do  
 or keep him busy  
 except to stare at what his neighbor's up to, 3200  
 and you get talked about no matter how you act. –

Where's our young couple?  
MEPHISTOPHELES. They've flown down the garden  
path.  
The wanton butterflies!  
MARTHA. I'd say he's taken with her.  
MEPHISTOPHELES. And she with him as well. So runs the world  
its  
course. [*Exeunt.*]

---

### A SUMMERHOUSE

*Enter MARGARETE, hurriedly; she hides behind the door with her finger to her lips, and peeks through the crack.*  
MARGARETE. He's coming!  
*Enter FAUST.*  
FAUST. Little minx, you're teasing me! 3205  
I've caught you!  
*He gives her a kiss.*  
MARGARETE (*embracing him, and returning the kiss*).  
Dear heart, I love you so!  
*Enter MEPHISTOPHELES, knocking on the door.*  
FAUST (*stamping his foot*). Who's there?  
MEPHISTOPHELES. A friend!  
FAUST. A beast!  
MEPHISTOPHELES. It's almost time to  
leave.  
*Enter DAME MARTHA.*  
MARTHA. Yes, it is late, good sir.  
FAUST. May I see you both home?  
MARGARETE. My mother would .... Farewell!  
FAUST. Then I must go?  
Farewell!  
MARTHA. Adieu!  
MARGARETE. Until we shall soon meet again! 3210  
*[Exeunt FAUST and MEPHISTOPHELES.]*

MARGARETE. It is astonishing the many,  
many ideas a man like that can have!  
I simply stay embarrassed when I'm with him  
and answer all he says with yes.  
I'm such a silly poor young thing, 3215

I can't think what he sees in me.

[Exit.]

---

## FOREST AND CAVE

*Enter FAUST, alone.*

FAUST. Spirit sublime, all that for which I prayed,  
all that you now have granted me. In fire  
you showed your face to me, but not in vain.  
You gave me for my realm all Nature's splendor, 3220  
with power to feel and to enjoy it. You grant  
not only awed, aloof acquaintanceship,  
you let me look deep down into her heart  
as if it were the bosom of a friend.  
You lead the ranks of living beings past me, 3225  
and teach me thus to know my fellow creatures  
in air and water and in silent wood.  
And when the storm-swept forest creaks and groans,  
when, as it falls, the giant fir strips down  
and crushes neighboring boughs and trunks, and when 3230  
the hill echoes its fall as muffled thunder,  
you guide me to the safety of a cave,  
reveal my self to me, and then my heart's  
profound and secret wonders are unveiled.  
And when I see the calming moon ascend 3235  
and pass unblemished, into view there float  
from walls of rock and out of dripping glade  
the argent shapes of ancient times that serve  
to temper contemplation's stem delight.  
That nothing perfect ever can be man's, 3240  
I feel that here. Together with this bliss  
which brings me ever nearer to the gods,  
you gave me the companion I can now  
not do without, though, cold and insolent,  
he makes me scorn myself and turns your gifts 3245  
to nothing with a single whispered word.  
Untiringly he fans within my breast  
a burning passion for her loveliness.  
I reel between desire and enjoyment,  
and in enjoyment languish for desire. 3250

*Enter MEPHISTOPHELES.*



MEPHISTOPHELES. Will it be long before you've had enough of this?  
How can this life continue to amuse you?  
No doubt it's good to try it once;  
but then go on again to something else!

FAUST. I wish you'd other things to do 3255  
than plague me when I am content without you.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Come, now! I'm glad to have you resting—  
you cannot honestly complain.  
Your company is truly no great boon,  
you're so abrupt, ungracious, and erratic. 3260  
One has his hands full all day long!  
You never can tell from the master's expression  
what he might like, or what you shouldn't do.

FAUST. That is exactly the right tone—  
the servant who's a nuisance then wants gratitude! 3265

MEPHISTOPHELES. You miserable mortal, how on earth  
would you have carried on without me?  
My treatment's given you some longish intermissions  
from the delirium of your delusions;  
and if it weren't for me, you'd have long since 3270  
sauntered away from this terrestrial sphere.  
Why must you waste time here and, owl-like,  
perch in these caves and crevices?  
What pleasure do you get imbibing, toad-like,  
your nourishment from sodden moss and dripping rocks? 3275  
A pretty way to pass the time—  
there's a professor in you still!

FAUST. Can you not understand what new vitality  
I gain from this sojourn in desolate solitude?  
Still, if you had some inkling, you would be 3280  
devil enough to envy me my happiness.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Superterrestrial delights—  
to lie on mountain tops in dew and darkness,  
embracing earth and sky ecstatically,  
to be puffed up as though you were a god, 3285  
to probe the earth with urgent intuitions,  
to feel your heart at one with all six days' creation,  
enjoying who knows what in your great arrogance  
and, now no more an earthbound mortal,  
blissfully merging with the All— 3290

and then to let your lofty intuitions  
*(He makes an expressive gesture.)*  
 end in a way that I can't mention.

FAUST. For shame!

MEPHISTOPHELES. You find that, then, unpleasant?  
You're a fine one to cry for shame genteelly.

Before chaste ears one must not name  
what chaste hearts cannot do without.

But to be brief, I'm glad if you enjoy telling yourself a lie once in a while, even if it won't sustain you long.

You are already wearing out again; 3300  
if this goes on, your madness or your fears  
will leave you broken down completely.

Enough of this! Your love is there in town,  
beginning to feel confined in gloom.

You're never absent from her mind,  
her love for you is overpowering.

It's not long since the spate of your mad passion  
came like a brook that floods when snows are melting;  
you let it pour into her heart,

and now your freshet is a shallow brook again. 3310

It might be well, I think, if our grand gentleman, instead of sitting in his forest kingdom, left his throne and remunerated that poor young thing for her devotion.

It is a pity how time seems to drag for her;  
she stands at the window and watches the clouds  
moving away above the old town-wall.

If I had the wings of a bird—that's her song  
day in and day out, and half of every night.

Sometimes she's cheerful, though mostly sad, 3320  
while sometimes she has no tears left,  
then she'll seem calm again—  
and always she's in love.

FAUST. Serpent! serpent!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*aside*). I'm sure I've got you now! 3325

FAUST. Damnable villain, get you hence!

And make no mention of that lovely girl!

Do not evoke again before these half-crazed senses  
desire for the sweetness of her body!

MEPHISTOPHELES. What do you want! She thinks you've run  
away,

and that is more or less the case.

FAUST. I always will be near her, even far away,  
and never can forget or bear to lose her;  
I envy, if her lips should touch it in my absence,  
the very Body of her Lord. 3335

MEPHISTOPHELES. That's good, my friend! I've often envied you  
the twins that feed among the lilies.

FAUST. Flee, you pimp!

MEPHISTOPHELES. How splendidly you rant, while I can only laugh.  
The god who fashioned boys and girls, at once  
gave recognition to the noblest of professions 3340  
when he himself created opportunity.  
Don't dawdle anymore! Why so much misery!  
It's not as if you were about to go face death;  
you're only summoned to your sweetheart's room.

FAUST. What bliss can being in her arms afford? 3345  
Although upon her breast I do find warmth,  
shall I still not be feeling her distress  
or cease to be unconstant, homeless,  
a restive brutal creature with no purpose  
that like a cataract has stormed in greedy fury 3350  
from rock to rock toward the abyss below?  
Close by, a child not yet awakened,  
she has her cottage on an alpine meadow,  
and that small world encompasses  
her whole home-bound existence. 3355

And I, accursed of God,  
I have not been content  
to seize the rocks  
and shatter them,  
but have had to destroy her and her peace! 3360  
This victim you demanded, Hell!  
Help me, devil, shorten the dread of waiting,  
and let what must be, be quickly done!  
May I be crushed by what will be her doom,  
and let her share my ruin with me! 3365

MEPHISTOPHELES. So much seething and ardor again!  
Go back and comfort her, you fool.  
When certain dainty fellows meet an impasse,  
they right away imagine it's the end.  
Long life to him who keeps his courage! 3370

In other ways you're fairly far in devilry.  
I know of nothing so insipid anywhere  
as is a devil driven to despair.

[*Exeunt.*]

---

## GRETCHEN'S ROOM

MARGARETE *is alone, sitting at her spinning-wheel.*

GRETCHEN. My heart is heavy,  
all peace is gone, 3375  
I'll never find it,  
never, again.  
Where he is not,  
is like the grave,  
and all my world 3380  
is turned to gall.  
My poor, poor head  
is all upset,  
my wretched mind  
is tom apart. 3385  
My heart is heavy,  
all peace is gone,  
I'll never find it,  
never, again.  
I look from my window 3390  
only for him  
and only to seek him  
do I leave the house.  
His splendid poise,  
his noble figure, 3395  
the smile of his, mouth,  
the spell of his eyes,  
the fascinating  
words he utters,  
his hand on mine, 3400  
and, oh! his kiss!  
My heart is heavy,  
all peace is gone,  
I'll never find it,  
never, again. 3405  
My breast is yearning

to be with him;  
could I but clasp  
and hold him tight,  
and kiss him 3410  
as my heart desires,  
under his kisses  
I'd swoon and die!

---

### MARTHA'S GARDEN

*Enter MARGARETE and FAUST.*

MARGARETE. Heinrich, tell me the truth ...

FAUST. As best I can!

MARGARETE. Then say what your religion is. 3415

You are a sweet good man, and yet

I think religion doesn't matter much to you.

FAUST. Hush, child! Your feelings tell you that I love you;

I'd give my life for those who're dear to me,

I would deprive no one of either faith or church. 3420

MARGARETE. That's wrong! We must believe these things!

FAUST. Must?

MARGARETE. If I only could persuade you to! But you

don't even venerate the holy sacraments.

FAUST. I pay them due respect.

MARGARETE. But you don't want them.

It's long since you have been to mass or to confession. 3425

Do you believe in God?

FAUST. My darling, who can say,

I believe in God?

To priests or sages you may put your question,

and what they answer will but seem

to mock the asker.

MARGARETE. Then you have no faith? 3430

FAUST. Listen more carefully, my angel!

Who can name Him

and dare profess,

I believe He is!

Who can feel deeply 3435

and then presume

to say, I don't believe!  
 Encompassing all,  
 sustaining all,  
 does He not hold, sustain 3440  
 you, and me, and Himself?  
 Is not the vault of heaven there above?  
 Here below is earth not firm?  
 And do not everlasting stars  
 emerge and gently gleam on high? 3445  
 And when I look into your eyes  
 does not all being press  
 upon your heart and mind,  
 an unseen presence stir,  
 visibly, beside you? 3450  
 Imbue your heart with this immensity,  
 and when you wholly feel beatitude,  
 then call it what you will—  
 Happiness! Heart! Love! God!  
 I have no name to give it! 3455  
 Feeling is everything,  
 name is but sound and smoke  
 that damp celestial ardor.

MARGARETE. That is all very well and good;  
 it's much the same as what our priest has said, 3460  
 although in slightly different words.

FAUST. It's what all hearts beneath the light of heaven  
 are saying everywhere,  
 and each in its own language;  
 why not I, too, in mine? 3465

MARGARETE. Hearing it put that way, it seems to sound all  
 right,  
 but still there is a hitch in it,  
 since you don't hold to Christianity.

FAUST. Dear child!

MARGARETE. I've long been much distressed  
 to see the company you keep. 3470

FAUST. What do you mean?

MARGARETE. The person with you all the time  
 is someone I detest with all my soul;  
 never in my whole life has anything  
 so cut me to the heart

as has that man's repellent face. 3475

FAUST. Dear poppet, have no fear of him!

MARGARETE. His presence makes my blood run cold.  
 There's no one otherwise whom I dislike.  
 but much as I may long to see you  
 I dread that man in some mysterious way, 3480  
 think him a rogue and villain too.  
 May God forgive me if I do him wrong!

FAUST. It takes all sorts to make a world.

MARGARETE. I wouldn't want to live with anyone like him!  
 As soon as he steps in the door 3485  
 his expression's half one of mockery,  
 and half of anger;  
 it's obvious that nothing really interests him;  
 you see it written in his face  
 that he's incapable of loving anyone. 3490  
 I'm so contented when I'm in your arms,  
 so unconstrained, so warm and yielding,  
 and then his presence chokes me up inside.

FAUST. You angel, with your intuitions!

MARGARETE. This is so overwhelming that, 3495  
 no matter when or where he joins us,  
  
 I even think that I no longer love you.  
 Then too, if he's around, I couldn't say a prayer,  
 and that is eating out my heart;  
 you, Heinrich, surely feel this too. 3500

FAUST. It's just a personal antipathy.

MARGARETE. I must go now.

FAUST. Oh, can I never stay  
 and rest a single hour upon your heart,  
 pressing my breast to yours and letting our souls join?

MARGARETE. Alas! if I but slept alone, 3505  
 I'd gladly leave the bolt undrawn tonight;  
 but Mother does not sleep too soundly,  
 and if she caught us in the act  
 I know I'd die right then and there!

FAUST. You angel, that presents no problem. 3510  
 Here is a vial. Three drops in anything she drinks  
 will be enough to put her  
 pleasantly into a deep sleep.

MARGARETE. What is there I won't do for you!

I trust it will not do her any harm? 3515  
 FAUST. Would I suggest it otherwise, my love!  
 MARGARETE. Dearest, I only have to look at you,  
 and something makes me do whatever you desire;  
 I've done so much for you already  
 that there is almost nothing else to do. [Exit.  
*Enter* MEPHISTOPHELES.  
 MEPHISTO. The pert young miss has left?  
 FAUST. You've played the  
 spy again?  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. I listened to the whole proceedings,  
 heard the professor catechized,  
 and hope that it will do you good.  
  
 The girls are really keen on knowing 3525  
 if one accepts the good old simple, pious ways.  
 They think conformists easiest to rule.  
 FAUST. You monster, you cannot conceive  
 how such a loyal and loving soul,  
 imbued completely with a faith 3530  
 that is for her  
 the one path to salvation, suffers agonies  
 to think she must regard her lover a lost soul.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. You supersensual sensualist,  
 a little girl can lead you by the nose. 3535  
 FAUST. Monstrosity of filth and fire!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. And what a physiognomist she is!  
 My presence fills her with the strangest feelings;  
 she reads deep meanings in my ugly face  
 and senses that I am some sort of radical, 3540  
 perhaps, in fact, the very devil.  
 Tonight, then ...?  
 FAUST. What is that to you?  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. Oh, it is something I can relish! [Exeunt.

---

## AT THE WELL

*Enter* GRETCHEN *and* LIESCHEN, *with* pitchers.

LIESCHEN. You haven't heard about poor Barbara?  
 GRETCHEN. No, not a word. I get about so little.



LIESCHEN. It's true, and Sibyl told me so today.  
 She too has let herself be taken in, and how!  
 So much for her fine airs!

GRETCHEN. But how?

LIESCHEN. It stinks to heaven!  
 She's feeding two now when she eats and drinks.

GRETCHEN. Oh no! 3550

LIESCHEN. She got what she deserved, all right!  
 She kept the fellow to herself for all that time.  
 Those walks together,  
 those village dances,  
 her always having to be first, 3555  
 his always treating her to wine and pastry—  
 she was stuck-up about her looks,  
 but wasn't proud enough to be ashamed  
 to take the presents that he gave her.  
 With all that cooing, all that kissing, 3560  
 the upshot is, the flower's plucked!

GRETCHEN. Poor thing!

LIESCHEN. How can you pity her!  
 When the likes of us were busy spinning,  
 and when at night our mothers kept us all upstairs,  
 she'd be with her darling lover, 3565  
 and on the hallway bench, there in the dark,  
 they never thought about the time.  
 Well, she can learn now to conform  
 and do church penance in her sinner's smock.

GRETCHEN. But surely he will marry her. 3570

LIESCHEN. He'd be a fool! A lively fellow  
 has lots of places where he's welcome.

Besides, he's gone.

GRETCHEN. That isn't fair!

LIESCHEN. Even if she should catch him, she'll get what's coming to her!

The boys will grab her bridal wreath, 3575  
 and we'll strew chaff before her door. [Exit.

GRETCHEN (*walking home*).

How readily I once declaimed  
 when some poor girl did the wrong thing!  
 Worked up about the sins of others,  
 I never had words sharp enough. 3580

What seemed so black, I blackened even more,  
and yet that wasn't black enough for me;  
I'd cross myself, act high and mighty—  
and now I'm prey to sin myself!  
And yet, o God, what brought me to it, 3585  
was all so good, and oh so sweet! [Exit.]

---

#### BY THE RAMPARTS

*In a niche of the wall, a shrine with an image of the Mater Dolorosa before  
which stand jars of flowers. – Enter GRETCHEN, who places fresh flowers in  
the jars.*

GRETCHEN. Deign, o deign,  
you who are sorrow-laden,  
to look down with mercy on my distress!  
With sword-pierced heart 3590  
and racked by pain,  
you raise your eyes to your son's death.  
You look up to his Father  
and to Him on high  
send sighs for His and your distress. 3595  
Who but you  
can feel the pain  
that courses through my frame?  
How afraid my poor heart is,  
how it trembles, how it's yearning, 3600  
only you can know, and you alone!  
No matter where I go,  
what sorrow, oh what sorrow  
there is within my breast!  
No sooner am I left alone 3605  
than I must weep and weep and weep—  
inside my heart is breaking.  
I watered with bitter tears  
the window flower-pots  
when in the early morning 3610  
I plucked for you these flowers.  
When the bright sun was rising  
and shone into my room,  
in all my misery

I was sitting awake in bed. 3615  
Help, and save me from shame and death!  
O deign,  
you who are sorrow laden,  
to look down with mercy on my distress!

---

## NIGHT

*Street, before the door of Gretchen's house. – Enter her brother VALENTINE,  
a soldier.*

VALENTINE. It used to be when we all drank together 3620  
and many of my comrades, as they do,  
would start to boast  
and loudly praise the fairest of the fair  
and drain their glasses to wash down the toasts,  
I'd plant my elbow on the table 3625  
and sit relaxed and, unconcerned,  
listen to all their bragging talk,  
and stroke my beard and smile,  
then reach for my full glass and say,  
to each according to his taste! 3630  
but is there anyone in all the land  
who can come up to my dear Gretel,  
who's fit to hold a candle to my sister?  
Hear, hear! and clink of glasses went around the table  
as there were shouts of "He is right" 3635  
and "She's the flower of her sex!"  
Then, all those braggarts sat there silent.  
And now—it is enough to make me tear my hair  
and drive me up a wall!—  
I'm going to have to let myself be mocked 3640  
by any scoundrel's taunts and sneers,  
and sit like a dishonest debtor  
and sweat at any chance remark!  
And even though I could give them a beating,  
I still could not give them the lie. 3645  
But who's that coming—and so furtively?  
There's two of them, I'm almost certain;  
if he is one, I'll have his hide,  
he won't get out of here alive!

*Enter FAUST and MEPHISTOPHELES.*

FAUST. See there how from the window of the sacristy  
the everlasting lamp sends up a flickering light  
that fades away to dusk off toward the sides  
as darkness presses in about it!

In my heart, too, all now is night.

MEPHISTOPHELES. And I too languish, like the cat you see  
there, stealing past the fire ladders,  
and creeping now beside those walls;  
at the same time I feel quite energetic,  
and eager for a bit of theft or lechery—

I feel already in my bones  
the glories of Walpurgis Night,  
which will be here again two nights from now,  
and that's a time when there's good reason not to sleep.

FAUST. Perhaps by then that treasure will have risen  
whose aura I see gleaming, off back there?

MEPHISTOPHELES. It won't be long before you have the pleasure  
of raising that small pot from out the ground.

I happened to peep into it the other day

and saw some fine Bohemian dollars.

FAUST. No piece of jewelry, no ring,  
with which to prettify my mistress?

MEPHISTOPHELES. I think I did see something in it  
that rather looked like strings of pearls.

FAUST. Then all is well! I'm always sorry  
if I arrive without a present.

MEPHISTOPHELES. It really shouldn't bother you,  
enjoying something free sometimes.

Now that the sky shines full of stars,  
it's time you heard a bit of virtuosity.

I have a moral song to sing her—  
it's sure to make her even more infatuated.

*(He sings, accompanying himself on a guitar.)*

Tell me, Kate dear,  
why are you here  
at lover's door  
so early in the morning?

No more of this!

You are a Miss

when you're let in,

3685

but are no Miss at parting.  
Now all take heed! 3690  
Once done, the deed  
is done for good—  
alas for you, poor things!

So when you love  
be sure you aren't 3695  
too kind to rogues—  
without your wedding rings!

VALENTINE (*advancing*).

Hell and damnation! You accursed Pied Piper,  
for whom are your enticements meant!  
The devil take your instrument, 3700  
then take the singer to go with it!

MEPHISTOPHELES. He's broken my guitar, it's useless now!

VALENTINE. And now it's time to break some heads!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*to FAUST*).

Professor, don't retreat! Be bold!  
Get close to me, do as I tell you! 3705  
Out with your iron! Do not wait,  
thrust home! I'll do the parrying.

VALENTINE. Then parry this!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Why not?

VALENTINE. And this!

MEPHISTOPHELES. With ease!

VALENTINE. It is like fighting with the devil!  
And what is this? My hand's becoming numb. 3710

MEPHISTO (*to FAUST*). Now strike!

VALENTINE (*falling*). What pain!

MEPHISTOPHELES. There, we have tamed that lout!

But now away! We must at once make ourselves scarce—  
there are already cries of blood and murder.

I'm an old hand with ordinary magistrates, [Exeunt.  
but manage far less well in courts with oaths and bans.

MARTHA (*at a window*). Into the street!

GRETCHEN (*at a window*). And bring the light!

MARTHA (*as before*). It is a brawl—a fight, a duel.

*Enter TOWNSPEOPLE.*

PEOPLE. Here's one already lying dead!

MARTHA (*coming from her house*).

The murderers—have they already fled?  
 GRETCHEN (*coming from her house*).  
 Who is that there? 3720

PEOPLE. Your mother's son.  
 GRETCHEN. Almighty God! What misery!  
 VALENTINE. I'm dying—that is quickly said  
 and still more quickly done.  
 Why must you women stand there wailing?  
 Come close, hear what I say! 3725

(*All gather around him.*)

Gretchen, my dear, you really are still immature  
 and are not clever enough yet,  
 and only botch your business.  
 I tell you this, and just in confidence:  
 since you have now become a whore, 3730  
 make that your occupation!

GRETCHEN. How can you, brother, in God's name! say that to me?  
 VALENTINE. You leave our Lord God out of this!  
 What's done is done, alas! already,  
 and what will be, will be as best it can. 3735

You started with a single secret lover,  
 but soon there will be several more,  
 and once a dozen men have had you,  
 then the whole town will have you too.  
 No sooner is Dishonor born 3740

than where she is is kept a secret,  
 and then they draw the veil of night  
 about her brow and ears  
 and would in fact be glad to kill her.  
 But when she grows, gets to be big, 3745  
 she even goes unveiled by day,  
 yet isn't any prettier.  
 The uglier her face becomes,  
 the more she seeks the light of day.

I swear that I foresee the time 3750  
 when all the decent folk in town  
 will shrink away, you slut, from you  
 as from a corpse that breeds infection!  
 And if they look you in the face  
 you'll feel despair within your heart! 3755  
 No more allowed to wear gold chains,  
 or stand in church next to the altar,  
 or dress yourself in fine lace collars

and have good times at public dances,  
 you'll hide with beggars and the lame 3760  
 in some dark nook of misery  
 and, even if God should forgive you later,  
 be damned as long as you're on earth!  
 MARTHA. Commend your soul to the mercy of God!  
 Will you add slander to your debts? 3765  
 VALENTINE. If only I could reach your scrawny body  
 and lay my hands on you, vile bawd,  
 I'd hope to get abundant pardon  
 for all the sins that I've committed!  
 GRETCHEN. My brother! This is martyrdom! 3770  
 VALENTINE. Come, now! don't bother to shed tears!  
 When you renounced your sense of pride  
 you gave my heart the fatal blow.  
 Now in the sleep of death I'll go  
 to God, a soldier, and an honest soul. (Dies.) 3775

---

## CATHEDRAL

*Mass, with organ and* CHOIR. GRETCHEN, *surrounded by people; her* EVIL  
 SPIRIT *behind her.*

SPIRIT. How different were your feelings  
 when, still innocent,  
 you could approach that altar  
 and from your little tattered book  
 would lisp your prayers— 3780  
 half childhood games,  
 and half devotions!  
 Gretchen!  
 What are your thoughts?  
 What crime is buried 3785  
 deep within your heart?  
 Are you now praying for your mother's soul,  
 that by your fault is gone to long, long agonies?  
 Whose is the blood before your door?  
 – And now beneath your heart 3790  
 does life not stir and quicken,  
 alarming you and itself too

with its foreboding presence?

GRETCHEN. Alas!

Could I but escape these thoughts 3795  
that come at me from every side,  
do what I will!

CHOIR. *Dies irae, dies ilia*  
*solvat saeculum in favilla.*  
*Organ music is heard.*

SPIRIT. Feel God's wrath! 3800  
Hear the trumpet sound!  
The graves now tremble!  
And from its rest as ashes  
your heart,  
brought back again 3805  
to bum in torment,  
awakes and trembles!

GRETCHEN. O to be away from here!  
The organ seems  
to take my breath away, 3810  
the singing to undo  
my inmost heart.

CHOIR. *Judex ergo cum sedebit,*  
*quidquid latet adparebit,*  
*nil inultum remanebit.* 3815

GRETCHEN. I feel so stifled!  
The pillars and the walls  
confine me,  
the vaulting  
presses down. – Air! 3820

SPIRIT. Go hide! There is no hiding  
sin and dishonor!  
Air? Light?  
Woe to you!

CHOIR. *Quid sum miser tunc dicturus,* 3825  
*quem patronum rogaturus,*  
*cum vix justus sit securus?*

SPIRIT. All souls now blessed  
avert their faces from you.  
Those who are pure refuse in horror 3830  
to reach out to you.  
Woe!



CHOIR.        *Quid sum miser tunc dicturus?*  
GRETCHEN. Good neighbor, please! your salts!        (*She swoons.*)

---

## WALPURGIS NIGHT

*In the Harz Mountains, near Schierke and Elend. Enter FAUST and  
MEPHISTOPHELES.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. Do you not wish you had a broomstick?        3835  
I wouldn't mind a sturdy goat myself.  
This way, it's long until we reach our destination.  
FAUST. While I feel fresh still, and my legs aren't tired,  
this walking-stick is all I need.  
And what's the point of shortening our path? –        3840  
To wander in a labyrinth of valleys  
and then to climb these rocks from which,  
forever bubbling, water wells and plunges,  
is a delight that lends such walks as this their zest!  
Spring is now stirring in the birches,        3845  
and even firs already feel its presence—  
why should it not affect our limbs as well?  
MEPHISTOPHELES. To tell the truth, I've noticed nothing of the  
kind!  
It feels like winter here inside of me,  
and I'd prefer a road with snow and frost.        3850  
How drearily with its belated glow  
the red moon's crescent now is rising  
and gives us such poor light that every step you take  
you run into a tree or rock!  
Allow me to summon a will-o'-the-wisp!        3855  
I see one there who's burning merrily.  
Hey there, my friend! May I ask you to join us?  
  
Why blaze away to no good purpose?  
Be kind enough to light us up that slope!  
WILL-O'-THE-WISP. I hope that my respect for you        3860  
will let me curb my buoyancy—  
our custom is to go by zigzags only.  
MEPHISTOPHELES. Well, well! your aim's to imitate mankind.  
Now, by the devil, just go straight

or I'll blow out your flicker of life! 3865

WISP. You're lord and master here, that's plain to see,  
and I'll accommodate myself to you with pleasure.

Remember, though, the mountain's magic-mad tonight,  
and if a will-o'-the-wisp's to be your guide,

you must not be particular. 3870

FAUST, MEPHISTOPHELES, WISP (*singing by turns*).

It would seem we've been admitted  
to the sphere of dreams and magic.

Guide us well, do yourself credit,  
speed us on our travels onward  
in these vast, deserted spaces!

I see trees, and trees behind them,  
moving past us in a hurry,  
and see cliffs that make obeisance,  
and those rocks with their long noses  
snoring loudly—hear them blowing!

Through the stones and turf are flowing  
rill and streams that hasten downward.

Are those murmurs, is that singing?  
Do I hear love's sweet lamenting,  
voices from my days of heaven—

3885

days of love and all we hope for!  
Echo, like an ancient legend,  
makes reply off in the distance.

Hoo, hoo-hoo!—the sound comes closer;  
have the owl and jay and plover  
all remained awake at nighttime?  
Are those long legs and fat bellies  
in the bushes salamanders?

Roots as well, just like the reptiles,  
send strange coils from sand and crevice  
to alarm and to entrap us,

or from the gnarled and living timber  
reach out with their polyp-tendrils  
towards the passer-by. By legions

mice in myriads of colors  
scamper through the moss and heather,  
and entire swarms of fireflies,  
darting past in dense processions,  
form an escort that bewilders.

Tell me whether we have halted

or continue to go forward?  
 It would seem that all's revolving—  
 rocks and trees which make grimaces,  
 and the errant jack-a-lanterns 3910  
 which are swelling, multiplying.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Get a good hold of my coattails!  
 Here's a sort of half-way peak  
 that affords a marvelous sight:  
 mammon glowing in the rocks. 3915

FAUST. How strangely there glimmers through the dells  
 a murky gleam like dawn's first red  
 which even casts its flashing light  
 into the deepest gorge of the abyss!  
 There steam is rising, vapors there are drifting, 3920  
 a glow of fire shines here in a veil of mist,  
 now creeping like a slender filament,  
 now gushing like a fountain-head;  
 here for a while it forms a hundred veins  
 that wend their way along the valley, 3925  
 then at that narrow bend it suddenly  
 becomes a single strand.  
 Nearby a burst of sparks  
 is strewn about like golden sand.  
 But see how the whole wall of rock 3930  
 is now aflame from top to bottom!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Lord Mammon has, you must admit,  
 illuminated  
 his palace lavishly for this occasion!  
 You're lucky to have seen the spectacle—  
 I scent the arrival of boisterous guests. 3935

FAUST. What a tremendous storm is raging—  
 it's raining blows upon my back!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Unless you grab that rock's old ribs,  
 it's sure to hurl you to the bottom of these gorges.

A mist now makes the darkness denser. 3940  
 Hear all the tumult in the forest—  
 the owls are startled into flight!  
 Hear how, in palaces of evergreen,  
 the pillars split asunder.  
 Branches are grating and breaking, 3945  
 trunks thunder and rumble,

and roots are creaking and cracking!  
In dread confusion they fall and crash  
and lie each one atop the other,  
and through the chasms filled with wreckage 3950  
the winds are hissing and howling. –

Do you hear, above us, voices  
in the distance, coming closer?  
All along the mountain now  
torrents of frenzied spells are heard! 3955

*Enter WITCHES, singing in chorus.*

WITCHES. Witches bound for the Brocken are we,  
the stubble is yellow, the new grain is green.  
All our number will gather there,  
and You-Know-Who will take the chair.  
So we race on over hedges and ditches, 3960  
the he-goats stink and so do the witches.

A VOICE. There's ancient Baubo coming alone,  
she's riding on a mother sow.

WITCHES. All honor, then, where honor's due!  
Dame Baubo, come and lead our crew! 3965  
A good fat sow with dame on her back,  
and witches will follow all in a pack.

A VOICE. Which way did you come?

A VOICE. Past the Ilsenstein.  
I peeped into an owl's nest there—  
she opened both eyes wide!

A VOICE. O go to the devil! 3970  
And why are you racing?

A VOICE. She's flayed me alive—  
just look at my sores!

WITCHES. The path is broad, the path is long,  
and yet we are a frantic throng! 3975  
The pitchfork pricks, the broomstick pokes,  
the mother bursts, the infant chokes.

*Enter WARLOCKS. WARLOCKS (first semichorus).*

Like shell-bound snails we drag along,  
the women are all in the van—  
when folk set out for Satan's house 3980  
woman's a thousand steps ahead.

WARLOCKS (*second semichorus*).

We don't take that too much to heart:  
 no matter how much haste they make,  
 they need a thousand steps to do  
 what men can do in just one leap. 3985

A VOICE (*above*). Come join us, you down by the tarn!  
 VOICES (*from below*). We'd like to go on up with you,  
 but since we've washed till spick and span,  
 sterility remains our fate.

WITCHES AND WARLOCKS.  
 The wind is hushed, the stars take flight, 3990  
 the clouded moon withdraws from sight,  
 but as we roar along, our rout  
 sprays myriad magic-sparks about.

A VOICE (*from below*). Stop! Wait for me!  
 A VOICE (*above*). Who's calling from the crevice there? 3995  
 A VOICE (*below*). Take me along! Take me too!  
 I slipped three hundred years ago  
 and ever since have tried in vain  
 to reach my friends at the top again.

WITCHES AND WARLOCKS.  
 A stick or broom will carry you, 4000  
 so will a goat or pitchfork too;  
 and if tonight you cannot soar,  
 you are disgraced forevermore.

HALF-WITCH (*below*).  
 I've lagged behind a long time now,  
 the others are so far ahead; 4005  
 at home I have no peace and quiet,  
 but, then, I don't find any here.

WITCHES. To give us courage, salves avail,  
 a rag can serve us as a sail,  
 and any trough as a ship that's tight; 4010  
 you'll never fly, if you don't tonight.

WITCHES AND WARLOCKS.  
 And when the summit has been reached,  
 scurry along upon the ground  
 and with your witchdom's multitudes  
 cover, then, all the heath around! 4015  
*They settle on the ground.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. What crowding, pushing, what noisy clatter!  
 What hissing, swirling, what lively babble!

Those sparks and flashes, that stench and fire,  
 are truly witchdom's element!  
 Hang on to me, or we will soon be parted! 4020  
 Now where are you!  
 FAUST (*in the distance*). I'm here.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. What! dragged so far already?  
 I'll have to show who's master here.  
 Make way, your Squire's here! Make way, sweet mob, make  
 way!

Professor, take my hand! Now, in one jump,  
 we can escape this press of people— 4025  
 this madness is too much for even me!  
 A most peculiar light is shining over there,  
 I'm curious about what's in those bushes.  
 Come, let's slip in and have a look!

FAUST. Spirit of contradictions, have your way! Lead on! 4030  
 But, I must say, what we have done is clever—  
 we climb the Brocken on Walpurgis Night  
 to isolate ourselves now that we're here.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Just take a look! See those bright fires!  
 Some lively club's assembled for a meeting. 4035  
 You do not need a crowd to have companionship.

FAUST. But I would rather be up there,  
 where I glimpse flames and whirling smoke!  
 Those crowds are surging on toward Satan;  
 the answer to many riddles is surely there. 4040

MEPHISTOPHELES. But many riddles, too, are set.  
 Great folk may like the noisy life,  
 we'll be quite cozy in this quiet spot.  
 Besides, it is an ancient practice  
 to make your own small worlds inside the great one. 4045  
 I see some nice young witches over there,  
 stark naked next to elders wisely veiled.  
 Be pleasant to them, simply for my sake;  
 a little effort gets you much amusement.  
 But hark! there is the twang of instruments, 4050  
 a curse one simply has to learn to bear.  
 Come! come along and face the music;  
 I'll make the overtures and introduce you,  
 and you'll be much obliged to me again.  
 You must admit, my friend, that "small" does not describe 4055

a space—just look!—which hardly seems to end.  
 All in a row a hundred fires blaze;  
 folk dance, converse, concoct, imbibe, make love;  
 just tell me where there's anything to beat this! 4060

FAUST. Do you intend, when introducing us,  
 to play the devil's role, or that of sorcerer?

MEPHISTOPHELES. Although I'm very used to going incognito,  
 on gala days one wears one's decorations.  
 I do not have the honor of the Garter,  
 but here my cloven hoof is much respected. 4065

Do you see there the snail that's crawling toward us?  
 With eyes that only feel and grope  
 it has already caught a whiff of me—  
 here, there's no denying my identity.  
 Now come, let's walk about from fire to fire; 4070  
 I'll be the spokesman, you the tongue-tied suitor.  
*(He addresses a group seated around dying embers.)*  
 Old gentlemen, why must you stay down here?  
 I'd like it better if you were right in the middle,  
 surrounded by the revelry of youth;  
 to be alone, one doesn't need leave home. 4075

A GENERAL. You cannot trust the Government,  
 no matter what great service you have done it;  
 the People are no different from women  
 and grant all favors to the young.

A STATESMAN. They're much too far off course these days,  
 4080  
 give me the old reliables;  
 when we were all-important, though,  
 that really was a golden age.

A PARVENU. We weren't exactly stupid either,  
 and got ahead by dubious means; 4085  
 but nowadays there's nothing stable—  
 just when we'd like the status quo.

A WRITER. In times like these who cares to read  
 a work that has a modicum of sense!  
 As for the younger generation, 4090  
 it is more impudent than ever.

MEPHISTOPHELES *(suddenly looking very old)*.  
 Folk are, I feel, now ripe for Judgment Day,  
 since this ascent of Witches' Mountain is my last;  
 and since my keg is running turbid,  
 I'm sure the world is giving out as well. 4095

HUCKSTRESS-WITCH.

Good sirs, don't just walk past like that!

Don't miss this opportunity!

Take a good look at what I offer,

I have a great variety.

And yet there's nothing in my stall,

4100

the like which you won't find anywhere,

that hasn't at some time or other done

great harm to persons and society.

There is no dagger here that has not dripped with blood,

no cup that has not poured its hot consuming poison

4105

into some hale and hearty body,

no ornament but has seduced some good sweet woman,

no sword but served that cause of treason

or stabbed an adversary from behind!

MEPHISTOPHELES. You are, good woman, quite behind the times.

4110

What's done, is past! What's past, is done with!

You should go in for novelties,

that's all that customers now want.

FAUST. I hope my mind remains intact!

I've never seen a carnival so lively!

4115

MEPHISTOPHELES. That milling crowd all wants to be up higher;

you think you're pushing, but it's you who's pushed.

FAUST. Now who is that?

MEPHISTOPHELES. Take a good look!

That's Lilith.

FAUST. Who?

MEPHISTOPHELES. Adam's first wife.

Be on your guard against her lovely tresses,

4120

the only ornament she wears!

When she has caught a young man with them,

it's quite a while until she lets him go.

FAUST. Those witches sitting there, one young, the other old,

have clearly done a fair amount of dancing!

4125

MEPHISTOPHELES. There is no rest for anyone tonight.

Here's a new dance! Come on, we have our pick!

FAUST (*dancing with the pretty Young Witch*).

One day I had a lovely dream,

in which I saw an apple tree

and on it saw two apples gleam;

4130

they tempted me to climb the tree.



YOUNG WITCH.      You men have always craved that fruit  
                              since it first grew in Paradise.  
                              I quiver with delight to know  
                              that in my orchard apples grow.

4135

MEPHISTOPHELES (*with the Old Witch*).  
 One day I had the wildest dream;  
 in it I saw a cloven tree,  
 and in the tree a gaping hole;  
 big though this was, it suited me.  
 Old Witch. With reverence I here salute  
 the knight who has the cloven foot!  
 Be ready with the right-sized stopper  
 unless big holes intimidate you.

PROTOVISIONARY.  
 Confounded creatures, what new impudence is this?  
 Have you not had it proved to you long since  
 that proper spirits never stand on their own feet?  
 And here you're even dancing like us ordinary mortals!

4145

YOUNG WITCH (*dancing*). What is that fellow doing at our ball?

FAUST (*dancing*). Oh, he's someone who turns up everywhere.  
His job's to criticize how others dance. 4150  
Unless he can discuss a *pas* at length,  
it might as well not have been danced.  
Steps forward are what most annoy him.  
If you just want to go around in circles,  
the way he does in his old factory, 4155  
he'll condescend to rate that passable—  
especially if you have been polite to him.

PROCTOVISIONARY. You are still there? Now that's impossible!  
Please disappear! We have achieved enlightenment.  
Infernal rabble that ignores all rules of logic!

4160

We're highly rational, despite all ghosts in Tegel.  
How long I've tried to sweep away delusions,  
and yet there's always dirt. Things are impossible!

YOUNG WITCH. Then stop! You do not need to bore us here.

PROCTOVISIONARY. I tell you spirits to your faces: 4165  
 my spirit won't put up with despotism—  
 it is itself far too despotic.

(The dancing starts again.)

I see I'm having no success today;  
still, I've material for another travel book  
and hope, before my final journey, 4170  
to exorcise all devils and all poets.

MEPHISTOPHELES. He's going off to sit down in a puddle,  
which is the way he gets relief from pain;  
when leeches feast upon his rump,  
he's cured of spirits and of spirit. 4175

(To FAUST, *who has left the dance.*).

Why have you deserted the pretty young girl  
who sang so nicely when you danced?

FAUST. Why, right while she was singing  
a small red mouse leaped from her mouth.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Nothing but that? You shouldn't be so fussy. 4180  
At least it wasn't just a gray one.  
Such things don't bother ardent swains.

FAUST. And then I saw ...

MEPHISTOPHELES. Saw what?

FAUST. Mephisto, do you see  
off there, alone, dead-pale, a lovely girl?

Now she is slowly moving away, 4185  
dragging her feet as if they were in fetters.  
I have to say I can't help thinking  
that she looks like my own dear Gretchen.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Leave that alone—it only can do harm! 4190  
It is a magic image, a phantom without life.  
It's dangerous to meet up with;  
its stare congeals a person's blood  
and almost turns him into stone—  
you've surely heard about Medusa!

FAUST. I know those are the eyes of someone dead, 4195  
eyes that no loving hand has closed.  
That is the breast which Gretchen let me press,  
that the sweet body which gave me joy.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Don't be so gullible, you fool! It's sorcery:  
to every man she looks like her he loves. 4200

FAUST. What ecstasy, and yet what pain!  
I cannot bear to let this vision go.  
How strange that on that lovely neck  
there is as ornament a single scarlet thread  
no thicker than a knife! 4205

MEPHISTOPHELES. You're right, I see it too.  
She also can transport her head beneath her arm,  
thanks to the fact that Perseus lopped it off.  
I see you never lose your craving for illusions!

|                                                          |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Now come along uphill a little more!                     | 4210 |
| Here it's as gay as in the Prater;                       |      |
| unless I've been bewitched myself,                       |      |
| it is a theater that I see.                              |      |
| What's on up there?                                      |      |
| OFFICIOUS SPIRIT. They're just about to start again.     | 4215 |
| The play is new, the last of seven such;                 |      |
| it is our custom here to have so many.                   |      |
| The author is a dilettant,                               |      |
| and dilettants will be the actors.                       |      |
| Excuse my disappearing, gentlemen,                       |      |
| but I'm the curtain-raising dilettant.                   | 4220 |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. It's good to find you on the Blocksberg, |      |
| for that's where all your ilk belong.                    |      |

---

## WALPURGIS NIGHT'S DREAM

OR, OBERON'S AND TITANIA'S GOLDEN WEDDING *Intermezzo*

|                |                                                                                                                              |      |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| STAGE MANAGER. | All of us can rest today,<br>sturdy sons of Mieding!<br>Ancient mountain, misty vale,<br>that is all our scenery.            | 4225 |
| HERALD.        | If you want a golden wedding,<br>fifty years are needed;<br>"golden" fits a marriage better<br>when all quarrels are ended.  | 4230 |
| OBERON.        | Spirits, if you're here with us,<br>now reveal your presence;<br>fairy king and fairy queen<br>are again united.             |      |
| PUCK.          | If Puck comes and pirouettes<br>and trips the light fantastic,<br>after him a hundred more<br>will come to share the frolic. | 4235 |
| ARIEL.         | Ariel begins to sing<br>in clear, celestial tones;<br>though his voice can summon monsters,<br>it also summons beauties.     | 4240 |
| OBERON.        | Spouses, if you're seeking concord,<br>learn the art from us!<br>To make couples love each other                             | 4245 |

|                                         |                                                                                                                                                            |      |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                         | you only need to part them.                                                                                                                                |      |
| TITANIA.                                | When husbands sulk and wives have whims,<br>grab hold of them at once,<br>and lead her off to southern climes,<br>and him to the North Pole.               | 4250 |
| ORCHESTRA                               | <i>(tutti, fortissimo).</i><br>Snout the Fly, Mosquito Bill,<br>together with their kindred,<br>Grassy Cricket, Leaf-Green Frog,<br>make up the musicians. |      |
| (Solo.)                                 | There you see the bagpipe come,<br>Soap-Bubble is his name;<br>what you hear is an endless drone<br>coming from his pug nose.                              | 4255 |
| MATERIALIZING SPIRIT.                   | Give the little wight some winglets,<br>a toad's belly, spiders' feet—<br>the result is nothing living,<br>but it makes poetic verse.                      | 4260 |
| A TINY COUPLE.                          | Mincing steps and great high leaps<br>through honey-dew and fragrance—<br>though your tempo's right for me,<br>we never will be fliers.                    | 4265 |
| INQUISITIVE TRAVELER [PROCTOVISIONARY]. | What's this silly masquerade!<br>Can my eyes be trusted?<br>Oberon's here too, tonight,<br>godlike in his beauty!                                          | 4270 |
| ORTHODOX.                               | He has neither claws nor tail,<br>but there's no doubt of this:<br>like the ancient gods of Greece<br>he also is a devil.                                  |      |
| NORTHERN ARTIST.                        | What I'm undertaking now<br>are really only sketches—                                                                                                      | 4275 |
|                                         | but I'm making preparations<br>for an Italian journey.                                                                                                     |      |
| PURIST.                                 | What misfortune brings me here,<br>where everything's improper!<br>Besides, I see but two wigs worn<br>in all this host of spirits.                        | 4280 |

|                                         |                                                                                                                                                                  |      |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| YOUNG WITCH.                            | Your powdered wigs and petticoats<br>are meant for old, gray women;<br>that's why I'm naked on my goat<br>and show my healthy body.                              | 4285 |
| MATRON.                                 | We're too well-bred and too genteel<br>to squabble here with you;<br>still, let me hope you all may rot<br>while you are sweet young things.                     | 4290 |
| CONDUCTOR.                              | Snout the Fly, Mosquito Bill,<br>don't buzz that naked beauty!<br>Grassy Cricket, Leaf-Green Frog,<br>do try to keep time also!                                  |      |
| WEATHERVANE ( <i>toward one side</i> ). | What a delightful gathering!<br>The girls all lovely brides-to-be,<br>the bachelors without exception<br>young men of greatest promise!                          | 4295 |
| ( <i>Toward the other side.</i> )       | And if the ground beneath them fails<br>to open up and swallow them,<br>then I will take a running leap<br>and go on down to hell myself.                        | 4300 |
| SATIRIC VERSES.                         | We appear as insects here,<br>with tongues that cut like scissors,<br>and come to offer our respects<br>to Satan, who's our father.                              | 4305 |
| HENNINGS.                               | See how they come, the merry crowd,<br>and have no inhibitions!<br><br>Before they're done they'll even claim<br>they really are kind-hearted.                   | 4310 |
| THE SAME, as WOULD-BE APOLLO.           | It might be well for me to join<br>this company of spirits;<br>I certainly could lead them better<br>than I do the Muses.                                        |      |
| THE SAME, as QUONDAM SPIRIT OF THE AGE. | To get ahead, join the right crowd—<br>come, latch on to my coattails!<br>If there's a lot of room atop the Brocken,<br>that's also true of Germany's Parnassus. | 4315 |
| INQUISITIVE TRAVELER.                   |                                                                                                                                                                  |      |

|                      |                                                                                                                                                             |      |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                      | <p>“Tell me who’s the stiff-necked man<br/>that I see strutting there<br/>and sticking his nose into everything?”<br/>“He’s scenting Jesuits.”</p>          | 4320 |
| CRANE.               | <p>I like to fish where water’s clear,<br/>but also where it’s troubled,<br/>and so this pious clergyman<br/>is seen among the devils.</p>                  | 4325 |
| WORLDLING.           | <p>Take this on faith from me: for pious folk<br/>all things are vehicles,<br/>and so they form conventicles<br/>here on the Brocken too.</p>               | 4330 |
| DOGMATIST.           | <p>“There surely is a new group coming—<br/>I hear a distant drumming.”<br/>“You needn’t stop! It is the monotone<br/>of bitterns booming.”</p>             |      |
| BALLET MASTER.       | <p>It’s shocking how they move their legs<br/>and just get through the figures!<br/>The crooked leap, the awkward hop,<br/>and have no sense of beauty.</p> | 4335 |
| MAN OF TOLERANCE.    | <p>Although the rabble dearly hate<br/>and want to kill each other,<br/>they’re brought together by the bagpipe<br/>like beasts by Orpheus’ lyre.</p>       | 4340 |
| DOGMATIST.           | <p>I’ll not be led astray by cries<br/>of sceptics or of critics.<br/>The Devil really must exist,<br/>since I am seeing devils.</p>                        | 4345 |
| SUBJECTIVE IDEALIST. | <p>Tonight the things my mind imagines<br/>completely overwhelm me.<br/>Indeed, if they are all my ego,<br/>then I am idiotic.</p>                          | 4350 |
| REALIST.             | <p>These goings on are most distressing<br/>and irritate me greatly;<br/>this once I find I cannot firmly<br/>stand on my own two feet.</p>                 |      |
| SUPERNATURALIST.     | <p>I am delighted to be here<br/>and share these devils’ pleasures;<br/>if they exist, I can infer<br/>there are good spirits also.</p>                     | 4355 |

|                                  |                                                                                                                                                    |      |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| SCEPTIC.                         | They're all pursuing jack-a-lanterns<br>and think the trove is near.<br>Since Doubt's the Devil's boon companion,<br>I'm right where I belong.     | 4360 |
| CONDUCTOR.                       | Snout the Fly, Mosquito Bill,<br>confound you dilettantes!<br>Grassy Cricket, Leaf-Green Frog,<br>do try to be musicians!                          | 4365 |
| THE ADROIT.                      | Sans-souci's the name to give<br>our large and merry company;<br>since we've lost our former footing,<br>we are walking on our heads.              | 4370 |
| THE AWKWARD.                     | We used to sponge a lot of meals<br>in days now gone forever;<br>since we have danced right through our shoes,<br>we're walking here on bare feet. |      |
| WILL-O'-THE-WISPS.               | We have arrived from the morass<br>where we just now originated,<br>yet here we're dancing at your ball<br>as beaus who are the height of fashion. | 4375 |
| SHOOTING STAR.                   | In a glow of stars and fire<br>I shot down from the sky;<br>now I'm frustrated in the grass—<br>who'll help me to my feet?                         | 4380 |
| THE MASSIVE.                     | Room there! Make more room around us!<br>the grass is to be walked on.<br>We are spirits, too, but are<br>somewhat ungainly creatures.             | 4385 |
| PUCK.                            | Don't behave like fattened swine<br>and stump like elephants!<br>Let no one be more rough today<br>than merry Puck himself!                        | 4390 |
| ARIEL.                           | If your wings are Nature's gift,<br>or those bred by Fancy,<br>follow me on airy path<br>to the Hill of Roses!                                     |      |
| ORCHESTRA ( <i>pianissimo</i> ). | Drifting cloud and veil of mist<br>above are growing brighter.<br>Winds are stirring leaf and sedge,<br>and all things here have vanished.         | 4395 |

---

## AN EXPANSE OF OPEN COUNTRY

*The sky is overcast. Enter FAUST and MEPHISTOPHELES.*

FAUST. In misery and despair! So long a wretched vagrant, and now a prisoner! That dear, unhappy girl confined to prison as a criminal and prey to fearful torments! Has it come to this, to this! — Perfidious, contemptible spirit, to keep this concealed from me! — Yes, stand there! Stand and roll your diabolic eyes in silent fury! Stand there and spite me with your intolerable presence! A prison! In misery that is irreparable! Delivered up to evil spirits and to the callousness of human judgment! And all this while you lull me with inane diversions, conceal from me her deepening misery, and abandon her to ruin!

MEPHISTOPHELES. She is not the first.

FAUST. You dog, you monster! — Transform him, Spirit Infinite, transform the serpent back into the canine form in which he often liked at night to trot before me and, rolling at the unsuspecting walker's feet, would trip him up and leap upon his shoulders as he fell. Transform him again into his favorite shape, so that as he crawls before me in the sand upon his belly I may kick the profligate dog! — Not the first! — Misery! Misery too great for human soul to grasp, that more than one poor girl has sunk into these depths of wretchedness, that in her writhing agony before the eyes of the Eternal Forgiver, the first could not atone the guilt of all the others! The wretched lot of this one creature gnaws at my very being's core—and you keep on calmly grinning at the fate of thousands!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Here we are again at our wits' end, the point where, with you humans, minds give way. Why have you entered into partnership with us if you cannot keep its terms? Do you want to fly, and know heights make you dizzy? Did we thrust ourselves upon you, or you on us?

FAUST. Don't bare your teeth at me like that! I loathe your ravenous grinning! — August Spirit who deigned to appear to me, you who know my heart and soul, why fetter me to this vile companion who feeds on mischief and rejoices in destruction?

MEPHISTOPHELES. Have you about finished?

FAUST. Save her, or suffer and be cursed for ages!

MEPHISTOPHELES. I cannot loose bonds laid by the avenger of blood, cannot undo his bars. — Save her! — Who plunged her into ruin! I,



or you? (FAUST *looks about in a frenzy.*) Are you searching for a thunderbolt? How fortunate you miserable mortals did not receive that weapon! To crush and slay the man who dares reply to him is how a tyrant finds relief when he's embarrassed.

FAUST. Take me to her! She shall be free!

MEPHISTOPHELES. And what about the risk you run? Guilt of blood spilled by your hand, still lies upon the town! Avenging spirits hover where the slain man fell and lie in wait for the returning murderer.

FAUST. This accusation, too—from you! All death and murder be upon your head, you monster! Take me to her, I say, and set her free!

MEPHISTOPHELES. I will take you there. And what I can do, hear! Is all the power in heaven and on earth mine? When I've befogged the jailer's senses, you take possession of his keys and lead her out with your own human hand! I shall stand guard; my magic horses will be waiting, I'll get you both away—this much I can.

FAUST. Come! Away!

[*Exeunt.*]

---

#### NIGHT: OPEN FIELDS

*Enter FAUST and MEPHISTOPHELES, dashing along on black horses.*

FAUST. What are they doing by that stone block?

MEPHISTOPHELES. I've no idea what they're brewing or making. 4400

FAUST. They soar up, and then down; they are bending and bowing

MEPHISTOPHELES. A witches' coven.

FAUST. They strew and consecrate.

MEPHISTOPHELES. On! Hurry on!

[*Exeunt.*]

---

#### PRISON

*Enter FAUST, with a bunch of keys and a lamp; he stands before a small iron door.*

FAUST. A long-forgotten sense of horror makes me tremble, 4405  
all mankind's miseries have hold of me.

She is lodged here, behind the dankness of this wall,  
and faith in human goodness was her crime!

You hesitate to enter where she is,  
 you are afraid to see her once again! 4410  
 Go now! Your hesitation but lets death come ever nearer.  
*As FAUST takes hold of the lock, singing is heard from behind the door.*  
 MARGARETE (*within*). It was mother, the whore!  
     who put me to death,  
     and father, poor knave!  
     the one who did eat me. 4415  
     The bones that remained,  
     little sister then laid  
     in a cool, quiet place;  
     I'm changed into a little bird  
     and fly away in the forest! 4420  
 FAUST (*unlocking the door*).  
     She's unaware her lover's listening,  
     can hear the clanking chains, the rustling straw.  
         *He enters the cell.*  
 MARGARETE (*cowering on her pallet*).  
     O woe! They've come! Death is so bitter!  
 FAUST (*softly*). Be quiet! Hush! I've come to set you free.  
 MARGARETE (*rolling over toward him*).  
     If you are human, pity me in my distress! 4425  
 FAUST. Your cries will wake the sleeping guards!  
         *He takes hold of her fetters to unlock them.*  
 MARGARETE (*on her knees*).  
     Headsman, who's given you the right  
     to treat me thus?  
     It's only midnight, and you've come to take me.  
     Have mercy on me, let me live! 4430  
     Is not tomorrow morning soon enough?  
         (*She rises.*)  
     I'm still so young, so young,  
     and yet I am to die already!  
     I once was pretty, that was my undoing.  
     I had a lover, now he's far away, 4435  
     they've tom my bridal wreath, its flowers all lie scattered.  
     Do not take hold of me so brutally!  
     Spare me! What harm have I done you?  
     Don't let me plead in vain,  
     you know I've never seen you in my life! 4440  
 FAUST. Can I get through this misery?

MARGARETE. I am completely at your mercy now.

First let me just nurse my child again.

All night I have been holding it close to my heart;

to hurt my feelings, they took it from me,

4445

and now they're saying that I killed it.

And I can't ever be happy again.

People are making me their song! It's mean of them!

There's an old story that ends like that,

who gave them the right to say it's mine?

4450

FAUST (*falling at her feet*).

Here at your feet is someone who loves you,

who's come to deliver you from your misery.

MARGARETE (*throwing herself down beside him*).

O let us kneel and ask the saints to aid us!

Look, beneath these stones,

under this sill,

4455

hellfire is seething.

In terrible anger

hear Satan himself

raising an uproar!

FAUST (*loudly*). Gretchen! Gretchen!

4460

MARGARETE (*becoming attentive*).

That was my lover's voice.

(*She springs to her feet; the fetters drop to the floor.*)

Where is he? I heard him calling.

I am free! No one can stop me.

I want to rush and throw my arms about his neck,

I want to lie upon his breast!

4465

There at the door he called out: Gretchen!

In the howling and clatter of hell,

and the angry jeering of devils,

I could tell the sound of that dear, sweet voice.

FAUST. I'm here!

MARGARETE. It's you! O say so once again!

4470

(*She embraces FAUST.*)

It's he, it's he! Where are my torments now—

the fearful prison and the dreadful chains?

It's you! You've come to rescue me,

and I am saved! –

There is the street again

4475

where I first saw you,

the happy garden where,  
 with Martha, I'm awaiting you.  
 FAUST (*urging her toward the door*).  
 Come! Come along!

MARGARETE. Don't hurry! Stay!  
 I so much like to be where you are staying. 4480  
*She caresses FAUST.*

FAUST. Make haste!  
 Unless you hurry,  
 there'll be a dreadful price to pay.

MARGARETE. Are you no longer able to return a kiss? 4485  
 So short a time away from me, my love,  
 and you've forgotten how to kiss?  
 Why do I feel so frightened in your arms,  
 when once your words, your eyes,  
 brought all of heaven down about me,  
 and you seemed to want to stifle me with kisses. 4490  
 Give me a kiss,  
 or I'll kiss you!

(*She embraces FAUST.*)

Your lips are terribly cold,  
 they do not speak.  
 What has become 4495  
 of the love you had?  
 Who's stolen it from me!

*She turns away from FAUST.*

FAUST. Come, follow me! Dear love, have courage!  
 If you but follow me, I'll hold you to my heart  
 with all the warmth it has! I beg you only, come! 4500

MARGARETE (*turning toward FAUST*).  
 And is it you? And is it really you?

FAUST. Yes! Come with me!

MARGARETE. You have undone my chains,  
 are taking me again into your arms.  
 But why do you not shrink from me in fear?  
 Do you, my love, know whom you're setting free? 4505

FAUST. Come, hurry! Darkness is already waning.

MARGARETE. I am the one who killed my mother,  
 I am the one who drowned my child.  
 Wasn't the baby given to us both,  
 to you as well? – I hardly can believe it's you! 4510  
 Give me your hand. Yes, this is not a dream!

Your dear, dear hand! But oh, it's wet.  
 Wipe it off! I can't help thinking  
 there's blood on it.  
 Oh God, what have you done! 4515  
 Put up your sword,  
 I beg you.  
 FAUST. Let what is past, be past,  
 or you will be the death of me.

MARGARETE. No, you must go on living! 4520  
 I want to tell how the graves should be;  
 you must see to them tomorrow  
 the very first thing:  
 the best place for mother;  
 my brother close beside; 4525  
 with me a bit off to the side,  
 yet not too far away;  
 and the little one at my right breast.  
 No one else is to be beside me! –  
 How lovely it was and what sweet happiness 4530  
 to nestle up against you!  
 But I can't do so any more—  
 it is as if I had to force myself upon you  
 and you were pushing me away.  
 And still it's you, looking so kind, so good. 4535

FAUST. Come, if you feel sure of who I am!  
 MARGARETE. Out through there?  
 FAUST. To freedom.

MARGARETE. If the grave's out there  
 and death lying in wait, yes!  
 From here to my bed of eternal rest, 4540  
 and not one step beyond –  
 Are you now leaving? Heinrich, would that I could too!

FAUST. You can if you but wish! The door is open.  
 MARGARETE. I cannot leave; for me there is no hope. 4545  
 Why run away when they are watching for me?  
 It's terrible to be reduced to begging,  
 and then with a bad conscience too!  
 It's terrible to go not knowing where—  
 and they will catch me anyhow.

FAUST. I'll be with you. 4550  
 MARGARETE. Hurry! Hurry,  
 save your poor child!  
 Quick! Keep to the path

that goes up along the brook,  
then over the bridge  
and into the woods  
to the left, by the fence—  
in the pond!

Grab hold, don't wait!  
See the effort to rise,  
the stirring of life—  
save it, save it!

FAUST. Be sensible, I beg you!

One step, just one! and you'll be free.

MARGARETE. If only we were past the hill! 4565

On a rock there, my mother is sitting—

I feel a cold hand grab my hair!

There on a rock my mother is sitting

and feebly shaking her head;

she doesn't wave or nod, her head's too heavy; 4570

she slept too long to waken ever again.

She slept to let us have our happiness.

And those were happy times!

FAUST. If pleas and reasons are of no avail,

I'll carry you away against your will. 4575

MARGARETE. Let go of me! I won't be forced.

Take your wicked hands off me!

You know that up to now I've done what you have wanted.

FAUST. The day dawns gray! – O dearest one!

MARGARETE. Day! Yes, the day begins—the day of judgment 4580

that should have been my wedding-day!

Let no one know you've been in Gretchen's room.

Alas, no wreath—

what's done can't be undone!

We'll meet again, 4585

but not at a wedding dance.

The crowd is gathering in silence:

the square and streets

won't hold them all.

Hear the knell calling, see the white rod break! 4590

How roughly they tie and handle me,

how quickly they carry me to the block!

The edge that rushes down at me

is darting now toward every neck.



## PART TWO OF THE TRAGEDY in Five Acts

### ACT I

#### A PLEASANT LANDSCAPE

FAUST *is couched on grass and flowers, fatigued, restless, and endeavoring to sleep as twilight is about to become darkness; hovering SPIRITS—graceful diminutive figures —circle about him.*

ARIEL (*singing to the sound of aeolian harps*).

As the falling springtime blossoms  
float above them everywhere  
and all mortals see great promise 4615  
in the greenness of the fields;  
small in size, but large in spirit,  
elves are quick to be of help,  
pitying the man of sorrow,  
whether he be saint or sinner. 4620

You who are circling in the air above this head,  
now demonstrate your elfin worth—  
compose the angry strife within his heart,  
remove the burning barbs of his remorse,  
and purge him of all sense of horror! 4625  
The watches of the night are four;  
start now to make each one agreeable.  
First rest his head on cushioning coolness,  
then bathe him in the dew of Lethe's waters;  
his body will recover quickly from its numbness 4630  
if sleep gives him the strength to face the coming day;  
perform your noblest elfin duty  
and grant him restoration to its sacred light!

SPIRITS (*in chorus; singly, by twos and more, alternately and collectively*).

When about the green-girt meadow  
breezes stir with gentle torpor, 4635  
twilight falls with fragrant sweetness,  
closes in with veils of mist.  
Murmur dulcetly of calmness,  
cradle this heart in childhood's peace,  
and upon his tired eyes 4640



shut the portals of day's light.

Night has now already fallen,  
sacred ranks of stars are forming;  
dazzling lights and lesser sparklings  
glitter near or gleam afar,  
glitter here in the lake's mirror,  
gleam above in night's translucence;  
the regnant moon in all its glory  
seals and confirms the bliss of sleep.

4645

Hours are obliterated,  
pain and joy have vanished now;  
be assured, you will recover—  
take hope from this day's first gleaming!  
Greening valleys and emerging hills  
offer bush-filled shadow and repose,  
and in pliant, argent waves  
new grain billows harvestward.

4650

4655

To obtain desires' fulfillment,  
look and see the radiance there!  
You are under no deep spell,  
cast away sleep's veil-thin husk!  
Do not hesitate, be daring  
while the aimless crowd delays:  
all is achieved by noble minds  
that understand and quickly act!

4660

4665

*A great clangor heralds the approach of the sun.*

ARIEL. Hearken! Hear the onrush of the Horae!

In these sounds we spirits hear  
the new day already born.  
Cavern portals grate and rattle,

rolling wheels of Phoebus clatter,  
light arrives with deafening din!  
Brasses blare, the trumpets peal,  
eyes are blinking, ears astounded—  
things unheard you must not hear:  
hide away in flowers' petals  
or, to dwell in deeper stillness,  
in the rocks below their leafage;  
you'll be deaf if such sounds reach you.

4670

4675

*[Exeunt.]*

FAUST. Life's pulses beat with fresh vitality  
and gently greet the sky's first glimmering;  
you also, Earth, have lasted out this night  
and breathe new-quicken'd there below,  
compassing me already with inchoate joy.

4680

You rouse and stir a vigorous resolve  
 to strive henceforth towards being's highest form. – 4685  
 But now the light of dawn unveils the world:  
 the woods resound with myriads of living voices;  
 everywhere valleys are filled with streaks of fog,  
 but still the heavens' brightness penetrates their depths,  
 and from the misty chasm where they slept 4690  
 fresh-quicken'd boughs and branches have burst forth;  
 muted no more, color on color emerges in the dell  
 where trembling pearls drench every leaf and flower—  
 all that surrounds me forms a paradise!  
 Look now, above! The mountains' mighty peaks 4695  
 herald the hour of full solemnity,  
 by right partaking of the everlasting light  
 before it veers towards us below;  
 new radiant clarity extends its boon  
 to alpine meadows sloping green beneath them 4700  
 and stage by stage completes its downward journey; –  
 now it appears!—and, to my sorrow blinded,  
 I turn my gaze away suffused with pain.  
 The same thing happens when our eager hope  
 believes its highest goal has been obtained 4705  
 and finds the portals of fulfillment open wide:  
 then there bursts forth from those eternal depths  
 excess of flame, and so we halt confounded;  
 our wish had been to light the torch of life—  
 instead, a very sea of fire engulfs us. 4710  
 Do love and hate envelop us in flame,  
 savagely alternating pain and joy,  
 so that we look once more towards earth and seek  
 concealment in its first new lacery?  
 I am content to have the sun behind me. 4715  
 The cataract there storming through the cliff—  
 the more I watch it, the more is my delight.  
 From fall to fall it swirls, gushing forth  
 in streams that soon are many, many more,  
 into the air all loudly tossing spray and foam. 4720  
 But see how, rising from this turbulence,  
 the rainbow forms its changing-unchanged arch,  
 now clearly drawn, now evanescent,  
 and casts cool, fragrant showers all about it.  
 Of human striving it's a perfect symbol— 4725  
 ponder this well to understand more clearly  
 that what we have as life is many-hued reflection.

---

## AN IMPERIAL PALACE

### THE THRONE ROOM

STATE COUNCIL, *awaiting the Emperor. Trumpets. Enter COURTIERs and*  
RETAINERS, *splendidly attired; the EMPEROR ascends his throne, and the*  
ASTROLOGER *stands at his right.*

EMPEROR. I greet you, dear and loyal subjects,  
assembled here from near and far ... —  
I see my Sage is at my side, 4730  
but what has happned to my Fool?

A SQUIRE. As you were coming up the stairs  
he suddenly collapsed behind your trailing robe;  
the hulk of fat was lugged away,  
but whether dead or drunk we do not know. 4735

SECOND SQUIRE. At once, and with amazing quickness,  
another fool pushed into his place.  
He is most splendidly accoutered,  
but so grotesque that everyone is leery;  
the guards there at the doorway hold 4740  
their halberds crossed in front of him—  
why here he is, foolhardy fellow!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*kneeling at the throne*).  
What is accursed, yet always welcome,  
what ardently desired, and yet chased away,  
what constantly receives our favor, 4745  
yet is denounced and much reviled?

Whom can you never summon to you,  
whose name do all delight to hear?  
What seeks a place before your throne  
although it chose self-banishment? 4750

EMPEROR. Spare us your words on this occasion!  
Your riddles here are out of place,  
  
these gentlemen have brought their own.  
I should be glad if you'd just fill this gap.  
My former fool, I fear, has gone far, far away. 4755  
Be his relief, come stand beside me.

MEPHISTOPHELES *ascends the steps and places himself at the*  
EMPEROR'S *left.*

VOICES (*murmuring*).

Another fool. – And other troubles. –

Where is he from? – How did he get in here? –

The old one fell. – His time was up! –

He was a barrel. – Now we have a stave! 4760

EMPEROR. And so, my dear and loyal subjects,

I welcome you from far and near!

You gather under a propitious star,  
that we shall thrive stands written in the sky.

But tell me why at such a time, 4765

when we would like to banish cares,

put on the masks of carnival,

and only cultivate what's pleasant,

we should torment ourselves by holding council?

But since you think there's no alternative, 4770

we now are met, and so, to the agenda!

CHANCELLOR[-ARCHBISHOP].

The highest virtue, halo-like,

encircles the Imperial head; the Emperor

alone can exercise it validly:

its name is Justice! – Loved by all mankind, 4775

demanding, wished for, hard to live without,

it is what he must grant his people.

Alas! Can reason help the human mind,

goodness our hearts, or willingness our hands,

while fever rages rampant in the state 4780

and brooding evil breeds prolific evils?

If from this lofty vantage point one views below

your far-flung realm, it seems an ugly dream

in which Deformity holds sway among deformities

and Lawlessness prevails by legal means 4785

as Error spreads and fills the world with error.

One man makes off with flocks, another with a woman,

or with the altar's chalice, cross, and candlesticks,

and then for years they boast unscathed of what they've  
done

with no attainder of their persons. 4790

Plaintiffs now crowd the halls of justice

where judges sit in cushioned ease,

and all the while in angry flood

sedition's growing turmoil surges higher.

With the support of partners no less guilty 4795

men dare to brag of infamy and heinous crime,

but you will only hear the verdict “Guilty!”  
when innocence defends itself.  
Society thus strives for its own fragmentation  
and to destroy whatever things are seemly— 4800  
with this the case, how can the sense develop  
that will alone guide us to what is right?  
Ultimately the man of good intentions  
must bow to sycophants and to suborners,  
while judges impotent to mete out punishment 4805  
become at last associates of criminals.  
I’ve painted a black picture, even though  
I should prefer it veiled in greater darkness still.

*(He pauses.)*

There can be no avoiding of decisions;  
when all commit and suffer wrongs, 4810  
then Majesty itself becomes a victim.

GRAND-MASTER OF THE ARMIES.

What tumult marks these violent times!  
Men kill, and then are killed in turn,  
and turn deaf ears to any orders.  
The citizen behind his walls, 4815  
the knight up in his rock-built aerie,  
have vowed they will outlast our sieges  
and are maintaining all their forces.  
Our mercenaries grow impatient  
and angrily demand their pay; 4820  
and if we didn’t owe them money still,  
they would by now have all deserted.  
If one denies them what all claim is theirs,  
he has stirred up a hornets’ nest;  
the realm they were to have protected 4825  
lies plundered now and devastated.  
By letting their mad fury work its havoc  
we’ve lost half of our world already;  
there still are kings beyond our borders,  
but none believes this might somehow affect him. 4830

INTENDANT OF THE TREASURY.

Who’d dare to claim that we have allies—  
like water in defective pipes,  
their promised subsidies do not arrive!  
Moreover, Sire, who now holds property 4835  
in every part of all your wide domains?  
No matter where you go, some upstart’s settled in  
and wants to live in independence;

one must watch passively as he goes his own way;  
 we've given up so many rights 4840  
 that we no longer have a right to anything.  
 Then too, as for the parties, as they're called,  
 there's no relying on them nowadays;  
 it does not matter if they blame or praise,  
 since love and hate have ceased to be of consequence.  
 Both Ghibellines and Guelfs are now in hiding 4845  
 in order to enjoy some rest;  
 who cares to help his neighbor now,  
 when all must care for their own selves!  
 The portals of access to gold are barricaded;  
 everyone's scraping, digging, and amassing, 4850  
 and still our coffers are unfilled.

LORD STEWARD. What disasters I must suffer too!  
 Every day we try to save,  
 but every day our needs increase  
 and day by day my troubles grow. 4855  
 The cooks are suffering no shortage;  
 wild boars, and stags and does, and hares,  
 chickens and turkeys, geese and ducks—  
 payments in kind—are income we are sure of  
 and by and large arrive on time. 4860  
 But wine's beginning to run out.  
 Although there was a time our cellars were heaped high  
 with cask on cask of the best years and vintages,  
 your nobles' never ending drinking bouts  
 are slushing down the final drops. 4865  
 Even the city councils have to tap their stocks  
 as festive wine is drunk from tankards or from bowls  
 and goes to waste beneath the table.  
 I'm now supposed to pay the bills and wages,  
 but can expect no mercy from the money lenders, 4870  
 who execute agreements that eat up  
 what future years must yet produce.  
 Our hogs are not allowed to fatten,  
 the bolster on our bed's hypothecated,  
 the bread we're served already's been consumed.  
 4875

EMPEROR (*after some reflection, to MEPHISTOPHELES*).  
 Speak, Fool. Do you not know some further cause for woe?  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. I know of none, and only see the splendor  
 surrounding you and all your court! – Could confidence  
 be wanting where the sovereign's word is absolute

and troops stand by to rout all opposition, 4880  
 where, strengthened by intelligence, good will  
 and energy of many kinds await your use?  
 What forces could combine to cause disaster  
 and to eclipse a world where stars like these are shining?

VOICES (*murmuring*).  
 The fellow's a rogue. – And clever too. – 4885  
 Lies gain him favor ... – at least for a while. –  
 I see already ... – what's behind this. –  
 And then what next? – Some grand-scale scheme!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Where in the world is something not in short supply?  
 Someone lacks this, another that, but here the lack is 4890  
 money.  
 Of course you can't just pick it off the floor,  
 but Wisdom's skill is getting what's most deeply hidden.  
 In mountain veins and in foundation walls  
 you'll find both coined and uncoined gold,  
 and if you ask who will extract it, I reply: 4895  
 a man that nature has endowed with mighty intellect.

CHANCELLOR. Nature and intellect are not words said to  
 Christians  
 Because such language is so dangerous  
 the atheist is executed at the stake.

Nature is sin, and Intellect the devil; 4900  
 hermaphroditic Doubt their child  
 which they together foster.  
 Such words to us! – Time has brought forth but two  
 estates  
 within the lands that are the emperor's ancient holdings;  
 they are the clergy and the knights, 4905  
 the proper pillars of his throne,  
 who are our shield against tempestuous violence  
 and as reward are granted Church and State.

Sedition starts with intellects  
 bemuddled by plebeian sentiments: 4910  
 they are the heretics and sorcerers,  
 corrupting countryside and town!  
 Now, with your brazen jests, you try  
 to smuggle them into these highest circles;  
 you and your kind thrive on corrupted hearts 4915  
 whose folly makes them closely kin to you.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Your words reveal to me what makes a man of learning!  
 What you can't touch, for you is leagues away,  
 what you can't grasp does not exist at all,

what you can't count, you don't believe is true, 4920  
 what you can't weigh is of no weight to you,  
 and what you do not coin, you think of no account.  
 EMPEROR. All this does not supply a thing we lack—  
 why offer us a Lenten sermon now?  
 I've had my fill of these eternal ifs and buts; 4925  
 money is short; well, go and get it then!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. I'll get you what you want, and more besides;  
 it's easy, to be sure, but easy tasks take effort;  
 the gold's already there, but getting at it  
 is the great trick, and who knows how to do so? 4930  
 Still, bear in mind how often in those days of terror,  
 when human tides submerged entire nations,  
 people, despite all fear and trembling,  
 would hide what they most prized somewhere or other.  
 The custom, old when Rome was the great power, 4935  
 has since prevailed till yesterday—yes, till today.  
 These buried things all rest in peace within the earth,  
 the subsoil is the Emperor's, they're his to have.  
 TREASURER. He doesn't speak so badly, for a fool:  
 that is indeed an old imperial right. 4940  
 CHANCELLOR. Satan is laying golden snares for you:  
 there's something here that's neither right nor pious.  
 LORD STEWARD. If he'd but get our court the payments due it,  
 I would not mind if something weren't exactly right.  
 GRAND-MASTER. The Fool's no fool, he promises what's needed; 4945  
 a soldier least of all will ask about its source.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. And if perhaps you think that I'm deceiving  
 you,  
 here's the Astrologer for you to question,  
 who knows in every sphere the mansions and the hours.  
 Well, tell us, sir, what aspects now prevail! 4950  
 VOICES (*murmuring*).  
 They both are rogues ... – and hand in glove. –  
 The visionary and the fool ... – so near the throne!  
 An old, old song ... – heard much too often. –  
 Folly is prompting ... – as the sage speaks.  
 ASTROLOGER (*with MEPHISTOPHELES prompting*).  
 The Sun himself is gold without alloy, 4955  
 his herald, Mercury, will serve if kindly paid;  
 Dame Venus has already cast her spell upon you,  
 who see her lovely face at dawn and dusk;  
 chaste Luna, who's erratic, does have whims;  
 Mars' power threatens you, although he does not smite. 4960



And Jupiter is still the brightest star,  
 while giant Saturn seems remote and small.  
 The latter is, as metal, not much venerated  
 and has, despite its density, but little value. 4965  
 What's certain is that skies will shine  
 when Sol and Luna, gold and silver, are conjoined;  
 all other things are then obtainable,  
 palace and park and rosy cheek and pretty breast,  
 and they will be provided by the erudition  
 of one with power none of us possesses. 4970

EMPEROR. I hear each word he utters twice  
 but don't find what he says convincing.

VOICES (*murmuring*).  
 What is the sense of this? – The joke's jejune. –  
 Astrology ... – or alchemy! –  
 I've heard it all before ... – and had false hopes. – 4975  
 And even if this great man comes ... – he'll be a quack.

MEPHISTOPHELES. I see both general amazement  
 and lack of confidence in this great plan,  
 hear silly talk of mandrake roots  
 and of black dogs deaf to their cries. 4980  
 It does not matter that the sceptics sneer  
 or that the credulous cry sorcery,  
 for in the end their soles will itch  
 and in full stride their feet will stumble.

You can all sense the hidden operations 4985  
 of Nature's never-ceasing power,  
 and from her ultrasubterranean regions  
 there slowly now emerge its vital signs.  
 As soon as all your limbs start twitching  
 or if some spot gives you uncanny feelings, 4990  
 be not afraid, but start at once to scrape and dig,  
 for where you stumble, is where treasure lies!

VOICES (*murmuring*).  
 My foot feels like a lump of lead. –  
 My arm has cramps. – You have the gout. –  
 There is an itch on my big toe. – 4995  
 My spine is one great mass of aches. –  
 If all these symptoms meant a thing,  
 this hall would be a treasure island.

EMPEROR. Now hurry up—you shall not slip away—  
 and demonstrate your blather's truth 5000  
 by showing us at once these precious vaults.  
 I'll put aside my sword and scepter,

and will, if you're not lying, execute  
the project with my own imperial hands—  
or send you, if you lie, to hell. 5005

MEPHISTOPHELES (*aside*).  
That's one place I know how to find!  
(*Aloud.*) I feel, however, that I must say more  
about the unowned wealth that's waiting everywhere.  
The peasant, as he plows his furrow,  
will turn up with the soil a pot of gold; 5010  
he hopes to scrape saltpeter from its clay  
and finds, to his amazement and delight,  
in his impoverished hand a roll of yellow gold.  
What vaults will have to be blown up,

and through what crevices and shafts, 5015  
that border on the underworld,  
the knowing treasure hunter needs must press!  
In spacious cellars, long intact.  
he'll see row after row  
of golden tankards, bowls, and plates; 5020  
there will be goblets made of rubies,  
and if he wants to drink from them,  
he'll find nearby an ancient vintage.  
But—take the expert's word for this—  
the staves decayed completely long ago, 5025  
and tartar formed a cask to hold the wine.  
These essences of precious wines,  
not merely jewels and gold,  
lie veiled in horrid darkness.  
The sage is eager to explore this world; 5030  
a child can recognize what's seen in day's clear light,  
the home of mysteries is darkness.

EMPEROR. Those I shall leave to you! What good can come of  
gloom?  
Whatever is of value must stand the light of day.  
You cannot tell the thief when it's so dark 5035  
that every cow is black and all the cats are gray.  
Those pots down there, so heavy with their gold—  
go draw your plow, bring them to light.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Take hoe and spade, and dig yourself,  
this peasant labor will augment your greatness, 5040  
and from the soil you'll liberate  
a herd of golden calves. And then you can

with no delay, and to your great delight,  
adorn yourself, and then your mistress;

a lustrous, iridescent jewel 5045  
enhances majesty and beauty.

EMPEROR. Quick, let us start at once! How long must this drag  
out!

ASTROLOGER (*as before*).

Sire, moderate this eagerness  
until the merriment of carnival is past;  
we'll not achieve our end if we're distracted. 5050

We first must, with composure, win our peace of soul  
and earn what is below with help from what's above.

Who wants what's good must first be good;  
who wishes happiness must calm his blood;  
he who desires wine must press ripe grapes; 5055  
who hopes for miracles must fortify his faith.

EMPEROR. Then let us pass the time in gaiety  
until Ash Wednesday comes, most opportunely!  
Meanwhile we'll celebrate—of this I'm sure—  
all the more merrily the madness of our carnival. 5060

*Trumpets. Exeunt all except MEPHISTOPHELES.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. That merit and good fortune are connected  
is something that these idiots will never see;  
the philosopher's stone could be in their possession,  
but there'd be no philosopher to use it. [Exit.

---

## A GREAT HALL

*The hall and rooms into which it opens are decorated as described in the  
Masquerade.*

HERALD. Imagine that you're not in Germany— 5065  
instead of Dance of Death or dancing fools and demons  
expect a cheerful entertainment.

When in your interest and his own  
our Emperor traversed the lofty Alps  
and traveled down to Rome, 5070  
he found a cheerful land and took possession of it.  
He first obtained, prostrate at holy feet,  
the confirmation of his sovereign powers,  
but if he went to get himself his crown,

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| he brought us back the domino as well.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 5075 |
| Thus we are all regenerated now,<br>and men of great urbanity are nothing loath<br>to draw its hood about their head and ears;<br>they may then look like idiots<br>but underneath are still as wise as ever. –                                                                                                    | 5080 |
| I now see the people start to gather,<br>the hesitant desert, the confident pair off,<br>and groups crowd into place for the procession.<br>Don't wait to make your entrances and exits—<br>mankind, with all its myriad antics<br>has always been and always will remain<br>the single great embodiment of Folly! | 5085 |
| FLOWER GIRLS ( <i>singing to the accompaniment of mandolins</i> ).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |      |
| So that we may win your favor,<br>we've adorned ourselves tonight<br>as young girls who've come from Florence<br>to this splendid German court;<br>in brown hair you see us wearing<br>a profusion of gay flowers<br>in which silken threads and pieces<br>play no unimportant role.                               | 5090 |
| And we think it meritorious,<br>even highly laudatory,<br>that our artificial flowers<br>bloom resplendent all year long.                                                                                                                                                                                          | 5095 |
| Bits of cloth dyed many colors<br>are arranged in symmetry;<br>you may ridicule components,<br>but will find the whole attractive.                                                                                                                                                                                 | 5100 |
| We are pretty things to look at,<br>flower girls with easy manners,<br>since what's natural for women<br>is so similar to art.                                                                                                                                                                                     | 5105 |
| HERALD. Show the treasures of the baskets                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |      |
| which you bear upon your heads<br>and which fill your arms with color,<br>so that all may take their choice.<br>Hurry, now, so that these arbors<br>can appear to be a garden!                                                                                                                                     | 5110 |
| What is sold and those who sell it<br>well are worth your crowding closer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 5115 |

FLOWER GIRLS.

Hawk your wares where we are welcome—  
but allow no haggling here!—  
and announce what you can offer  
in a few well-chosen words.

AN OLIVE BRANCH, BEARING FRUIT.

There's no flower that I envy, 5120  
I avoid all forms of conflict,  
staying true to my own nature;  
many nations' major resource,  
I am also everywhere  
sign and surety of peace. 5125  
May it be my luck today  
to adorn a pretty head!

A WREATH OF GOLDEN GRAIN.

Ceres' gifts, as finery,  
will supplement your loveliness;  
may what men most prize as useful 5130  
serve as ornament of beauty.

A WREATH OF FANCIFUL FLOWERS.

Mallow-like, and many-colored,  
flower-marvels rise from moss;  
we are not a mode of Nature,  
but what Fashion can produce. 5135

A BOUQUET OF FANCIFUL FLOWERS.

Theophrastus couldn't tell you  
any name that might describe us;  
nonetheless I hope we'll please,  
if not all, at least some ladies,  
whom I think we would suit nicely 5140  
if they'd braid us in their hair  
or decided they might grant us  
resting places on their bosoms.

CHALLENGE [OF ROSEBUDS].

Let these motley fancies blossom 5145  
for the sake of passing fashion  
and assume strange, curious shapes  
unlike any Nature shows!  
Golden cups on stems of green,  
peep forth from luxuriant tresses! –  
We prefer to stay in hiding, 5150

happy to be found while fresh.

Who, when summer is proclaimed  
and the rosebud glows with flame,  
would forgo that happiness?  
Everywhere in Flora's realm  
promise and fulfillment hold  
sight, mind, heart beneath one spell.

5155

*The FLOWER GIRLS arrange their wares neatly under arcades of greenery.*

GARDENERS (*singing to the accompaniment of archlutes*).

By all means watch flowers grow,  
see them grace your charming heads,  
but though fruits are less seductive  
they can please your sense of taste.

5160

If bronzed faces offer you  
cherries, peaches, or greengages,  
buy them, but not for their looks:  
the best judge is tongue and palate.

5165

Come and eat fruit fully ripened—  
you'll enjoy its scent and flavor!  
You may write an ode on roses,  
apples must be bitten into.

You who have abundant youth,  
let us join you and form couples;  
as your neighbors we'll heap high  
and display ripe wares we offer.

5170

Then, beneath these gay festoons,  
in the alcoves of these arbors,  
you will find at the same time  
bud, and leaf, and flower, and fruit.

5175

*Singing separately and together to the accompaniment of the guitars and lutes, the GARDENERS and FLOWER GIRLS continue to set up the displays of their wares in gradually rising tiers and to offer them for sale. – Enter a*

MOTHER *and* DAUGHTER.

MOTHER. When you were my baby girl,  
dressed in pretty bonnets,  
what a lovely face you had,  
what a dainty figure!  
Right away I could imagine  
you betrothed to someone rich,  
then a bride, a matron.

5180

Now so many fleeting years  
have, alas! been wasted,

5185

a variety of beaus  
gone their way so quickly,  
though you promptly danced with some  
or your elbow sometimes gave  
gentle hints to others. 5190

Every party that we planned  
proved to be a failure;  
games of forfeit, odd-man-out,  
were a waste of effort. 5195

Fools are on the loose today:  
if you spread your lap, my dear,  
surely you can catch one.

*They are joined by FRIENDS and ACQUAINTANCES, all young and pretty girls; sounds of intimate conversation are heard. — Enter FISHERMEN and BIRDCATCHERS, with nets, rods, limed sticks, and other gear, who mingle with the girls. A general snatching, grabbing, twisting away, and being caught affords occasion for an exchange of pleasantries.*

WOODCUTTERS (*entering with boorish boisterousness*).

Make room, a clearing!  
We need great spaces  
to fell our timber,  
which lands with thunder  
and which, when carried,  
can knock you over.

But to our credit  
do not forget this:  
Unless coarse fellows  
did heavy labor,  
how would fine folk,  
smart though they be,  
ever exist? 5205

Learn well this lesson,  
for you'd be frozen  
if we'd not sweated! 5210

PULCINELLI (*awkward, almost dunce-like*).

You are born foolish  
who stoop and carry.  
We who are clever  
were never burdened;  
our dunce's caps 5215

and our flimsy jackets 5220  
 are not great burdens,  
 and we enjoy  
 being always idle  
 and free to saunter  
 in slippered feet 5225  
 through the crowded market,  
 to stop and gape  
 and crow at our friends,  
 then, at their crowing,  
 to glide like eels 5230  
 through the crowds of people  
 and dance together  
 in wild disorder.  
 You may commend,  
 or you may condemn,— 5235  
 but you can't upset us.

PARASITES (*greedily fawning*).

You worthy porters  
 and your relations,  
 the charcoal burners,  
 serve us as models. 5240  
 What, by themselves, would be the use  
 of scraping and bowing,  
 affirmative noddings,  
 tortuous phrases,  
 and blowing so that what we say 5245  
 is hot or cold  
 according to who hears it?  
 What use would be  
 the mightiest fire  
 sent men from heaven, 5250  
 if we lacked wood  
 and charcoal, brought  
 so that their hearths  
 may glow with flame?  
 There's where pots boil and bubble, 5255  
 where roasts and stews are made.

The true gourmets—  
 the parasites who lick each plate—  
 inspired by a roast's aroma



or intuition that there's fish, 5260  
perform great deeds  
at patrons' tables.

A DRUNKARD (*in a stupor*).

Nothing can go wrong today!  
I have never felt so fine!  
I've produced my own high spirits 5265  
and the jolly songs I sing.

So I'm drinking! Have a drink!  
Let's clink glasses! Hear them clink!  
You back there, come over here!  
After clinking, you'll be finished. 5270

How the little woman screeched,  
ridiculed my nice bright costume,  
and although I swaggered bravely  
called me just a mannequin.

I can drink though! Have a drink! 5275  
Clink your glasses! Hear them clink!  
Mannequins, let's clink our glasses—  
that's the sound that says we've finished.

Don't you tell me that I'm lost,  
I am where I like to be. 5280

If the landlord won't give credit,  
then his wife will or their maid.  
I'll keep drinking! Have a drink!  
On your feet! Let's hear that clink!  
Let's keep drinking to each other, 5285  
though I think we're nearly finished.

I don't care where I am happy  
just as long as it is somewhere;

let me lie here where I'm lying,  
I don't feel like standing up.\* 5290

CHORUS. Brothers, let us all have drinks!

Raise a lively toast and clink!  
Don't fall off your bench or keg—  
he who's on the floor is finished.

*The HERALD announces various POETS: Nature Poets, Court Singers, Chivalric Minstrels, Sweet Singers, and Rhapsodists; in the press of rivals competing for attention, none will allow another to declaim, although one manages to say a few words as he passes.*

SATIRIC POET. Perhaps you'd like to know 5295

what most would please this poet?  
To be allowed to say  
what no one wants to hear.

*Poets of Night Thoughts and Graveyard Poets beg to be excused, since they have just become involved in a most interesting discussion with a Vampire visibly fresh from his grave, which might possibly permit the development of a new poetic genre.*

*The HERALD cannot gainsay them, and so he summons figures from Greek mythology, which loses neither its charm nor its character when its figures appear in costumes adapted to later tastes.*

---

*Enter the GRACES.*

AGLAIA. We bring grace into your lives;  
when you give, be gracious too. 5300

HEGEMONE. When receiving, show good grace:  
to fulfill a wish is kindness.

EUPHROSYNE. And when quiet years are reached,  
ATROPOS. learn to thank with gracefulness.

*Enter the FATES.*

I, who am the oldest sister, 5305  
have been asked to spin today;  
care and thought are greatly needed  
when the thread of life is fragile.

To make sure it's soft and supple,  
I have sleyed the finest flax; 5310  
to make sure it's smooth and even,  
I shall dress it with deft hands.

If you're prone to be too carefree  
in a time of revelry, 5315  
don't forget this thread has limits,

CLOTHO. and beware lest it should break!  
I must explain that recently  
these shears were given to my care  
because there was dissatisfaction 5320  
with how our oldest sister acted.

She draws forth and keeps extending  
threads that have no worth whatever;  
cutting those of greatest promise,  
off she lugs them to the grave.

Still, when I was young and active 5325  
I made hundreds of mistakes;  
so, as curb upon myself,  
now the shears are in their case.

And I welcome this constraint,

|           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |      |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|           | liking as I do this place;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 5330 |
| LACHESIS. | as for you, enjoy yourselves<br>while you have immunity.<br>I, alone endowed with judgment,<br>keep my task of sorting threads;<br>though my reel is always moving,<br>it has never turned too fast.                                                                                                                                                                                           | 5335 |
|           | Strands arrive and then are twisted,<br>each one guided by my hand;<br>none may overlap another,<br>each must stay where it belongs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 5340 |
|           | Should I ever be forgetful,<br>I'd despair for humankind;<br>years and hours both are measured,<br>and the Weaver holds the skein.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |      |
| HERALD.   | You will not recognize the figures coming now,<br>however many classic books you've read;<br>judging these trouble-makers by their looks,<br>you'd be inclined to call them welcome guests.                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 5345 |
|           | They are the Furies—this you won't believe—<br>endowed with beauty, grace, with friendliness and youth!<br>Yet once involved with them, you soon find out<br>how doves like these can wound with serpents' tongues.                                                                                                                                                                            | 5350 |
|           | Although they are malicious, on this day<br>when every boasting fool admits his faults<br>they too won't pose as angels—they'll confess<br>that in both town and country they're a plague.                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 5355 |
|           | <i>Enter the FURIES.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |      |
| ALECTO.   | Forewarned is not forearmed! You will believe us<br>because we're young and pretty<br>and if there's one among you with a sweetheart,<br>we'll tickle his ears with blandishments<br>until the time has come to tell him privately<br>that <i>she</i> is also ogling <i>him</i> and <i>him</i> ,<br>that she's dull-witted and misshapen, limps,<br>and, though his fiancée, a worthless minx. | 5360 |
|           | We know the way to make her wretched too:<br>"It was your friend himself who, a few weeks ago,<br>said slighting things about you to Miss So and So!"<br>They may make up, but doubts will still remain.                                                                                                                                                                                       | 5365 |
| MEGAERA.  | Those are but petty matters! When they're wed<br>it is my turn, and then I never fail<br>to spoil connubial bliss with galling quirks.<br>Mortals are not consistent—every hour differs—                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 5370 |

and no one has in his embrace his heart's desire  
 who is not fool enough to hope he'll get  
 from Fortune something more desirable— 5375  
 he flees his sun and tries to melt new ice.  
 I am an expert at this sort of thing  
 and bring along my faithful Asmodeus  
 to sow, when it's the season, seeds of discord—  
 I thus corrupt mankind two units at a time. 5380  
 TISIPHONE. Instead of using slander, I mix poison,  
 sharpen steel, for faithless lovers!  
 Late or soon, if you love others,  
 you'll suffer in a vital organ.  
 Love will prove to be a bubble, 5385  
 ecstasy will turn to gall!  
 Compromise is not allowed,  
 circumstances won't excuse him.  
 Sing no song to me of pardon!  
  
 Rocks hear the charges I recite, 5390  
 and echo—hark!—replies "Requite!"  
 Death to all inconstant lovers!  
 HERALD. Please be so good as to withdraw to either side,  
 for what is coming now is strange and different.  
 You see a mountain pushing toward us 5395  
 whose flanks are proudly hung with brilliant tapestries,  
 and from whose head long tusks and snakelike trunk  
 extend;  
 this seems a mystery, yet I'll give you its key.  
 The woman seated on its neck is delicate,  
 but with that slender wand she makes it do her will; 5400  
 while she who stands in majesty beside her  
 is bathed in dazzling radiance;  
 beside it, wearing chains, there walk two noble ladies,  
 one with a worried air, the other looking cheerful:  
 the former pines for freedom, the latter thinks she's free. 5405  
 Let each now tell us who she is.  
 FEAR. Reeking torches, lamps, and candles  
 dimly light this festive turmoil;  
 here amid deceitful faces  
 I, alas! am bound in chains. 5410  
 Don't come near me, foolish scoffers,  
 smiles like yours cannot be trusted;  
 all my enemies are crowding  
 in about me here tonight.

Here's a friend who's now a foe, 5415  
but I see through the disguise;  
there's someone who meant to kill me  
but sneaks off when recognized.  
Oh, how I would like to flee

to any place far, far away, 5420  
but the threat of death out there  
confines me to this dark, dread place.

HOPE. Ladies, I greet you as sisters!  
Even though, these past two days,  
you've enjoyed these masks and costumes, 5425  
I'm aware that you intend  
to unmask yourselves tomorrow.  
And although we feel uneasy  
here amid these flickering torches,  
sunlit days, we know, are coming 5430  
when we shall, as suits our fancy,  
walk with friends or by ourselves  
through the lovely countryside,  
free to rest or to be active,  
and enjoy a carefree life, 5435  
never lacking what we want.  
Confident we're always welcome,  
we are pleased to join you here:  
the best things in life, I'm certain,  
can be found wherever one is. 5440

PRUDENCE. Two of mankind's greatest scourges,  
Fear and Hope, stand here in fetters,  
kept away from you by me;  
you're all safe, but please stand back!

I am guiding, as you see, 5445  
this live, turreted colossus  
which, despite its heavy burden,  
steepest passes would not daunt.

There, upon its tower's top,  
is a goddess with swift pinions, 5450  
poised for flight to any point  
where advantage may await her,  
enveloped in a cloud of light  
whose brilliance reaches far and wide;

her name is Victory, 5455  
the goddess of all undertakings.

ZOILO-THERSITES.

This is too much! I see I'm just in time  
to tell you what a tawdry lot you are!

My special butt, however, is

Dame Victory up there.

5460

With those white wings she doubtless thinks  
that she's an eagle

and that wherever she may choose to look  
all peoples and all lands belong to her;

I, on the other hand, am quick to wrath  
when I see any deed of glory done.

5465

When I exalt what's base, degrade what's grand,  
put crooked straight, what's straight askew,  
then, and then only, do I feel elated,

for that is how I want things here on earth.

5470

HERALD. In that case, cur, feel how my sacred staff  
can deal a might blow!

Now you will writhe and twist! –

How quickly does the double dwarf

become a loathesome, shapeless mass! –

5475

But what strange thing is this?

The mass becomes an egg that swells and bursts,  
and from it twins emerge,

an adder and a bat;

one crawls off through the dust,

5480

the other, black, flies upward to the roof.

They're hurrying outside for a reunion

in which I would prefer to have no part.

VOICES (*murmuring*).

Come! back there they are already dancing. –

Well! this place is not for me. –

5485

Do you feel those ghastly things  
pressing in about us? –

Something hissed right past my hair. –

I glimpsed something at my feet. –

No one's suffered any harm –

5490

but we all have had a scare. –

What was fun is spoiled completely –

that's what the nasty creatures wanted.

HERALD. Ever since I undertook

to be herald at your pageants,

5495

I have solemnly stood guard,

never yielding, always firm,

to insure that nothing harmful

|                                               |      |
|-----------------------------------------------|------|
| should get in and spoil your revels.          |      |
| But I fear that air-born spirits              | 5500 |
| are now coming through the windows,           |      |
| and I'm helpless to protect you               |      |
| from such ghostly sorcery.                    |      |
| If that dwarf was somewhat doubtful,          |      |
| look back there, see what's now coming!       | 5505 |
| I would like to do my duty                    |      |
| and expound these figures' meaning,           |      |
| but what can't be comprehended,               |      |
| I am helpless to explain                      |      |
| and must ask for your assistance. –           | 5510 |
| See what's swerving through the crowd!        |      |
| A magnificent quadriga                        |      |
| borne along past one and all,                 |      |
| opening no lane or passage,                   |      |
| causing none to push aside!                   | 5515 |
| From afar its colors shimmer,                 |      |
| all about it stars are flashing               |      |
| such as magic lanterns cast,                  |      |
| as it storms and snorts along.                |      |
| Clear the way! I find this awesome!           | 5520 |
| YOUNG CHARIOTEER.                             |      |
| Horses, halt! No longer use your wings,       |      |
| heed the customary bridle,                    |      |
| curb yourselves if I now curb you,            |      |
| when I urge you, speed away –                 |      |
| for we must respect these halls!              | 5525 |
|                                               |      |
| See the circles growing larger                |      |
| as admirers gather round us.                  |      |
| Herald, come! continue custom                 |      |
| and, before we rush away,                     |      |
| draw our picture, tell our names—             | 5530 |
| after all, we're allegories,                  |      |
| and you therefore ought to know us.           |      |
| HERALD. I can't guess what your name is,      |      |
| though I might be able to describe you.       |      |
| CHARIOTEER. Try to do so then.                |      |
| HERALD. To start,                             | 5535 |
| I'll concede you're young and handsome.       |      |
| You are an adolescent still; a woman, though, |      |
| would rather have you fully grown.            |      |
| I see in you a future ladies' man,            |      |

and of the kind that breaks a lot of hearts. 5540

CHARIOTEER. All well and good! Go on like that,  
and formulate some more of this amusing riddle.

HERALD. I see black lightning in your eyes, and night-dark hair  
enlivened by a ribbon set with jewels. 5545

And what a graceful robe cascades  
with purple hem and glittering baubles  
down from your shoulders to your slippers!  
You might be called effeminate,  
but if, for better or for worse, 5550

you tried your luck with girls right now,  
they'd help you learn the ABC.

CHARIOTEER. And what about this splendid figure  
so proudly seated on my chariot's throne?

HERALD. He seems to be a rich and kindly king  
whose favor would ensure prosperity. 5555

He looks not for new realms to conquer,  
but to discover where there's want,  
and the pure joy he takes in giving  
outweighs all the delights of ownership.

CHARIOTEER. It will not do to stop with these remarks, 5560

you must describe him properly.

HERALD. There's no describing innate worth.  
But I'll go on: a face that glows with health,  
an ample mouth, well-rounded cheeks,  
show proudly forth beneath a jeweled turban; 5565

his pleated gown is rich, not gaudy,  
worn with decorum that I hardly need describe.  
I recognize in him one born to rule.

CHARIOTEER. His name is Plutus! He, the god of wealth,  
is here arrived in regal state, 5570

a guest your noble Emperor has wanted.

HERALD. But tell us, also, what you are and do!

CHARIOTEER. I am that spendthrift, poetry;  
as poet, I augment my worth  
by squandering my very substance. 5575

I, too, am rich beyond all measures  
and count myself the peer of Plutus,  
add life and beauty to his revels,  
and give you what he can't bestow.

HERALD. You brag quite gracefully, 5580

but we would like a demonstration of your skill.

CHARIOTEER. Watch! I but snap my fingers, and at once



bright, glittering lights surround our chariot.  
 Now see a string of pearls appear! 5585  
*(He continues to snap his fingers in various directions.)*  
 Accept these golden clasps for neck and ear,  
 these flawless combs and coronets,  
 these rings set with the rarest jewels;  
 I also, now and then, distribute tiny flames  
 in hope that some of them may start a blaze, a fire. 5590  
 HERALD. How these good people reach and grab—  
 the giver's almost helpless in this crowd!  
 He flips gems with fantastic skill,  
 and the whole crowd is grabbing for them.  
 But now I see there are new tricks:  
 no matter what a person clutches, 5595  
 it proves to be a sorry prize—  
 his gift takes wing and flies away;  
 the string of pearls breaks in his hand  
 and he's left holding wriggling beetles,  
 and when, poor dupe, he shakes them off, 5600  
 they start to buzz about his head;  
 others, instead of things with worth,  
 catch only wanton butterflies.  
 For all his promises, the rogue  
 bestows as gold what merely glitters. 5605  
 CHARIOTEER. I see that you describe all costumes well,  
 but it is not a herald's courtly duty  
 to fathom what may lie beneath their surface—  
 for that a keener eye is needed.  
 But I have no desire for disputes, 5610  
 and will address, my lord, to you my questions.  
*(He turns to PLUTUS.)*  
 Did you not put into my charge  
 this wind-swift team of four?  
 Do I not guide them as you wish?  
 Am I not always where you want me? 5615  
 Have I not boldly soared aloft  
 to win you palms of victory?  
 Whenever I have fought on your behalf,  
 success has always crowned my striving,  
 and if your brows are graced with laurels, 5620  
 were they not woven by my thoughtful hand?  
 PLUTUS. If you need a good character from me,  
 I gladly say, you are the essence of my spirit.  
 You always act the way I'd wish to act,  
 your treasury contains more gold than mine. 5625

Of all the crowns I can bestow,  
 I value most the laurels that your service merits.  
 To all I testify as gospel truth:  
 with you, dear son, I am well pleased.  
 CHARIOTEER (*addressing the assemblage*). 5630  
 See how I've scattered all about  
 the greatest gifts I can bestow.  
 Above the heads of some among you  
 there glows a spark that I ignited;  
 it skips along from head to head,  
 pausing on some, but not at all on others, 5635  
 and only now and then, as short-lived flame,  
 rapidly bursting into incandescence;  
 but even before most people know of its existence,  
 the feeble spark, alas, has been extinguished.  
 WOMEN (*chattering*).  
 That fellow on the chariot 5640  
 is certainly some charlatan,  
 for, perched behind there sits the Fool,  
 who's even more emaciated  
 than he has ever looked before—  
 so fleshless he'd not feel a pinch, I think. 5645  
 THE STARVELING.  
 Don't lay your hands on me, disgusting females!  
 I know you never like to see me. –  
 When women managed their own homes,  
 my name was still Dame Avarice;  
 our households thrive while the rule held: 5650  
 acquire much, let nothing be discarded!  
 I strove to keep our chests and cupboards filled,  
 a virtue some then called a vice.  
 But now that women, some years since,  
 became unused to penny-pinching 5655  
 and, like delinquent debtors anywhere,  
 have far more wants than they have money,  
 their husbands have a lot to suffer  
 and see debts everywhere they look.  
 Whatever they can earn by spinning 5660  
 goes on their backs or to their lovers,  
 and with their armies of admirers  
 they eat and drink more lavishly as well.  
 This makes me fonder still of gold,  
 so now I am Sir Greed, and masculine. 5665  
 LEADER OF THE WOMEN.

Let's leave this stingy devil to the stingy!  
 In any case, he's nothing but a liar  
 who wants to get our husbands all worked up,  
 although they're troublesome enough already.

THE WOMEN (*all together*). 5670  
 The scarecrow! Slap his mouth! How can a servant,  
 and just a drudge at that, dare threaten us?  
 As if his ugly face could scare us!  
 Those dragon-steeds are only wood and paper;  
 come on, let's up and at him!

HERALD. Now, by my staff, be quiet! – 5675  
 But there is hardly any need of my assistance:  
 see how those fearful monsters come to life  
 and, spreading double pairs of wings,  
 quickly force people to draw back.  
 Enraged, the dragons shake their scaly jaws 5680  
 and spew forth fire; the crowd now flies,  
 there is an open space.  
 (PLUTUS *alights from the chariot*.)  
 Now he steps down with regal ease.  
 He gives a sign; the dragons get to work,  
 lift from their chariot the chest of gold, 5685  
 bear it with Greed still crouching on it,  
 and set it down there at his feet—  
 a miracle has been performed!

PLUTUS (*to his* CHARIOTEER).  
 Now that you're rid of what encumbered you,  
 are wholly free, be off to your own realm! 5690  
 It is not here, amid this wild confusion  
 of motley and grotesque inventions.  
 Away to clarity perceived with clarity,  
 to where you owe allegiance to yourself,  
 where beauty and goodness alone afford delight— 5695  
 to solitude! Create your own world there.

CHARIOTEER. I shall regard myself as your proud emissary,  
 still love you as my next of kin.  
 Where you abide, there is abundance,  
 and where I am, all men feel rich, 5700  
 although, perplexed by life, they often wonder  
 if they should consecrate themselves to you, or me.  
 Your votaries may live in idleness,  
 but those who follow me can never rest.

|                                                             |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| My deeds are not performed in secrecy—                      | 5705 |
| if I but breathe a thought, I am betrayed.                  |      |
| And so, farewell! I know you wish me happiness,             |      |
| yet I'll return at once if you but whisper for me.          |      |
| <i>[Exit, with chariot.]</i>                                |      |
| PLUTUS. It's time to free our treasures from their fetters! |      |
| I take the Herald's staff and smite the locks.              | 5710 |
| The chest flies open. Look! See how, blood-red,             |      |
| in brazen pots, gold surges up,                             |      |
| beside it choicest chains and rings and crowns,             |      |
| and threatens to engulf and melt them.                      |      |
| THE CROWD ( <i>exclaiming in turn</i> ).                    |      |
| Look and see how it's running over,                         | 5715 |
| filling the chest up to the rim. –                          |      |
| Vessels of gold are being melted,                           |      |
| golden rouleaus are tossed about. –                         |      |
| As if just minted, ducats dance                             |      |
| and make my heart begin to leap –                           | 5720 |
| to see all I have ever wanted                               |      |
| rolling now along the floor! –                              |      |
| They are a gift, accept it promptly,                        |      |
| by stooping down you'll soon be rich. –                     |      |
| Let us be nimble and make off,                              | 5725 |
| lightning-quick, with the chest itself!                     |      |
| HERALD. What is the meaning of this madness?                |      |
| These things are only make-believe.                         |      |
| No more such greediness tonight!                            |      |
| Do you believe it's gold you're getting?                    | 5730 |
| For you, and at a masquerade,                               |      |
| tin counters would be far too good.                         |      |
| You louts who right off want a pretty show                  |      |
| to be the truth of coarse reality!                          |      |
| What's truth to you who try to grab                         | 5735 |
| hollow illusions randomly? –                                |      |
| Masked Plutus, hero of this masque,                         |      |
| I beg you, put this mob to rout!                            |      |
| PLUTUS. Your staff, I think, can serve as weapon;           |      |
| lend it to me for a short time. –                           | 5740 |
| I quickly dip it in the seething flames. –                  |      |
| Now, masqueraders, on your guard!                           |      |
| See it flash, explode, and sparkle—                         |      |
| the staff is now a thing of fire!                           |      |

If anyone should crowd too close 5745  
 he'll suffer cruel bumps at once. –  
 I'll start my circuit now.

THE CROWD (*pushing and exclaiming*).  
 What pain! We're done for now. –  
 Escape if you are able to! –  
 Move back, move back, you in the rear! – 5750  
 Hot sparks are spurting in my face. –  
 I'm crushed beneath the burning staff-  
 we're lost and done for, one and all. –  
 Don't crowd us so, you masqueraders,  
 move back, move back, you senseless mob! – 5755

If I had wings, I'd leave by air.—

PLUTUS. The circle now has been pushed back,  
 with no one scorched, I do believe.  
 The crowd retreats,  
 fear did the job. – 5760  
 To guarantee this order is maintained,  
 I'll draw a ring that none can see.

HERALD. What you have done is marvelous—  
 I'm much obliged to your sagacity!

PLUTUS. More patience will be needed, noble friend, 5765  
 for more disorder's still to come.

SIR GREED. At last one can, if he so wishes,  
 survey with pleasure this assemblage,  
 since women always are out front  
 when there is something good to see or eat. 5770  
 I'm not so far gone yet as not to find  
 a pretty woman beautiful,  
 and since the entertainment's free today,  
 there's nothing to prevent my picking up a girl.  
 Still, in a place so overcrowded, 5775  
 my words cannot be heard by all,  
 I'll take a prudent course, and hope I can succeed  
 in being pantomimically explicit.

My purpose can't be served by gesture, hand, or foot,  
 so I shall have to try a prank. 5780  
 Gold can be converted into anything,  
 and so I'll use this metal just like clay.

HERALD. What is our thin fool up to now!  
 Can he be both a hunger artist and a comic?  
 He's kneading all the gold into a dough 5785  
 that in his hands becomes quite slack

and stays a shapeless mass  
 no matter how he molds or pummels it.  
 He's turning toward those women there,  
 who scream and try to get away 5790  
 and act as if they all were much disgusted;  
 our clown turns out to be a mischief-maker,  
 and one of those, I fear, who think it fun  
 to cause offense to decency.  
 I cannot countenance such conduct— 5795  
 give me my staff, and I'll expel him.

PLUTUS. You need not interrupt his nonsense!  
 He's unaware there is a menace in the offing  
 that won't leave space for his buffoonery—  
 compulsion has more force than preachment. 5800

VOICES (*noisily singing*).  
 What now arrives is the Wild Hunt,  
 advancing irresistibly  
 from mountain height and wooded vale:  
 all celebrate their great god Pan.  
 In on a secret none here shares, 5805  
 they'll throng into this empty ring.

PLUTUS. I know you well, and Great Pan too—  
 together you are undertaking something daring!  
 Knowing the secret only some few share,  
 with due respect I open this closed circle. 5810

[Aside.] May a propitious fate attend them!  
 What is to come could well seem strange;  
 they do not know for what they're headed,  
 they've not thought to prepare for what might happen. 5815

WILD MEN (*singing*). 5815  
 O you bedizened tinsel crowd,  
 see coarse and savage people come  
 who leaping high and running fast  
 now enter with a vigorous stride.

FAUNS. We are the fauns  
 of carefree dance 5820  
 and oakleaf wreaths  
 in tousled hair!  
 Delicate ears with pointed tips  
 protrude from every curly head;  
 though nose be flat and face be broad, 5825  
 the ladies won't take that amiss:  
 when dancing fauns put out their paws,  
 even the fairest won't say no.

SATYR. A satyr dances in behind

|                                                    |      |
|----------------------------------------------------|------|
| with foot of goat and fleshless leg                | 5830 |
| that must be thin and sinewy—                      |      |
| perched chamois-like on mountain peaks,            |      |
| he's entertained by looking round about.           |      |
| Invigorated in the air of freedom,                 |      |
| he jeers at woman, child, and man                  | 5835 |
| who down below in smoggy valleys                   |      |
| fondly believe they too exist,                     |      |
| and knows that he alone possesses                  |      |
| the world so calm and pure up there.               |      |
| GNOMES. These little people take short steps       | 5840 |
| and do not like to march by pairs;                 |      |
| in moss-green smock, with lighted lamp,            |      |
| each busy with his own concerns,                   |      |
| they hurry helter-skelter past                     |      |
| like teeming swarms of fireflies                   | 5845 |
| and scurry back and forth like ants                |      |
| who're busy everywhere at once.                    |      |
| Near relatives of the kind brownies,               |      |
| we're barber-surgeons to the rocks;                |      |
| we bleed high mountains,                           | 5850 |
| tap their full veins,                              |      |
| and, confident our luck will hold,                 |      |
| accumulate a store of metals.                      |      |
| We do this with the best intentions—               |      |
| we like to help men of good will.                  | 5855 |
| Although the gold we bring to light                |      |
| is used for pandering and theft                    |      |
| and to provide the steel the arrogant require      |      |
| who have invented universal killing,               |      |
| and though whoever breaks these three Commandments | 5860 |
| will pay no heed to all the rest,                  |      |
| we aren't responsible for that;                    |      |
| therefore remain, like us, forbearing.             |      |
| MEN OF GREAT STATURE.                              |      |
| Wild Men is what they call these figures           |      |
| who, in the Harz, have local fame;                 | 5865 |
| naked and strong, as nature made them,             |      |
| they come, gigantic one and all,                   |      |
| with a pine club in their right hand               |      |
| and wear as padded belt about their loins          |      |
| an apron coarsely made of leafy boughs—            | 5870 |
| guardsmen quite different from the Pope's!         |      |
| NYMPS ( <i>in chorus, encircling PAN</i> ).        |      |

Now he arrives,  
the great god Pan  
who represents  
the cosmic All!

Let all who dance about him here  
be light of foot and blithe of heart;  
although he's dour, he's also kind,  
and so he wants us to be merry.  
Outdoors beneath a vault of blue

he also tries to be alert,  
but when he hears the murmuring brooks  
he's lulled to sleep by gentle breezes.  
And when his sleep comes at high noon,  
no leaf will stir on any branch;

the silent air, now motionless,  
grows heavy with the scent of herbs;  
and nymphs no longer may be lively,  
but fall asleep right where they've stood.  
Yet when with violent suddenness

Pan's voice is heard, a cry as loud  
as thunder-roll and ocean roar,  
uncertainty reigns everywhere:  
brave battle lines become a rout  
amid which even heroes tremble.

All honor, then, where honor's due,  
and hail to him who's brought us here!  
DEPUTATION OF GNOMES (*addressing PAN*).

While metallic strands of wealth  
glitter in their rocky fissures  
and divining rods alone 5900

trace their labyrinthine courses,  
we, as troglodytes, shall build  
vaulted homes in somber caverns,  
and, where bright pure breezes blow,  
you'll bestow largesse of treasure. 5905

Now, however, here beside us  
we have found a wondrous fountain  
which should provide with little effort  
wealth hardly to be had before.

Its perfecting needs your help; 5910  
Sire, be its guardian:  
any treasure you control  
serves the welfare of mankind.



PLUTUS (*to the HERALD*).

We must maintain complete composure  
and, come what may, not intervene. 5915

I know you've always shown the greatest courage,  
but what's about to happen will seem utter horror;  
since chroniclers will stubbornly deny its truth,  
record it faithfully in your report.

HERALD (*laying hold of his staff, which PLUTUS does not  
relinquish*).

Slowly, the gnomes conduct Great Pan  
towards the fountainhead of fire; 5920

it surges up from its abyss,  
then sinks again down to the bottom,  
and only gaping darkness shows;  
again it wells up, glowing, seething, 5925  
Great Pan stands dauntless and enjoys  
the strange and wondrous sight,  
and iridescent bubbles spray about.

How can he trust such goings-on—  
he's bending low to look inside! – 5930  
Why, now his beard is falling off! –  
To whom can the smooth-shaven chin belong  
that's hidden by his hand?

A great disaster now ensues:  
his beard bursts into flame and, flying back, 5935  
sets fire to his crown, his hair, his torso,  
and merriment turns into agony. –

The members of his crew rush to his aid,  
but none of them escapes the flames,  
and efforts to beat down the fire 5940  
only ignite still further flames;  
trapped in this sea of fire,  
all of this group of masqueraders bum to death.

But what is this I hear reported  
and spread by mouth from ear to ear! 5945

O evermore ill-fated night,  
what hurt and grief you've caused us!  
Tomorrow will proclaim abroad  
tidings no one will want to hear;  
but what I hear cried everywhere, 5950  
is that the Emperor's a victim too.

If only something else were true!  
 The Emperor and all with him on fire!  
 A curse on them who led him so astray,  
 who strapped themselves in boughs of resin 5955  
 to bellow songs and in their frenzy  
 produce this universal ruin!  
 O youth, when will you ever learn  
 to moderate exuberance?  
 O princes, will you never be 5960  
 as sensible as you are sovereign?  
 Our forest has caught fire now,  
 and tongues of pointed flame  
 strive toward the rafters of the coffered ceiling  
  
 and threaten us with conflagration. 5965  
 Our cup of misery is overflowing,  
 I can't imagine who might save us.  
 Tomorrow this imperial magnificence  
 will be the ash-heap of one night.  
 PLUTUS. There has been sufficient panic; 5970  
 let relief now be provided! –  
 Sacred staff, smite with such might  
 that this floor will shake and echo!  
 Airy spaces of this room,  
 quickly fill with fragrant coolness! 5975  
 Wisps of fog, rain-bearing mists,  
 come and hover all about,  
 hide this fiery confusion!  
 Cloudlets, trickle, murmur, whirl,  
 billow softly, gently dampen, 5980  
 fight the flames, put out all fires,  
 and as soothing rain and moisture  
 change the futile glow of fire  
 into harmless summer lightning! –  
 When demonic forces threaten, 5985  
 magic must come to our aid.

---

#### A GARDEN

*Morning sunlight. The EMPEROR, with COURTIERs; before him kneel FAUST  
 and MEPHISTOPHELES, both soberly dressed in proper court costumes.*

FAUST. Do you forgive our fiery illusion, Sire?

EMPEROR (*gesturing to him and MEPHISTOPHELES to rise*).

I'll welcome many more such entertainments. –  
 There I was suddenly inside a realm of fire—  
 almost like Pluto, was what came to mind— 5990  
 and saw a floor of coal-black rock  
 that glowed with tiny flares. From various abysses  
 myriads of savage flames swirled up  
 and merged as one to form a vault of fire  
 whose lofty cupola, the tongues of all these flames, 5995  
 was always taking shapes that never stayed the same.  
 In this vast space I saw my peoples, in long lines,  
 move past its twisted fiery pillars;  
 from every compass point they crowded toward me  
 to do me homage in their usual ways. 6000  
 I recognized some members of my court among them,  
 and fancied I was lord of countless salamanders.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. You are that, Sire, for every element  
 acknowledges imperial supremacy.  
 You now have proof that fire is your servant; 6005  
 but should you plunge into the wildest sea,  
 the moment that you tread its pearl-strewn floor  
 its billows will enclose you in a splendid sphere,  
 and you'll see waves, light green and purple-edged,  
 unite to build a glorious mansion 6010  
 whose center you will be. Move where you will,  
 these halls will follow step by step.  
 Their very walls will teem with life  
 that darts about and surges to and fro.  
 Sea monsters will crowd toward the new, soft light, 6015  
 lunge at your sphere, but never enter it.  
 Gold-scaled and colorful, sea dragons frolic here,  
 and though the shark may gape, its jaws will make you  
 laugh.  
 However proud your present court may be,  
 you've never seen such crowds as these. 6020  
 Nor will you lack what's always loveliest:  
 their curiosity will bring the Nereids—  
 the youngest shy yet, eager to be baited,  
 their elders shrewd—to see the sumptuous dwelling here  
 in this eternal freshness. Thetis hears the news 6025  
 and grants her person to a second Peleus. –  
 If, next, you choose to sit on Mount Olympus ...  
 EMPEROR. You need not bother with ethereal regions—  
 the throne up there is all too soon ascended.  
 MEPHISTO. As for this earth, you are its sovereign now! 6030

EMPEROR. What happy chance has brought you straight to us  
from the Arabian Nights?  
If you can match Scheherazade's fertile mind,  
I promise you the highest favors I can grant.  
Always be ready when, as often happens, 6035  
I find this routine world unbearable.

*Enter LORD STEWARD, hastily.*

STEWARD. Your Highness, never in my life  
did I expect I would announce  
this splendid news, which fills me with such great delight  
that, in your presence, I am still in transports: 6040  
all our accounts are settled,  
the claws of usury have been appeased,  
I'm rid of those infernal torments;  
in paradise things can't be looking brighter.

GRAND-MASTER (*following quickly*).

We've started to pay off what's owed the mercenaries, 6045  
our troops have all signed up again,  
the lansquenets feel like new men,  
and wench and landlord prosper.

EMPEROR. How easily you breathe today!  
How cheerful have become your furrowed faces! 6050  
How briskly you approach the throne!

INTENDANT (*entering as the EMPEROR speaks, and indicating FAUST and  
MEPHISTOPHELES*). Ask these, who did it, how this came about.

FAUST. Rightly, the Chancellor should give the explanation.

CHANCELLOR (*arriving slowly*).

Who, in old age, can be carefree at last. –  
Now hear, and see, the fateful document 6055  
that has transformed all grief into contentment.

(*Reading.*) "To whom it may concern, be by these presents  
known,  
this note is legal tender for one thousand crowns  
and is secured by the immense reserves of wealth  
safely stored underground in our Imperial States. 6060  
It is provided that, as soon as it be raised,  
said treasure shall redeem this note."

EMPEROR. There's been some great and criminal fraud, I fear.  
Who forged the Emperor's signature to this?  
Does this crime still remain unpunished? 6065

INTENDANT. Don't you recall, only last night  
you signed your name yourself? You were Great Pan;  
the Chancellor came up with us to you, and said:

“Allow yourself the culminating festive pleasure— 6070  
 salvation for your peoples—with a few strokes of the pen.”  
 You signed, and then before the night was over  
 quick conjurors made copies by the thousands.  
 To guarantee that all may share this blessing,  
 at the same time we placed your name on a whole series;  
 thus tens and thirties, fifties, hundreds too are ready. 6075  
 You can’t imagine how this pleased your subjects.  
 See how the town, so long half-dead and mildewed,  
 is full of life and teems with pleasure seekers!  
 Although your name has long been much beloved,  
 never before has it been viewed with such affection. 6080  
 The alphabet is really now superfluous,  
 for in this sign all men can find salvation.  
 EMPEROR. And people value this the same as honest gold?  
 The court and army take it as full pay?  
 Much as I find it strange, I see I must accept it. 6085  
 LORD STEWARD. There is no way these bills can be recaptured;  
 they fled with lightning speed and are dispersed.  
 The money changers’ shops are all wide open;  
 there every note is honored and exchanged—  
 at discount, to be sure—for gold and silver coin 6090  
 which soon gets to the butcher’s, baker’s, and the  
 dramshop;  
 half the world seems obsessed with eating well,  
 the other half with showing off new clothes.  
 The drapers cut their cloth, the tailors sew.  
 Wine flows in taverns where your Majesty is toasted 6095  
 as food is boiled and fried, and dishes make a clatter.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. If you should walk about these grounds all by yourself,  
 you’d soon espy a lovely lady, dressed to kill  
 and peeking from behind a splendid peacock fan;  
 she’ll smile at you and look to see if you’ve these notes, 6100  
 which will procure love’s richest favors  
 far quicker than can wit or eloquence.  
 You do not need to fuss with pouch or purse;  
 a note tucked in your bosom is no burden  
 and fits together nicely with a billet doux. 6105  
 The pious priest can put one in his breviary,  
 and so that they can move more swiftly,  
 soldiers will hasten to reduce the weight around their  
 waists.  
 I hope your Majesty will pardon if I seem  
 to minimize the value of this vast achievement. 6110

FAUST. The overplus of wealth that lies, lethargic,  
deep in the soil beneath your territories,  
still waits to be exploited. But no mind  
is vast enough to grasp these treasures' full extent;  
imagination in its loftiest flight may strain, 6115  
but cannot ever do them feeble justice.  
Yet minds that can look deep will have  
the vast assurance that vast undertakings need.

MEPHISTOPHELES. These notes, when used in lieu of gold and  
pearls,  
are handy, too; you know right off how much you own 6120  
and can, without first bargaining or haggling,  
enjoy the full delights of love and wine.  
If metal's wanted, there are money-changers,  
and if they're short, you go and dig a while;

the golden cups and chains can then be sold at auction, 6125  
and prompt redemption of these shares  
confounds all sceptics who might mock us.

Once used to this, no one will want another system,  
and from now on all your imperial states  
will thus be well supplied with jewels, gold, and paper. 6130

EMPEROR [*addressing* FAUST *and the* INTENDANT OF THE TREASURY].

Our nation owes its great prosperity to you;  
your services deserve commensurate reward.  
To you we now entrust the subsoil of our empire,  
who most deserve to be its treasurers' guardians.  
You know their full extent and where they're safely kept, 6135  
and any digging shall be done as you direct.  
Collaborate, you masters of our treasury,  
enjoy the honors of your office,  
that joins together in one happy union  
the upper and the nether worlds. 6140

INTENDANT. Between us there shall never be the slightest  
discord;

I welcome the magician as my colleague. [Exit, with  
FAUST.

EMPEROR. I'll now distribute gifts to all my suite,  
but each must say what use you'll put it to.

FIRST PAGE (*eagerly*). High spirits and a merry life for me! 6145

SECOND PAGE (*likewise*). I'll buy my girl a necklace and some  
rings.

FIRST CHAMBERLAIN (*politely*).

The wines I drink will now be twice as good

SECOND CHAMBERLAIN (*likewise*).

The dice have started dancing in my purse.

FIRST BANNERET (*thoughtfully*).

My lands and castle shall be freed of debt.

SECOND BANNERET (*likewise*).

It's wealth to place with other things of value. 6150

EMPEROR. I hoped you'd be inspired to new ventures,

but you are no surprise to one who knows you.

This marvelous prosperity, I see,

leaves you exactly what you were before.

COURT FOOL (*entering*).

Since you're dispensing presents, don't exclude me! 6155

EMPEROR. If you've come back to life, they'll only go for drink.

FOOL. I don't quite understand these printed charms.

EMPEROR. I don't doubt that! You'll never grasp their proper use.

FOOL. Some dropped; should I do anything about them?

EMPEROR. They fell your way, so you may take them. (*Exit.*)

FOOL. Five thousand crowns! Is that what I am holding?

MEPHISTOPHELES. Wineskin on legs, have you been resurrected?

FOOL. Many a time, but never with such profit.

MEPHISTOPHELES. You're sweating with excited happiness!

FOOL. Is what I'm showing you the same as money? 6165

MEPHISTOPHELES. It will supply your gut's and gullet's wants.

FOOL. And can I buy some land, a house, and cattle?

MEPHISTOPHELES. Of course! Offer enough and they'll be yours.

FOOL. A castle, too, with woods, a chase, and fishing?

MEPHISTOPHELES. I'd give a lot to see you as a country squire!

6170

FOOL. Tonight I'll dream of my estates.

(*Exit.*)

MEPHISTOPHELES (*solus*). Who still can doubt our Fool has wit!

---

## A DARK GALLERY

*Enter* FAUST *and* MEPHISTOPHELES.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Why have you dragged me to this dreary hallway?

Isn't it lively enough for you in there?

Doesn't the brilliant, crowded court provide

plenty of scope for entertaining tricks of magic? 6175

FAUST. Spare me such talk! In the old days

you used to wear your shoes out in my service,

but now you only rush about  
 in order to evade my orders. 6180  
 But I'm now under pressure to perform,  
 urged by the Steward and the Chamberlain.  
 The Emperor wants to see, and will brook no delay,  
 Helen of Troy and Paris here before him,  
 and gaze upon clear counterfeits 6185  
 of those two paragons of male and female beauty.  
 Quick, get to work! I must not break my word.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. You were a fool to make a thoughtless  
 promise.  
 FAUST. You are the one, my friend, who didn't think  
 to what your cleverness would bring us; 6190  
 now that we've made him rich,  
 we are expected to amuse him.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. You think such things can be arranged  
 offhand;  
 we're here confronted with a steeper flight of stairs,  
 and you are meddling in an alien sphere; 6195  
 you'll end up with worse debts than ever,  
 if you believe that Helen can be conjured up  
 as easily as phantom money. –  
 At any time I can supply an ugly witch,  
 a spectral ghost, a changeling dwarf, 6200  
 but devils' good wives, though they have their merits,  
 can't be palmed off as heroines.  
 FAUST. Now you are grinding out that same old tune!  
 With you one always finds that nothing's certain.  
 You are the father of all stumbling blocks 6205  
  
 and want a new reward for any means you offer.  
 Some murmured words, I know, will do the trick,  
 and you'll have brought them here before I've turned to  
 look.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. Pagans are none of my affair—  
 they live in their own special hell. 6210  
 Yet there's a means ...  
 FAUST. Then tell me, and be quick!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. You force me to reveal a higher mystery. –  
 Majestic goddesses enthroned in solitude  
 apart from space, outside of time—  
 to speak of them I find embarrassing— 6215  
 these are the Mothers!



FAUST (*startled*). Mothers!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. What? Afraid?  
 FAUST. The Mothers! "Mothers" sounds so strange!  
 MEPHISTO. And strange they are. No mortal knows these  
 goddesses,  
 whom even we are loath to name.  
 You'll have to plumb the lowest depths to find their home, 6220  
 but it's your fault we need their help.  
 FAUST. And what way must I go?  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. No way at all!  
 To where no one has trod, where none may ever tread,  
 and where no prayer is heard or answered. Are you  
 willing? –  
 Although you won't have locks or bolts to open, 6225  
 you'll have to bear the buffetings of solitude.  
 Is dreary solitude a thought that you can grasp?  
 FAUST. You might, I think, be less verbose!  
  
 All this recalls the Witch's kitchen  
 and smacks of times now long since past. – 6230  
 Was I not forced to live among mankind,  
 to study empty nothings and to teach them too?  
 If I spoke sense and what seemed sense to me,  
 the voice of contradiction shouted twice as loud;  
 indeed, it was to get away from my opponents' blows 6235  
 that I withdrew to dreary solitude  
 and, not to live neglected and alone,  
 then put myself into the devil's hands.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. Although you swam across the ocean  
 and there beheld what's limitless, 6240  
 you still would see wave follow wave  
 even as death inspired you with terror;  
 you'd still see something—dolphins darting  
 in the green spaces of the quiet deep,  
 or scudding clouds, or sun and moon and stars. 6245  
 In ever empty distance you'll see nothing,  
 you will not hear the sound of your own step,  
 will find no solid spot on which to rest.  
 FAUST. You are the father of all mystagogues  
 who ever cheated docile neophytes, 6250  
 but you reverse their method—send me to a void  
 for higher wisdom and for greater powers.  
 You're making me the cat whose task it is

to pull your chestnuts from the fire. 6255  
 But do not stop! Let's probe the matter fully,  
 since in your Nothingness I hope to find my All.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. Before we part, I'll say this to your credit:  
 you know your devil very well.  
 Here, take this key!  
 FAUST. That tiny thing!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. Just grasp it, and remember what it's worth! 6260

FAUST. It's growing in my hand—it shines and flashes!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. You're quick to see that it has special  
 properties!  
 It has an instinct for the place one wants to be;  
 follow its lead down to the Mothers.  
 FAUST (*shuddering*).  
 The Mothers! It's a shock each time I hear their name! 6265  
 What is this word I so dislike to hear?  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. Have you some prejudice against new words?  
 Must you hear only what you've heard before?  
 Nothing you are about to hear should cause dismay  
 to one so long inured to all that's strange. 6270

FAUST. I do not seek salvation in mere apathy—  
 awe is the greatest boon we humans are allotted,  
 and though our world would have us stifle feeling,  
 if we are stirred profoundly, we sense the Infinite.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. Well then, descend! Or, if you wish, ascend— 6275  
 it makes no difference which I say. From finitude  
 escape to realms where forms exist detached,  
 where what has ceased to be can still afford delight.  
 There shapes will crowd and swirl like clouds—  
 brandish your key and keep them at a distance! 6280

FAUST (*with enthusiasm*).  
 I hold it tight and feel new strength, new courage.  
 Let the great enterprise begin!

MEPHISTOPHELES. A glowing tripod, finally, will let you know  
 that you have reached the deepest depth of all,  
 and in the light it sheds you'll see the Mothers. 6285  
 Some will be seated, some will stand or walk—  
 there is no rule—for all is form in transformation,  
 Eternal Mind's eternal entertainment.  
 About them hover images of all that's been created,  
 but you they will not see, for they see only phantoms. 6290

Now summon up your courage—there's great danger—  
and go directly to the tripod,  
and touch it with your key!  
(FAUST, *with the key, strikes an imperious pose as MEPHISTOPHELES*  
*watches.*)

Yes, that's the way! –  
It then will be your faithful follower;  
sustained by your success, you can ascend at leisure, 6295  
be back before they know it's gone.  
As soon as you have brought it here, call forth  
your hero and your heroine from darkness—  
a feat no man has ever dared attempt  
has been performed, and you're the one who's done it. 6300  
Henceforth, if you so will, by magic art  
this cloud of incense can be changed to gods.

FAUST. What happens now?

MEPHISTOPHELES. Direct your strivings downward;  
to sink you stamp your foot, to rise you stamp again.  
(FAUST *stamps his foot and sinks out of sight.*)

The key, I hope, will serve him well— 6305  
I'm curious to see if he'll return!

---

### BRIGHTLY LIT ROOMS

EMPEROR *and* PRINCES, *with* COURTIERs; *there is much coming and going.*  
A CHAMBERLAIN (*to* MEPHISTOPHELES).

We still are waiting for the phantom scene you owe us;  
our master is impatient, so get started!

LORD STEWARD.

His Highness asked just now about it;  
do not embarrass him by more delays. 6310

MEPHISTOPHELES. That's why my friend has disappeared,  
he is the expert in these matters;  
in undisturbed seclusion, he is working hard  
at what demands his total concentration;  
the man who would reveal the treasure Beauty

6315

must use that highest art, the magic of the sages.

STEWARD. What arts are used is immaterial—  
the Emperor wants you to be ready now.

A BLONDE (to MEPHISTOPHELES).

A word, kind sir! You see my clear complexion,  
but summertime does nasty things to it; 6320  
that's when a hundred red-brown blemishes appear  
and cover this white skin and vex me.  
I'd like a remedy!

MEPHISTOPHELES. It's sad that beauty so translucent  
should, when May comes, be spotted like a panther cub!  
Take spawn of frogs and tongues of toads, mix well, 6325  
distill this carefully in full-moon light;  
apply, where needed only, as the moon is waning,  
and when spring comes your spots will all be gone.

A BRUNETTE. The crowd that seeks your favors is increasing.  
I beg you for a cure. A chilblained foot 6330  
impairs my walking and my dancing;  
it even makes it hard for me to curtsy.

MEPHISTOPHELES. You'll have to let me press your foot with  
mine.

BRUNETTE. Why, that's the sort of thing that lovers do!

MEPHISTO. A kick from me, my child, means something more important.

*Similia similibus* applies to all disorders;  
as foot cures foot, so does each other member.  
Come close! And mind you don't reciprocate!

BRUNETTE (*screaming*). That hurts! My foot's on fire! It was as if  
a horse's hoof had kicked me hard.

MEPHISTOPHELES. But you are cured. 6340  
Now you can have your fill of dancing  
and press your lover's foot beneath the banquet table.

A LADY (*pushing forward*). Let me get through! I cannot bear  
the burning pains that rack my being; till yesterday  
he searched my eyes in quest of happiness, 6345  
but now he's turned his back and only talks to *her*.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Your case is serious, but follow this advice:  
you must steal softly up to him  
and, with this charcoal, draw a line somewhere  
on his sleeve, cloak, or shoulder; 6350  
his heart will suffer pricks of sweet remorse.  
You must, however, promptly swallow the charcoal,  
letting no wine or water touch your lips,  
and he'll be sighing at your door this very night.

LADY. This isn't harmful?

MEPHISTOPHELES (*indignantly*). Please! You owe me more respect! 6355

To find its like you'd have to go some distance;  
it comes from where we once, when zeal was greater,  
eagerly fanned the flames around the stake.

A PAGE. Though I'm in love, they tell me I am too young.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*aside*).

I hardly know to whom to listen next. 6360

(*To the Page.*). Don't set your heart on someone very young;  
elderly women will appreciate you best.

(*More people crowd in about him.*)

More yet! This gets to be a struggle.

I may end up by having recourse to the truth;  
my plight's so bad, I'll take the worst expedient. – 6365

O Mothers, Mothers, free Faust from your spell!

(*Looking about.*) In the great hall the candles are now dimmer,  
and suddenly the whole Court starts to move.

I see the decorous procession go  
through corridors and distant galleries. 6370

Good! They're assembling in the old Knights' Hall  
that, though it's large, can hardly hold them.

Its spacious walls are richly hung with tapestries,  
its nooks and corners filled with armor.

In such a place, I think, spells are not needed; 6375  
ghosts will come here without an invitation.

---

#### KNIGHTS' HALL

*Dim lighting. The EMPEROR and COURT have already entered.*

HERALD. Mysterious forces of the spirit world prevent  
my usual announcing of the play;  
there's no point trying to explain  
all the confusion in some rational way. 6380

The chairs have been arranged already;  
the Emperor is placed so that he'll face the wall,  
so close that he can contemplate in perfect comfort  
tapestried battles fought in days of glory.

He now is seated, with his court around him 6385  
and crowded benches in the background;  
but even at this time of somber apparitions

love provides room for lovers side by side.  
And now that all have found their proper places,  
our work is finished. Let the ghosts appear! 6390  
*(Trumpets.)*

ASTROLOGER. By royal command the play shall start at once.  
Become an opening, what now is wall!  
When magic operates, all things are easy;  
like jetsam swept by tides, the arras vanishes;  
the wall divides and is reversed, 6395  
creating the effect of a deep stage  
as we seem bathed in some mysterious glow;  
I'll now climb up to its proscenium.

MEPHISTOPHELES *(popping up in the prompter's box)*.  
I trust my being here will be approved by all:  
the devil's eloquence is always *sotto voce*. 6400  
*(To the ASTROLOGER.)*  
As one who knows the tempi of the stars,  
you'll understand my prompting perfectly.

ASTROLOGER. By dint of magic there is here revealed  
the massive structure of an ancient temple.  
Like Atlas, formerly the skies' support, 6405  
its serried rows of columns stand, no doubt sufficient  
to hold the weight of stone they stand beneath,  
since two could well support a mighty edifice.

AN ARCHITECT. They call this Classical! I can't see much to  
praise;  
awkward and cumbersome would be more apt. 6410

What's crude is labeled noble, and what's clumsy, grand.  
Give me slim pillars striving toward infinity,  
ogival zeniths that exalt the spirit;  
these make our edifices uniquely edifying.

ASTROLOGER. Welcome with awe this well-starred hour; 6415  
let Reason be the thrall of Magic,  
and let bold Phantasy appear  
in all her freedom, all her glory.  
See now before your eyes what you have dared to ask for:  
what is impossible, and hence is surely truth! 6420  
*(FAUST climbs on to the proscenium at the opposite side.)*  
Behold the thaumaturge, in priestly robe and wreath,  
who'll now complete his daring enterprise.  
A tripod rises with him from a cavernous hole;  
I think I now smell incense from its bowl.  
He is prepared to consecrate his mighty feat; 6425  
only good fortune can attend him now.

FAUST (*grandiosely*).

In your name, Mothers, who in boundless space  
dwell enthroned in eternal solitude,  
yet sociably. About your heads there hover,  
moving but lifeless, images of living things. 6430  
Resplendent glories, now no more,  
are stirring still, for they would be eternal.  
And you, in your omnipotence, assign them  
to light's pavillion or the vault of darkness.  
Some are caught up in life's propitious course; 6435  
others, the dauntless sorcerer seeks out,  
who generously displays for all to see  
the marvels that their hearts desire.

ASTROLOGER. His glowing key's no sooner touched the bowl  
than smokelike haze obscures the stage, 6440  
first creeping in, then billowing like clouds  
that swell, condense, entwine, divide, and join.  
Heed how the master now controls the spirit-world—  
as the shapes move, the air is filled with music.  
Aerial tones produce a strange effect 6445  
and, as they flow, all is melodious.  
Each column with its triglyphs resonates,  
and the whole temple seems to me to sing.  
The mist subsides; from the thin haze,  
in time with the music, a comely youth steps forth. 6450  
Here I may pause, for there's no need to name him—  
who would not know that this was lovely Paris!

A LADY. He glows with adolescent vigor!

SECOND LADY. As fresh and juicy as a peach!

A THIRD. What finely chiseled, sweetly swollen lips! 6455

A FOURTH. That is a cup you'd surely like to sip from.

A FIFTH. He's quite good-looking, but a bit coarse too.

A SIXTH. He might be just a bit less stiff.

A KNIGHT. I think that I detect the shepherd in him;  
nothing suggests a prince or courtier. 6460

SECOND KNIGHT. Half-naked he's no doubt a handsome boy,  
but we would need to see him wearing armor!

LADY. He's sitting down with almost feminine langour.

KNIGHT. Perhaps you'd feel at home there on his knees?

SECOND LADY. How gracefully he rests his arm upon his head! 6465

CHAMBERLAIN. I think such boorishness cannot be pardoned.

LADY. You gentlemen are always finding fault.

CHAMBERLAIN. To think of lolling in the Emperor's presence!

LADY. He's only acting as if he were all alone.

CHAMBERLAIN. Here, even in a play, we want decorum. 6470

LADY. Now the dear boy is sleeping gently.

CHAMBERLAIN. You'll have full truth to nature when he starts to snore!

YOUNG LADY (*ecstatically*).  
 What perfume's mingling with the incense  
 and bringing cool refreshment to my heart?

AN OLDER LADY. There really emanates from him a gentle  
 breath 6475  
 that deeply stirs my soul!

THE OLDEST LADY. It's youth's ambrosial bloom  
 that in the adolescent is distilled  
 and permeates the air about us.

*Enter HELEN.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. So that is she! She won't make me lose sleep;  
 no doubt she's pretty, but she's not my style. 6480

ASTROLOGER. I see that at this point I am superfluous,  
 and as a man of honor say so frankly.  
 Had I but tongues of fire to sing this beauty,  
 whose loveliness has long been praised!

To see her is to lose all sense of self, 6485  
 to have possessed her, undeserved good fortune.

FAUST. Does some more inward sense than sight perceive  
 the overflowing fountainhead of beauty?  
 My dread ordeal is gloriously rewarded.  
 How circumscribed and empty was my world before! 6490  
 Now, with this priesthood, it at last becomes  
 desirable and has a lasting basis.  
 May I no longer have the power to breathe  
 if I should ever want to live without you! –  
 The lovely form that in the magic mirror 6495  
 once ravished me with such delight  
 was but this beauty's feeble counterfeit. –  
 To you I offer as my homage  
 all my vitality, and passion's essence:  
 devotion, love, idolization, madness. 6500

MEPHISTOPHELES (*from the prompter's box*).  
 Control yourself, and don't forget your part!

AN OLDER LADY.



The head's too small for her good height and figure.

A YOUNGER LADY. Those feet! They hardly could be more ungainly.

A DIPLOMAT. She has a quality I've seen in princesses;  
I find her beautiful from head to toe. 6505

A COURTIER. She's stealing closer to the sleeping figure.

LADY. Beside unsullied youth how odious she looks!

POET. Her beauty casts a radiance upon him.

LADY. A picture of Diana and Endymion!

POET. That's it! The goddess seems about to kneel,  
but then bends forward to drink in his breath;  
enviable fate—a kiss! – His cup is full! 6510

A GOVERNESS. In front of people! Really, that's too much!

FAUST. How awful she should favor such a boy!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Be quiet!

Don't interfere in what the phantom's doing. 6515

COURTIER. She now tiptoes away as he wakes up.

LADY. Just as I thought she would, she's looking back!

COURTIER. He is surprised by the miraculous!

LADY. She's not the least surprised by his reaction.

COURTIER. She turns back toward him with great dignity. 6520

LADY. I see that she intends to be his tutor;  
all men are stupid in such situations,  
and he no doubt thinks too that he's the first.

KNIGHT. Don't carp at elegance and queenly bearing!

LADY. The wanton thing! I call such conduct vulgar. 6525

A PAGE. I wouldn't mind if I could take his place!

COURTIER. Who would object to being in her toils?

LADY. That piece of jewelry's more than second-hand  
and quite a lot of guilt has been worn off it.

SECOND LADY. Since she was ten she's been a good-for-nothing. 6530

KNIGHT. Sometimes you take the best that is available;  
I'd not refuse what's left of such great beauty.

A PEDANT. Although I see her clearly, I'll point out  
that there may be some doubt if she's authentic.  
We're apt to be misled by what's before us, 6535  
and I prefer to trust what's written down.  
There I have read as fact that she found special favor  
with all the elders of the Trojans;  
that fits the case here perfectly, I think;  
I find her pleasing, though I am a graybeard. 6540

ASTROLOGER. No longer boy, a man and hero now,  
he boldly seizes her, scarce able to resist.

On strengthened arm he lifts her high above him—  
is he perhaps abducting her?

FAUST. Rash fool!

How can you dare! Do you not hear? Desist! Enough! 6545

MEPHISTOPHELES. But you're the author of this spectral masque!

ASTROLOGER. One last word! Now that the piece has been  
performed,

I can entitle it: *The Rape of Helen*.

FAUST. A rape indeed! Am I of no importance here?

Does not my hand still hold this key 6550

that brought me back to this firm shore  
through dismal solitudes of rock and sea?

I won't give way! This is reality, and here  
the human spirit can contend with spirit beings  
to win itself a double kingdom. 6555

She was so far away, but now could not be nearer.

Once I have rescued her, she will be doubly mine.

I'll venture all! – This, Mothers, you must grant me!

He who discerns her worth can never live without her.

ASTROLOGER. What are you doing, Faust? – With violent hands 6560

he seizes her; her figure is already less distinct.

His key is pointed toward the young man now,  
it touches him! – Woe to us all! In just a moment ...!

*Explosion. FAUST is seen lying on the floor; the phantom figures dissolve as vapors.*

MEPHISTOPHELES (*hoisting FAUST on his shoulder*).

That's life for you! To be encumbered with a fool  
can't even help the devil in the end. 6565

*Darkness and noisy confusion as the curtain falls.*

---

## ACT II

### A HIGH-VAULTED, NARROW GOTHIC ROOM

*Faust's former study is unchanged. – Enter MEPHISTOPHELES from behind a curtain; as he holds it up and looks back, FAUST is seen lying on an old-fashioned bed.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. Lie there, unhappy victim of a love  
whose bonds it will be hard to break!  
One who is paralyzed by Helen  
won't easily regain his senses.

*(He looks about.)*

Nothing, no matter where I look, 6570

has changed or suffered harm; perhaps

the colored window-panes are more opaque,

the cobwebs certainly have multiplied;

the ink has thickened and the paper yellowed,

but everything is where it was before; 6575

even the pen's still lying here

with which Faust signed his contract with the devil.

In fact, down here inside the quill there's stuck

a drop of blood like that I wheedled out of him;

I would congratulate the connoisseur 6580

who laid his hands on such a piece as this.

The fur-trimmed gown still hangs on its same hook,

reminding me of all the nonsense

I told the student I once counseled;

a young man now, he may still find it food for thought; 6585

I really have an urge, old friend,

to wrap myself again in your moth-eaten warmth

and strut about as a professor

completely confident he's right—

a habit scholars easily acquire, 6590

but one the devil's long since lost.

*Taking down Faust's gown, he shakes it; moths, balm crickets, and beetles  
fly out of its fur.*

INSECTS *(in chorus)*.

We welcome and greet you,

old master of ours.

We buzz and we hover,

we know who you are. 6595

You planted us singly,

in silence, long since;  
as thousands of dancers now,  
father, we're here.  
The rogue in one's bosom  
remains out of sight— 6600  
the lice in a furpiece  
come sooner to light.

MEPHISTOPHELES. What a pleasant surprise these children are!  
You only have to sow, and some day you will reap. 6605  
I'll give the old coat another shake;  
here and there a few more fluttering things emerge. –  
Up and about, you darling creatures! Hurry,  
conceal yourselves in all these countless comers—  
in those old boxes standing there, 6610  
here in this browning manuscript,  
in dusty shards of ancient vessels,  
and in those deathheads' empty eyes.  
Such musty chaos always will be rife  
with real and imaginary maggots. 6615

*(He puts on the gown.)*

Come, cloak my shoulders one more time!  
Today I'll be the Principal again.  
But what's the use of such a title  
when no one's here to pay me due respect?  
*He pulls a bell cord; there is a shrill, penetrating sound that causes the halls to tremble and the door to fly open. – Enter FAMULUS, staggering out of a long, dark corridor.*

FAMULUS. What an awesome sound this is! 6620  
Stairways sway, the walls are shaking;  
through the trembling colored panes  
I see flashing streaks of lightning.  
Floors have cracks, and from above  
dislocated plaster trickles. 6625  
And this door, securely locked,  
by some magic is unbolted. –  
There—o horror!—stands a giant  
wearing Faust's old woolen gown!  
He now sees and beckons me, 6630  
and my knees seem to give way.  
Should I flee? Should I remain?  
Oh, what will become of me!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*beckoning*).

Approach, my friend! – Your name is Nicodemus?

FAMULUS. That is my name, your Reverence—*Oremus*. 6635

MEPHISTOPHELES. We'll skip the prayer!

FAMULUS. I'm pleased you recognize me.

MEPHISTOPHELES. I know the type—the student who keeps on  
until he's middle-aged! But even learned men  
continue studying because of some compulsion.

That's how a shabby house of cards is often started 6640  
which even the best mind cannot complete.

Your master, though, knows all the tricks;  
who has not heard the fame of Doctor Wagner,  
the world of learning's leading luminary now!

He, all alone, keeps it in proper order, 6645  
and constantly extends the realm of wisdom.

Eager for universal knowledge, crowds  
of students and disciples gather round him.  
He is by far the lectern's brightest star

and, like St. Peter, holds the keys 6650  
that open earth's and heaven's locks.

His ardor and brilliance have long since obscured  
all others' fame and reputation;  
even Faust's name has been eclipsed,  
and Wagner is your sole inventor. 6655

FAMULUS. Your Reverence will, I hope, forgive me  
if I now dare to contradict you:  
that's not the way things are at all.

He is a very modest person,  
and never has been reconciled 6660  
to that great man's unfathomed disappearance,  
for whose return he prays in hope of solace.

This room, exactly as it was when Doctor Faust was here,  
and never changed while he has been away,  
awaits its former master; 6665

I hardly dare to venture in.

What stars must now prevail in heaven,  
when walls, I think, do quake with fear?

Yet doorposts did tremble and locks were sprung,  
or you would not be here yourself. 6670

MEPHISTOPHELES. Where has your master sought seclusion?

Lead me to him!—bring him to me!

FAMULUS. Oh, sir! his prohibition is so strict;  
I do not know if I should take the risk.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| For many months, to further his great project,<br>he's worked in deepest secrecy.<br>This frailest of all men of learning<br>looks like a charcoal burner;<br>with blackened cheeks,<br>eyes red from blowing up the fire,<br>he's always breathless with anticipation;<br>the clattering tongs seem music to his ears. | 6675<br><br><br><br><br><br><br>6680 |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. I doubt that he'll refuse to see me;<br>I am the man to hasten his success.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | [Exit FAMULUS.                       |
| MEPHISTOPHELES <i>seats himself in a dignified pose.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                      |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. I scarcely have entrenched myself<br>when a familiar guest is under way back there.<br>This time he comes with a diploma,<br>and so his arrogance will know no limits.                                                                                                                                  | 6685                                 |
| BACCALAUREATE ( <i>storming up the corridor</i> ).<br>Here, I see, the door's wide open!<br>At long last, then, there is hope<br>that the occupant no further<br>will remain, as up to now,<br>in this mildew like a corpse,<br>atrophying, self-destroying,<br>dying of the life he's leading.                         | 6690                                 |
| All these walls, all these partitions,<br>lean and sag, about to fall,<br>and unless we soon retreat,<br>we'll be victims of disaster.<br>I'm as bold as anybody,<br>yet no one will drag me farther.                                                                                                                   | 6695<br><br><br><br>6700             |
| But what's this that I've discovered!<br>It was surely here that I,<br>timid then and ill at ease,<br>came naively years ago,<br>still a freshman trusting graybeards,<br>edified still by their prattle.                                                                                                               | 6705                                 |
| Lies they found in ancient volumes<br>they passed on to me as knowledge<br>not believing it themselves,<br>wasting their own lives and mine.<br>But what's this? Here's one still sitting<br>in his chiaroscuro cell!                                                                                                   | 6710                                 |
| Getting closer, I'm amazed;<br>he's still sitting as I left him,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                      |

|                                                               |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| in the same drab fur-trimmed gown;                            | 6715 |
| I would swear I see no change!                                |      |
| When I didn't understand him yet,                             |      |
| he of course seemed rather clever.                            |      |
| That won't work with me today—                                |      |
| I shall tackle him at once!                                   | 6720 |
| If, ancient sir, your sidewise-bent and hairless head         |      |
| has not already swum through Lethe's turgid waters,           |      |
| behold a grateful student here                                |      |
| who has outgrown the canes of academe.                        |      |
| I find you still as I last saw you,                           | 6725 |
| but I've returned completely changed.                         |      |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. I'm glad my ringing's brought you here.       |      |
| Even back then I saw you had a great potential;               |      |
| the grub, or even the cocoon, presages                        |      |
| that there's some gorgeous butterfly to come.                 | 6730 |
| Your head of curls and your lace collar                       |      |
| afforded you a childlike satisfaction—                        |      |
| I don't believe you even wore a queue?—                       |      |
| But now I see your hair's cropped short.                      |      |
| This makes you look quite resolute and gallant;               | 6735 |
| just don't go home with nothing left up there!                |      |
| BACCALAUREATE. My dear old chap! The place may be the same,   |      |
| but don't forget that times have changed,                     |      |
| and spare us double meanings;                                 |      |
| we're now aware of things we weren't before.                  | 6740 |
| You bantered a naive young fellow,                            |      |
| and got away quite easily with something                      |      |
| that nowadays no one would risk.                              |      |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. If you tell callow youth what they dislike to |      |
| hear,                                                         |      |
| unvarnished truth which afterwards                            | 6745 |
| they learn from years of hard experience                      |      |
| applies to their own persons, in their conceit                |      |
| they then believe it sprang from their own heads              |      |
| and still assert their teacher was dull-witted.               |      |
| BACCALAUREATE. Better, perhaps: dishonest—since what teacher  | 6750 |
| tells us the truth without evasions?                          |      |
| Solemn or animated, as his prudence prompts him,              |      |
| he knows what to omit or add for docile children.             |      |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. There is a time to learn, I think we must     |      |
| admit,                                                        |      |

but you, I see, are now prepared to teach. 6755  
Several suns and still more moons will have sufficed,  
I'm sure, for you to gain experience.

BACCALAUREATE. Experience! Mere froth and fluff—  
no peer of thought, of mind, of spirit!  
Admit that what has up to now been knowledge 6760  
does not deserve that name at all.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*after a pause*).  
I've long suspected that I was a simple soul,  
but now I see how dull a fool I am.

BACCALAUREATE. I'm very pleased to hear so much good sense;  
at last I've found a sensible old man! 6765

MEPHISTOPHELES. I hoped to find some secret store of gold  
and brought back only horrid cinders.

BACCALAUREATE. Be honest, and admit that your bald head  
is worth no more than those skulls over there!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*indulgently*).  
May I assume my friend is unaware he's rude? 6770

BACCALAUREATE. To be polite in German is to lie.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*continually rolling his chair closer to the proscenium  
and addressing the audience*).  
Up here I'm not allowed to see or breathe —  
have you perhaps a place for me down there?

BACCALAUREATE. I think it arrogance, when time gets short  
and you no longer count, to claim that you exist. 6775  
Our lives lie in our blood, and where is circulation  
better than in the blood of those still young?  
Their blood's alive, is fresh and vigorous,  
and from its life creates life that is new.

Then things begin to move, then things get done; 6780  
weakness succumbs, and fitness takes its place. –  
While we have conquered half the universe,  
what have you done but nod and ponder,  
dream and deliberate? Plans, always plans!

Age is indeed an age much augmented 6785  
by the capricious frost of impotence.  
One who has passed the thirtieth year  
already is as good as dead—  
it would be best to kill you off by then.

MEPHISTOPHELES. To this, the devil can but say amen! 6790

BACCALAUREATE. Unless I will it, devils don't exist.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*aside*).  
It won't be long before some devil trips you up.



BACCALAUREATE. The noblest mission is reserved for youth!

There was no world before I bade it be;  
out of the sea I summoned forth the sun; 6795  
with me the moon's inconstant course began;  
then, as I passed, the day put on its finery  
and earth saluted me with greenery and flowers.

At my command, in primal night the stars  
and planets shone in all their splendor. 6800

Who, if not I, delivered you  
from the confinement of Philistine thought?

But I am free! And as the spirit moves me,  
I happily pursue the inward light  
and, in an ecstasy of joy, speed on, 6805  
brightness before me, darkness at my back. [Exit.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Farewell, you pompous ass! – How greatly would  
you be offended if you heard me ask:

can anyone have wise or stupid thoughts  
that ages past have not already thought? – 6810

In any case, we're in no danger here,  
and in a few more years all will have changed;  
the juice may foam absurdly in the barrel;  
but in the end it yields some kind of wine.

(*To the younger members of the audience, who fail to applaud.*)

My dear young friends, I do not take it ill 6815  
that you're left cold by what I say;  
but please remember that the devil's old—  
you must grow old, and then you'll understand him!

---

## LABORATORY

*A medieval alchemist's chamber filled with cumbersome apparatus designed for  
various fantastic purposes.*

WAGNER (*at the hearth*).

The terrifying bell reverberates  
and sends a tremor through these soot-black walls. 6820

The end has come of the uncertainties  
attendant on my solemn hopes.

The shadows have begun to be less dark,  
and in the inmost vial

something is glowing like a living ember 6825

and, like a glorious carbuncle,  
irradiates the darkness with red lightning flashes.

A clear, white light can now be seen!  
If only, this time, I don't lose it! –  
Oh Lord! what is that clatter at the door? 6830

*Enter MEPHISTOPHELES.*

MEPHISTO. Say "Welcome!" since I've come to be of help.

WAGNER (*apprehensively*).

By the prevailing star, be welcome!  
(*In a low voice.*) Don't breathe, don't say a word!  
Something tremendous is just about completed.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*in an even lower voice*).

What's going on?

WAGNER (*in a still lower voice*). A human being's being made. 6835

MEPHISTOPHELES. A human being? And what amorous pair  
have you imprisoned in your flue?

WAGNER. None, God forbid! Old-fashioned procreation  
is something we reject as folly.

The feeble force that was life's starting point, 6840

like the compelling strength that from it sprang  
and took and gave, ordained to shape its own design,  
assimilating first like elements, and then unlike,  
that force is now divested of all rights and privileges;  
the beasts may still enjoy that sort of thing, 6845  
but human beings, with their splendid talents,  
must henceforth have a higher, nobler source.

*(He turns to the hearth.)*

Look there, a flash! – We now can really hope:  
if we compound the human substance  
by mixing many hundred substances

6850

—the mixture is what matters—carefully  
and seal it tight with clay in a retort,  
then re-distill it properly,  
our secret labors will be finished.

*(As before.)*

It works! The moving mass grows clearer, 6855

and my conviction the more certain:  
what's been extolled as Nature's mystery  
can be investigated, if but Reason dare,  
and what she used to let be just organic  
we can produce by crystallizing. 6860

MEPHISTOPHELES. One who lives long will have seen much,  
and nothing here on earth is ever new for him.

When I was still a journeyman

I met some mortals who seemed crystallized.  
WAGNER (*who has continued to watch the vial attentively*). 6865  
It's rising, flashing, piling up—  
another moment and it's done!  
A grand design may seem insane at first;  
but in the future chance will seem absurd,  
and such a brain as this, intended for great thoughts,  
will in its turn create a thinker too. 6870  
(*He contemplates the vial delightedly.*)  
I hear a strong but pleasing sound; the glass vibrates,  
clouds up, then clears—success is certain!  
I see a pretty mannikin  
who's making dainty gestures.  
What more can we or can the world demand 6875  
now that the mystery has been revealed?  
Listen! The sound we hear is changing—  
that is a voice, now I hear speech.

HOMUNCULUS (*in the vial, to Wagner*).  
Is daddikins all right? A serious business, that!  
Come and give me a nice affectionate hug,  
but gently, so the glass won't break! 6880  
It is a curious property of things  
that what is natural takes almost endless space,  
while what is not, requires a container.  
(*To MEPHISTOPHELES.*)  
Cousin, are you here too, you rogue? 6885  
You chose the proper moment, and I owe you thanks.  
It is a lucky chance that you should join us—  
Since I am now alive, I also must be active.  
I'd like to gird myself right now for work;  
and I can count on you to know the best procedures. 6890

WAGNER. Please, one more word! I've been harassed by young  
and old  
with problems that, till now, have put me in a quandary.  
For instance, no one's ever understood  
how soul and body fit so well together,  
clinging to one another as if they'd never part, 6895  
and yet torment each other all the livelong day.  
Nor how ...

MEPHISTOPHELES. Stop there! I'd rather learn  
why man and wife must get along so badly.  
These matters, friend, you never will clear up.  
This little chap wants action, we have work to do. 6900

HOMUNCULUS. What needs be done?

MEPHISTOPHELES (*pointing to a door at the side*).

There! Demonstrate your talent!

WAGNER (*still gazing into the vial*).

You really are the loveliest of boys!

*The side door opens and Faust is seen lying on a couch.*

HOMUNCULUS (*in an astonished voice*).

An omen! –

*(The vial slips out of WAGNER'S hands, hovers over Faust, and casts its light upon him.)*

Beauty everywhere! In a dense grove  
clear streams! And, taking off their clothes,  
the loveliest of women! – The picture is improving. – 6905  
Yet one, issued from hero-kings or even gods,  
is more resplendent than the others.

She sets her foot into the bright transparence;  
the flawless body's precious living flame  
finds coolness in the water's pliant crystal! – 6910

But what's this sound of whirring wings,  
this noisy splashing that disturbs the polished mirror?  
Her maidens flee, alarmed, while only she,  
the queen, remains composed and watches;  
with proud and womanly delight she sees 6915  
the leader of swans, importunate yet gentle,  
press against her knees. He seems to grow familiar. –

A mist, however, suddenly arises  
and with its closely woven veil conceals  
the scene that's loveliest of all. 6920

MEPHISTOPHELES. That's quite a story you have told us—

you may be small, but you've a great imagination!

I don't see anything ...

HOMUNCULUS. And I can well believe it!

Born in a later, fog-bound age,  
in a chaotic world of monkery and knighthood, 6925  
how can your northern eyes be anything but blinkered—  
you only feel at home where gloom prevails:

*(He surveys the surroundings.)*

Stonework with pointed arches, florid carvings,  
all mouldy, ugly, drab, and vulgar!  
If *he* wakes up, there'll be new trouble: 6930  
in such a place he would be dead at once.

He has been dreaming hopefully  
 of sylvan springs, of swans and naked beauties,  
 so how could he put up with this?  
 I'm most adaptable, yet I can hardly stand it. 6935  
 Let's get him out of here.

MEPHISTOPHELES. I'm all for that!  
 HOMUNCULUS. Order a hero into battle  
 or ask a girl to join the dance,  
 and there will be no long objections.  
 Right now, as I've remembered quickly, 6940  
 is Classical Walpurgisnight,  
 which is, for him, most opportune.  
 Transport him to his proper element!

MEPHISTOPHELES. I've never heard of anything like that.  
 HOMUNCULUS. And how could it have come to your attention? 6945  
 Romantic spectres are the only ones you know,  
 but any proper ghost has to be classical.

MEPHISTOPHELES. But what's the destination of our journey?  
 I know I'll find my ancient colleagues odious.

HOMUNCULUS. Your favorite quarter, Satan, lies northwest of  
 here, 6950  
 but we must sail southeast on this occasion. –  
 Through thickets, groves, and quiet humid reaches  
 the free Peneus flows across a mighty plain  
 extending to the mountains' gorges,  
 and up above lies Old and New Pharsalus. 6955

MEPHISTOPHELES. Horrors! No more! And spare me your  
 account  
 of all those fights of slaves with despotism!  
 They bore me, for no sooner are they over  
 than the combatants start again  
 and fail to see that they're egged on 6960  
 by Asmodeus, who's behind it all.  
 They claim it is a fight for independence,  
 but all it really is, is slaves against each other.

HOMUNCULUS. Let mankind have its measure of contention!  
 From childhood on, as best it can, the self must fight 6965  
 to stay intact, and so adulthood is at last attained. –  
 The only issue here is, how he can get well.  
 If you have a specific, here's the place to test it;  
 but if you're helpless, leave the job to me!

MEPHISTOPHELES. There's many a Brocken cure that I could try, 6970

but pagan bars confront me here.  
 Those Greeks were really never good for much,  
 although they charm your senses with external show  
 and lure the human heart to sinful pleasures;  
 with us, however, sin will always be thought gloomy. – 6975  
 Now what is on your mind?

HOMUNCULUS.                      You never have been bashful,  
 and so I think it quite sufficient  
 if I just say: Thessalian witches.

MEPHISTO (*lecherously*). Thessalian witches! Good! They're  
 persons  
 I long have had an interest in. 6980  
 To be with them night after night  
 might not be restful, I suspect;  
 but a trial visit ...

HOMUNCULUS.                      Take your cloak  
 and in it wrap our sleeping cavalier!  
 That bit of cloth will, as before, 6985  
 carry the two of you together;  
 I'll go ahead and light the way.

WAGNER (*apprehensively*). And I?

HOMUNCULUS. Why, you'll stay home and do what's most  
 important.  
 Peruse your ancient manuscripts,  
 collect life's elements as they direct; 6990  
 then put the parts together—cautiously—  
 and think about the What and, even more, the How! –  
 Meanwhile I shall explore the world a bit  
 and so perhaps discover how to dot the i's.  
 Then your great purpose will have been achieved, 6995  
 and the rewards your striving merits:  
 gold, honor, fame, a long and healthy life,  
 and maybe knowledge too and virtue.  
 Farewell!

WAGNER (*sadly*). Farewell! – The word weighs on my heart.  
 I fear, already, that I'll not see you again. 7000

MEPHISTOPHELES. Let's down at once to the Peneus!  
 My cousin isn't one to be ignored.  
 (*Ad spectatores.*) The fact is, we remain dependent on  
 the creatures we ourselves have made. [Exit.

---

## CLASSICAL WALPURGISNIGHT

### *The Pharsalian Fields. Darkness.*

ERICHTHO. How often to this night's dread celebration 7005  
have I thus come, Erichtho I, all somberness,  
yet not so frightful—they exaggerate and set  
no limits to their praise or blame—as hateful poets  
slanderosly say! I see the outstretched plain  
now wanly lightened by the gray of surging tents, 7010  
the after-image of that anxious, fearful night.  
How often it has been repeated! And it must  
recur eternally. Each wants to rule alone  
and, holding power gained through power, neither yields  
it to the other. – Those not competent to rule 7015  
their own unruly selves, with eager arrogance  
seek to impose their will upon their neighbor's will. –  
Here a battle was fought that grandly illustrates  
how power always meets some power greater still,  
how fragile is the many-flowered wreath of freedom, 7020  
how the stiff laurel, on the tyrant's head, is pliant.  
Great Pompey, here, had dreams of burgeoning hopes  
fulfilled,  
there wakeful Caesar watched each movement of fate's  
scales!  
They are well matched—who wins, the world already 7025  
knows.  
Watch fires glow and lavish redness all about,  
the ground exudes a semblance of shed blood,  
and lured by the night's strange and magic radiance  
the legions of Greek legend gather.  
Around the fires are fabled shapes of olden times—  
some hover timidly, some sit at ease. 7030  
Although not full, the rising moon is bright and clear,  
and as it spreads its mellow brightness everywhere  
the ghost tents vanish and the fires' glow turns blue. –  
Up there! What is that unexpected meteor?  
Its shining light reveals a solid sphere in which, 7035  
so instinct tells me, something lives. Destructive as I am  
to life, I would be ill-advised to get too close—  
my good name would be harmed and I would gain no  
profit.  
It now descends, and with due prudence I withdraw. [Exit.  
*Enter, above, the Aeronauts.*

|                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                      |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| HOMUNCULUS.                               | Since the valley down below us<br>looks so very weird and spectral,<br>I am flying one more circle<br>over all these horrid fires.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 7040                                 |
| MEPHISTOPHELES.                           | Since these ghosts are just as horrid<br>as those seen through ancient casements<br>in the wild and dismal North,<br>I'm as much at home as ever.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 7045                                 |
| HOMUNCULUS.                               | Look! In front! A thin tall woman<br>walks away with lengthy stride.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                      |
| MEPHISTOPHELES.                           | Probably she has been frightened<br>by our passage through the sky.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 7050                                 |
| HOMUNCULUS.                               | Let her go! – Your cavalier,<br>once you set him on the ground,<br>will come promptly back to life,<br>since he seeks his Life in lands of myth.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 7055                                 |
| FAUST ( <i>as he touches the earth</i> ). | And where is She?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                      |
| HOMUNCULUS.                               | That's something we don't know, but,<br>like as not, can here be learned by asking.<br>If you hurry while it still is dark<br>you can pursue the trail from flame to flame—<br>the man who dared approach the Mothers<br>will find no obstacles before him.                                                                                                                                                                   | 7060                                 |
| MEPHISTOPHELES.                           | I have my interests here as well;<br>perhaps it would be best if we,<br>each singly, went from fire to fire<br>seeking adventures of our own.<br>And when it's time to reunite, our little friend<br>must let his lamp shine bright and resonate.                                                                                                                                                                             | 7065                                 |
| HOMUNCULUS.                               | This is the way it will flash and ring.<br><i>(The vial resounds and emits a strong light.)</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                      |
|                                           | Now off without delay to find new marvels!                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | [Exit.                               |
| FAUST ( <i>solus</i> ).                   | Where is she? That no longer needs be asked! –<br><br>Although this may not be her native soil,<br>nor these the waves that touched her feet,<br>this is the air that spoke her tongue.<br>Here, by a miracle, in Greece!<br>I knew at once the land on which I stood;<br>as, when I slept, I gained new inspiration,<br>so now, when I stand here, Antaeus' strength is mine.<br>However strange the things I may encounter, | 7070<br><br><br><br><br><br><br>7075 |



I'll zealously explore this labyrinth of flame.

FAUST *moves away from center stage.*

MEPHISTOPHELES (*investigating*).

Wandering through these rather modest fires 7080

I really feel I'm in a foreign land—

nakedness everywhere, with now and then a shift:

the Sphinxes shameless, Griffins unembarrassed,

all sorts of hairy or befeathered creatures

offering us both rear and frontal views. 7085

At heart, of course, we also are indecent,

but classical antiquity, I find, is too realistic;

this kind of thing is handled best in modem fashion

by pasting leaves and such on various places.

A hideous lot! Newcomer that I am, however, 7090

I must be willing to address them nicely. –

My compliments, fair ladies! Sage graybeards, greetings!

GRIFFIN (*with guttural r's*).

Not graybeards! Griffins! – no one likes to hear

himself called gray. The sound of words reflects

the origins from which their sense derives; 7095

gray, grieving, grumpy, gruesome, graves, and groaning,

that have one etymology,

all put us out of sorts.

MEPHISTOPHELES. More to the point is this:

in Griffin, *gri* is nicely honorific.

GRIFFIN (*as before, and so henceforth*).

Of course! There is one tried and true connection 7100

that's often faulted, yet more often praised:

get a good grip on gold, a girl, a government,

and Lady Fortune seldom frowns.

GIANT ANTS. You mention gold—we had amassed a great amount

and crammed it into secret crevices; 7105

those Arimasps located it, and now they laugh,

knowing how far from here it's been transported.

GRIFFINS. Count on our getting an avowal from them.

ARIMASPS. But not tonight—this is a general holiday!

(*Aside.*) We'll get it all away before tomorrow, 7110

and so this time our venture should succeed.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*who has seated himself between the Sphinxes*).

It's easy here to feel at home—

I understand these fellows, one and all, so well!

A SPHINX. We spirits whisper what we have to say,

and then you turn it into your own substance. – 7115

Your name will do until we know you better.

MEPHISTOPHELES. There's a belief that I have many names.  
Are any British here? They're usually great travelers,  
looking for battlefields and waterfalls, 7120  
dilapidated walls and dreary ancient sites;  
this is an ideal place for them to visit.  
My name's attested in their ancient drama,  
where I appeared as Old Iniquity.

A SPHINX. And why that name?

MEPHISTOPHELES. I cannot even guess.

A SPHINX. Perhaps! – Have you some knowledge of the stars? 7125  
What aspects would you say prevail right now?

MEPHISTOPHELES (*looking up*).

Stars scoot across the sky, the waning moon is bright,  
and, keeping warm beside your lion skin,  
I feel quite snug and cozy here.  
It doesn't pay to go beyond one's depth; 7130  
so let's have riddles, or at least charades!

A SPHINX. Say what you are, and that will be a riddle.

Now try to solve your true identity:  
"The pious and the wicked man each need you—  
a breastplate for the first's ascetic fencing, 7135  
a partner for the second's foolish actions,  
and, as both, a source of Zeus' amusement."

FIRST GRIFFIN (*gruffly*). I can't abide him!

SECOND GRIFFIN (*more gruffly*). What can he want of  
us?

BOTH GRIFFINS. No one so nasty should be here!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*brutally*).

Perhaps you think your guest lacks nails 7140  
that scratch as well as your sharp claws?  
Try me and see!

A SPHINX (*gently*). No one will make you go away;  
you'll be impelled, yourself, to leave us;  
at home you feel yourself important,  
but here, unless I'm wrong, you're ill at ease. 7145

MEPHISTOPHELES. Above, you look quite appetizing;  
the beast stretched out below is horrifying.

A SPHINX. You double-dealer, you will rue that bitterly—  
our claws are in the best condition;  
you, with your shriveled horse's hoof, 7150  
cannot get pleasure from our company.

SIRENS, *above*, play introductory notes on their harps.

MEPHISTOPHELES. What are those birds, swaying back and forth,  
on poplar boughs beside the river?

A SPHINX. Be on your guard! The best of men  
have been the victims of their singing. 7155

SIRENS. Why must you debase your taste  
with what's ugly and fantastic!  
Listen to us come as choirs  
singing in well-tempered voices  
music that is right for Sirens. 7160

SPHINXES (*to the same tune, mocking them*).  
Force them to come down from there!  
They are hiding in those branches  
their repulsive, hawk-like claws  
that are waiting to destroy you  
if you heed their siren song. 7165

SIRENS. Hence, all hate! All envy, hence!  
Let us gather the pure essence  
of joys everywhere abounding  
and, on water or on land,  
greet each welcome passer-by  
with inviting cheer and grace! 7170

MEPHISTOPHELES. It is, I see, the latest fashion  
that throat and strings should be obliged  
to interweave the sounds they make.  
This trilling's wasted in my case; 7175  
although it titillates my ears,  
it does not penetrate my heart.

A SPHINX. Don't brag about your heart to us—  
a shrunken leather pouch  
would better match your face! 7180

FAUST (*returning to center stage*).  
How strange that contemplation satisfies me thus—  
even in ugliness there's strength and grandeur!  
Transported by this solemn spectacle,  
I sense already that the future is auspicious.  
(*He now refers successively to the SPHINXES, SIRENS, GIANT ANTS, and GRIFFINS.*)  
Long ago Oedipus stood facing one of these; 7185  
these saw Ulysses writhe in hempen cords;  
these gathered stores of treasure never equalled,  
of which these were the faithful guardians.  
I feel sustained by new vitality—  
the forms are grand, and grand what they recall. 7190

MEPHISTOPHELES. Time was you'd have abominated shapes like these,  
yet now you seem to thrive on them;  
if one is looking for his lady-love,  
even monsters, I see, are welcome.

FAUST (*addressing the Sphinxes*).

As females you can surely answer this: 7195  
Has any one of you seen Helen?

A SPHINX. Our line died out before her time—  
the last of us were slain by Hercules.

Chiron could give you information;  
on this occasion he'll be galloping about, 7200  
and if he'll stop and answer you, that's a good start.

SIRENS. You'll succeed somehow or other! ...

When Ulysses graciously  
stayed a while as guest with us,  
he proved quite a story-teller; 7250  
we will tell you all he told us  
if you'll visit our domain  
by the green Aegean's shores.

THE SPHINX. Don't be duped by them, your worship!

Ulysses had himself restrained by ropes— 7210  
let our good counsel serve you as restraint instead;  
if you can find the noble Chiron,  
you'll have the answer that I promised.

FAUST *withdraws from center stage*.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*ill-temperedly*).

Now what is croaking past with beating wings,  
this endless file that moves so fast 7215  
that it remains invisible?  
They'd soon wear any hunter out!

THE SPHINX. These creatures storming like swift winter winds,  
that with his arrows Hercules himself  
could barely hit, are the Stymphalian birds, 7220  
with feet of geese and beaks of vultures,  
whose croaks are meant as friendly greeting.  
They like to point out that they are our kin  
whenever they are in our neighborhood.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*as if intimidated*).

But there's another hissing sound, as well. 7225

THE SPHINX. It's nothing you need be afraid of!

Those are the heads of the Lernaean Hydra;  
 though severed from its trunk, they think they're still  
 important. –  
 But tell us, what's the matter now?  
 What is the meaning of these signs of restlessness? 7230  
 Where are you heading? Well, go on your way! ...  
 It's the group over there that has, I see,  
 made you a wryneck. Do not be inhibited!  
 Go, compliment them on their pretty faces!  
 They are the Lamiae, refined cocottes 7235  
 with smiling mouths and brazen eyes,  
 who are the satyrs' favorites;  
 your cloven hoof insures you'll have full freedom there.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. You'll still be here, I hope, should I return?  
 SPHINXES. Oh, yes. Go join your flighty rabble. 7240  
 We, being of Egyptian origin,  
 do not mind sitting for millennia enthroned  
 and will, so long as we are not disturbed,  
 govern the lunar and the solar day.  
 Placed before the Pyramids, 7245  
 as the nations' highest court,  
 we see flood, and war, and peace,  
 never changing our expressions.  
 [Exit  
 MEPHISTOPHELES.

---

*The River God Peneus, surrounded by Tributary Streams and Nymphs.*

PENEUS. Stir and whisper, sedgy rushes,  
 ease my interrupted dreams! 7205  
 Sister-reeds, breathe gently, softly!  
 slender willow-bushes, murmur!  
 trembling poplar branches, rustle! –  
 An uncanny sound of thunder,  
 some mysterious general tremor, 7255  
 wakes me from my watery rest.  
 FAUST (*advancing to the river's edge*).  
 If my ears do not deceive me,  
 I can hear behind this screen  
 of interwoven boughs and bushes  
 sounds resembling human voices. 7260  
 It's as if the waters prattled  
 or the breezes played and jested.

NYMPHS (to FAUST). You would do well  
     to lie down and rest;  
     here in our coolness 7265  
     fatigue does not last,  
     and you would enjoy  
     the peace that eludes you.  
     We lull and we murmur,  
     we whisper to you.

FAUST. This is not sleep! O may they never vanish, 7270  
     these forms beyond compare  
     that I envision in a miracle  
     of all-pervasive feeling!  
 Can they be dreams? Or are they memories?— 7275  
 I have already, once before, been so enchanted.  
     The quiet waters glide through cool  
     and gently stirring thickets,  
     and scarcely make the slightest murmur;  
     a hundred rills from every side 7280  
     converge in clear bright shallows  
     that form a perfect place for bathing.

    Young women of unblemished beauty—  
     forms that, to delight the eye,  
     the mirroring wave reduplicates! 7285  
     Soon all are playing in the pool,  
     the timid wade, the bolder swim;  
     and then, to shouts, join water-battle.

    These forms afford the eye such pleasure  
     that I should be content with them, 7290  
     but my senses still desire more.  
 And so I turn my probing gaze  
     towards the rich veil of leafy green  
     by which the noble queen is hidden.

    But how strange! Now swans come swimming, 7295  
     all pure majesty of motion,  
     out of inlets and draw near.  
     They float gently side by side,  
     yet are proud and self-complacent  
     as they move their heads and bills. 7300

    One, however, bolder than the others  
     ahead of whom he quickly sails,  
     seems to swell his breast in pride;  
     with his plumes and feathers raised,  
     himself a wave on waving waters, 7305  
     he pushes toward the sanctuary....

With shining plumage undisturbed,  
the rest swim back and forth; they soon  
engage in lively show of battle  
and so divert the timid girls 7310  
that these think only of their safety  
and forget their proper duties.

NYMPHS. Sisters, come and put an ear  
to the river's green embankment—  
I believe that what I hear 7315  
is the sound of horse's hoofs.  
Who, I wonder, can have brought  
urgent messages this night!

FAUST. It's as if the earth vibrated  
with the sound of a horse in a hurry. 7320  
Look there!  
Is some special good fortune  
to be mine so soon?  
This marvel is unique!  
Upon a horse of dazzling whiteness 7325  
a rider is approaching at a trot;  
he seems endowed with a courageous spirit....  
There is no doubt! I know him now—  
the famous son of Philyra! –  
Halt, Chiron! Stay! I need to talk to you.... 7330

CHIRON. What's this about?

FAUST. Slow down a bit!

CHIRON. I never pause.

FAUST. Then take me with you, please!

CHIRON. Mount! Once you're on my back there's time to ask  
what way you want to go. You're standing on the shore;  
I'm willing to transport you through the water. 7335

FAUST (*mounting*).  
Go anywhere you wish. I'll be forever grateful  
to the great man and noble teacher  
who, to his glory, reared a race of heroes:  
the Argonauts, that splendid company,  
and all the rest who helped create the poet's world. 7340

CHIRON. Let's not pursue that further!  
Pallas herself, as Mentor, doesn't do so well;  
and, in the end, as if they'd not been taught,  
men keep on doing what they please.

FAUST. I here and now embrace, in body and in spirit, 7345  
the doctor to whom every plant is known,

who understands the virtues of each root,  
 who heals the sick and eases painful wounds!  
 CHIRON. If at my side some hero suffered hurt,  
 I did know how to give assistance, 7350  
 but finally surrendered all my skills  
 to priests and simple-gathering women.  
 FAUST. Yours is the greatness of the truly great,  
 who cannot bear a word of praise,  
 who modestly give precedence to others 7355  
 and act as if they were quite ordinary.  
 CHIRON. I think you have the skills to be a sycophant,  
 flatter both the ruler and the ruled.  
 FAUST. Yet surely you will not deny  
 that you did see your great contemporaries, 7360  
 did emulate, in deed, the noblest of them,  
 lived out your days a never frivolous demigod.  
 But which of those heroic figures  
 did you consider worthiest?  
 CHIRON. Among the glorious Argonauts 7365  
 each had his own particular merit  
 and could, according to the virtue he possessed,  
 do what was needed when the others lacked his skill.  
 Castor and Pollux always came out first  
 when looks and youthfulness were most important. 7370  
 The happy talent of the Boreiads  
 was quick, decisive action for the sake of others.  
 As ruler, Jason, whom the ladies liked,  
 was wary, clever, firm, and easy to consult.  
 Next, Orpheus: a gentle, quiet, always prudent man 7375  
 who, when he played his lyre, was mightiest of all.  
 Then keen-eyed Lynceus, who steered their sacred ship  
 past rocky shores by day and night....  
 Danger is best endured in company with others:  
 what one achieves obtains the praise of all. 7380  
 FAUST. And aren't you going to mention Hercules?  
 CHIRON. Ah, me! Do not arouse nostalgia! –  
 As yet I had not seen Apollo,  
 or Mars, or Hermes—all those gods—  
 when with these eyes I saw before me 7385  
 what all men worship as divine.  
 He was born to be a king,  
 this youth magnificent to see,  
 though subject to his elder brother—



and to the charms of lovely ladies too. 7390  
Earth never will bring forth his like again,  
nor Hebe raise a second Hercules to heaven.  
In vain the lyre labors to evoke him,  
in vain the sculptors martyr stone.

FAUST. They may take pride in how they have portrayed him, 7395  
but you have made his greatness far more vivid.  
Now, having talked about the handsomest man,  
say something too, about the greatest beauty.

CHIRON. It's meaningless to speak of women's beauty,  
which far too often is mere lifeless show; 7400  
my praise I save for those who have  
a buoyant, optimistic zest for life.  
Beauty's blessing is its own existence;  
add grace to it, and it becomes invincible—  
like Helen when I carried her. 7405

FAUST. You carried her?

CHIRON. Upon my back, of course.

FAUST. As if I weren't confused enough already—  
and now the joy of sitting here!

CHIRON. She held on by my hair,  
just as you do.

FAUST. I'm now beside myself completely! 7410  
Please tell me all about it—  
she is the one and only thing I want!  
From where, to where, was it you carried her?

CHIRON. It's easy to provide the answer to that question.  
It happened when the Dioscuri 7415  
had freed their little sister from abductors' clutches.  
The brigands, unaccustomed to defeat,  
regained their courage and came storming in pursuit.  
But then the marshes near Eleusis checked

the brothers' and their sister's speed; 7420  
Castor and Pollux waded—I paddled—across;  
then she dismounted, stroked my dripping mane,  
made flattering remarks, and, self-assured,  
expressed her thanks with gracious gravity.

A charming child—though young, an old man's joy! 7425

FAUST. And only ten years old!

CHIRON. Philologists, I see,  
have led you, as they have themselves, astray.  
A woman, in mythology, is an exception  
whom poets introduce in any way they want:  
she never comes of age or ever ages;

7430

a form that always whets the appetite,  
when young she is abducted, in age she still is courted—  
in fine, poets ignore constraints of time.

FAUST. Then time shall not constrain her either!

Himself no longer in the realm of time, 7435

Achilles made her his at Pherae. What rare bliss,  
to win one's love by besting death and fate!  
And shall not I, sustained by poignant longing,  
endow this perfect form with life—

this timeless being, the true peer of gods, 7440

tender but grand, august yet gracious too?

You saw her long ago, but I this very day—

the dream of beauty, charm, and loveliness.

My whole existence now is held in bondage,

and I shall die unless I make her mine. 7445

CHIRON. Strange man! In mortal realms you may just be  
exalted,

but in the spirit world the way you act seems madness.

Our meeting is a fortunate coincidence!

It is my custom once a year to pay,

for a few moments, my respects to Manto, 7450

Aesculapius' daughter, who in silent prayer

implores her father, for his good name's sake,

to bring some light at last into physicians' minds

and so convert them from their reckless slaughter.

Of all the sibyl guild I like her best; 7455

she doesn't writhe grotesquely, is really kind and helpful.

With healing herbs, if you'll but stay a while,

she will, I have no doubt, cure you completely.

FAUST. I won't submit to any cure—my mind is sound—

since then I'd only be one abject creature more. 7460

CHIRON. Don't miss your chance! Consult this splendid source  
of help!

Be quick! Dismount! We're here already.

FAUST. What is this place to which, in awesome darkness,

you've carried me through gravel-bottomed streams?

Explain!

CHIRON. Between the Peneus, on our right, and on our left, 7465

Olympus, Rome confronted Greece, whose realm,

the greater, only stops where desert sands begin;

the king must flee, the consul is triumphant. –

Look up! Here is, propitiously at hand

and bathed in moonlight, the eternal temple. 7470

MANTO (*within the Temple, dreaming*).

In sacred precincts,  
hark! horse's hoofs are heard  
as demigods approach.

CHIRON. How true!

Open your eyes and look!

MANTO (*walking*). Welcome! I see I'm not forgotten.

7475

CHIRON. And you're still living in your temple!

MANTO. You haven't tired of your gadding?

CHIRON. You may enjoy your peaceful quiet,  
but I prefer to move about.

7480

MANTO. I let time move while I stay here. –  
And who is this?

CHIRON. One whom the turbulence  
of this notorious Night has brought our way.  
He is resolved—his wits are crazed—  
to make fair Helen his, although he doesn't have  
the least idea of how and where to start.  
A special case for Aesculapian treatment!

7485

MANTO. I love the man who wants what cannot be.

(*CHIRON is by now disappearing in the distance.*)

Enter, bold spirit! Joy shall be yours!

This tunnel takes us to Persephone,  
who in Olympus' hollow base  
welcomes forbidden pleas in secret audience.  
Here I once smuggled Orpheus in—  
use your chance better! Hurry! Have no fears!

7490

[*Exeunt,  
descending.*]

---

SIRENS, *as before on the banks of the Upper Peneus.*

SIRENS. Plunge into Peneus' stream!

7495

That's the place to float and splash  
while we entertain with song  
these unhappy creatures here. –  
Without water nothing prospers!  
Let us hurry, one and all,  
down to the Aegean Sea—  
there abundant joys await us.

7500

(*Violent earthquake-tremors.*)

Seething waves reverse their course,  
overflow their river bed—  
ground that shakes, obstructed water,  
fumes from clefts in graveled shores.  
Let us flee! Come, one and all—

7505

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <p>             this prodigy bodes only ill!<br/>             Come as honored merry guests<br/>             to a cheerful entertainment<br/>             where the gleaming sea swells gently,<br/>             where waves softly wash the shore,<br/>             and where Luna, twofold shining,<br/>             bathes us in her sacred dew!<br/>             There, life's uninhibited;<br/>             here, you live in fear of tremors;<br/>             if you're prudent, quick, away!<br/>             All is horror hereabouts.           </p> | <p>7510</p> |
| <p>             SEISMOS (<i>below, making rattling and rumbling noises</i>).<br/>             One more mighty shove is needed,<br/>             one good heave of these strong shoulders!<br/>             That's the way to reach the surface,<br/>             where no one will challenge us.           </p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <p>7520</p> |
| <p>             SPHINXES. What discomfortable tremors!<br/>             What a nasty, dreadful rumbling!<br/>             How things start to sway and shake,<br/>             jolted as they oscillate!<br/>             What on earth could be more vexing!<br/>             Nonetheless, we will not budge,<br/>             even though all hell break loose.           </p>                                                                                                                                                                              | <p>7525</p> |
| <p>             Now, amazingly, a dome<br/>             is emerging from the ground.<br/>             This is he who, long-since grizzled,<br/>             raised for an expectant mother<br/>             from the sea the isle of Delos,<br/>             building it amid the waters.           </p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <p>7530</p> |
| <p>             See him strain and push and press,<br/>             bend his back and tense his arms<br/>             in a stance like that of Atlas,<br/>             as he lifts the turf and soil,<br/>             ripping from these quiet shores<br/>             pebbles, gravel, sand, and clay,<br/>             and divides this placid valley<br/>             with a gash that mars its mantle.           </p>                                                                                                                                    | <p>7535</p> |
| <p>             With sustained, tremendous effort<br/>             this colossal caryatid,<br/>             buried still up to his chest,<br/>             holds aloft a great stone structure.<br/>             But there'll be no more disruption:<br/>             we've elected to stay here.           </p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <p>7540</p> |
| <p>             SEISMOS. I did all this with no assistance,           </p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <p>7545</p> |
| <p>             SEISMOS. I did all this with no assistance,           </p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <p>7550</p> |

as people will someday acknowledge;  
 and if it were not for my shakes and jolts,  
 how would this world be such a thing of beauty? –  
 How could your mountains stand majestic 7555  
 in azure skies' translucent splendor  
 had I not shoved them there for you  
 to see with picturesque delight?  
 When, in the flush of youth, I tried my strength  
 under august parental eyes—  
 as Night and Chaos watched— 7560  
 and, with the Titans as companions,  
 played ball with Pelion and Ossa,  
 we tired at last of our mad game and set  
 both mountains on Parnassus as a two-peaked cap ... 7565  
 Apollo finds it pleasant to stay there  
 attended by the godlike Muses.  
 For Jove himself, and for his thunderbolts,  
 I thus raised high a lofty seat.  
 Now, too, with superhuman straining, 7570  
 I've pushed up out of my abyss  
 and loudly summon to a new existence  
 all who would gladly settle here.  
 SPHINXES. We'd have called this rock primeval  
 which here rises like a castle, 7575  
 had we not with our own eyes  
 seen it struggle from the ground.  
 As stones continue pressing into place,  
 forest and undergrowth spread up its sides;  
 but that is no concern to Sphinxes: 7580  
 where we reside is sacrosanct.  
 GRIFFINS. I see flakes and threads of gold  
 glittering in crevices.  
 Get to work, you Ants, and mine them,  
 lest someone cheat you of this treasure! 7585  
 GIANT ANTS (*in chorus*).  
 As soon as the Titans  
 have finished their mountain,  
 scurry on up  
 as fast as you can!  
 Then in and out quick! 7590  
 Every crumb  
 you can find in these cracks  
 will have worth.

|                                                    |      |
|----------------------------------------------------|------|
| Hasten along                                       |      |
| and don't overlook                                 | 7595 |
| the least little bit,                              |      |
| wherever it's hiding.                              |      |
| Be as busy as bees,                                |      |
| keep swarming away;                                |      |
| take only the gold,                                | 7600 |
| leave the rest of the mountain!                    |      |
| GRIFFINS. Bring the gold here! Quick, make a pile, |      |
| and we will guard it with our claws;               |      |
| no better bolts were ever made                     |      |
| for keeping any treasure safe.                     | 7605 |
| PYGMIES. Here we are, installed already,           |      |
| though we don't know by what logic.                |      |
| Don't inquire where we've come from,               |      |
| all that matters is: we're here!                   |      |
| Every country can provide                          | 7610 |
| places where one dwells with pleasure;             |      |
| if a rock displays a fissure,                      |      |
| dwarfs are certain to be there.                    |      |
| Male and female, eager workers,                    |      |
| model husbands, model wives—                       | 7615 |
| who can say if that's the way                      |      |
| it was once in Paradise?                           |      |
| Here we're perfectly contented                     |      |
| and can thank our lucky star;                      |      |
| Mother Earth is always fruitful                    | 7620 |
| anywhere you choose to go.                         |      |
| DACTYLS. If She could generate                     |      |
| those Pygmies in a single night,                   |      |
| She can produce us mites as well,                  |      |
| who too will form couples.                         | 7625 |
| PYGMY ELDERS. Hurry and settle                     |      |
| where there is space!                              |      |
| Start work at once,                                |      |
| haste is our strength!                             |      |
| While there's still peace,                         | 7630 |
| get your forge built;                              |      |
| furnish our troops                                 |      |
| with armor and weapons.                            |      |
| All you Ants busily                                |      |

|                                          |      |
|------------------------------------------|------|
| running about,                           | 7635 |
| bring us the ore!                        |      |
| As for you Dactyls,                      |      |
| tiny but many,                           |      |
| let your task be                         |      |
| fetching us wood!                        | 7640 |
| Bum it in layers,                        |      |
| carefully covered—                       |      |
| furnish us charcoal!                     |      |
| PYGMY GENERALISSIMO.                     |      |
| Off to war bravely                       |      |
| with bow and arrow!                      | 7645 |
| Shoot me those herons                    |      |
| there by the pond                        |      |
| where in their arrogance                 |      |
| thousands are nesting—                   |      |
| all in one volley,                       | 7650 |
| sparing not one—                         |      |
| so we can wear                           |      |
| helmets with plumes.                     |      |
| ANTS <i>and</i> Dactyls.                 |      |
| Is there no help for us?                 |      |
| We get the iron,                         | 7655 |
| they forge our chains.                   |      |
| It is too soon yet                       |      |
| to make our escape—                      |      |
| meanwhile, comply!                       |      |
| THE CRANES OF IBYCUS.                    |      |
| Murderous shouts and dying moans,        | 7660 |
| flap of wings that beat in terror!       |      |
| Even we, high in the sky,                |      |
| hear the sound of painful groaning.      |      |
| Now the victims all are dead,            |      |
| red the waters with their blood.         | 7665 |
| Avarice in monstrous guise               |      |
| takes the herons' crowning glory—        |      |
| see it flutter on the helmets            |      |
| of the fat-paunched-bow-legged villains! |      |
| Allies of our air-borne army             | 7670 |
| who too cross seas in serried ranks,     |      |
| join us in a cause of vengeance          |      |

that affects near relatives!

Let us make a vital effort!

Swear to hate this scum forever!

7675

*Trumpeting, the CRANES disperse in the air.*

*Enter MEPHISTOPHELES on the plain before Seismos' mountain.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. I had no trouble handling Northern witches,  
but these strange phantoms leave me ill at ease.

The Brocken's so conveniently laid out,  
and anywhere you are there's company.

*Dame Ilse*, on her *Stone*, acts as our lookout,  
and on his *Peak* our *Heinrich* never sleeps.

7680

*Elend* may hear the snores of *Schnarcher* now and then,  
but things don't change from one age to the next.

Here, though, who can be sure of where he is,  
or if the ground won't burst beneath his feet? ...

7685

I take a pleasant stroll along a level valley,  
and all at once, behind my back, up pops a mountain—  
the name may be too grandiose, but still

it's high enough to separate me from  
my Sphinxes—and attracts from up the valley  
flames that dart about to view this novelty....

7690

My lovely ladies still flit roguishly along,  
luring me toward them, then eluding me.

Now easy does it! One who has a taste for sweets  
will grab at them in any circumstances.

7695

LAMIAE (*letting MEPHISTOPHELES pursue them*).

Faster and faster,

no standing still!

Slow down again  
for a bit of chatter!

It's quite a lark  
to make this rake  
pay so severely

7700

for chasing us.

With such stiff feet  
he only can hobble

7705

and stumble along;

we keep escaping  
while he pursues us,  
dragging that leg.



MEPHISTOPHELES (*stopping*).

Men's lot is cursed! From Adam down 7710  
they've always been led on and gulled!

We all grow older, but who's any wiser?

As if I hadn't had enough infatuations! –

Their tight-laced waists and painted faces tell us  
that these are absolutely worthless creatures. 7715

In what they offer there is nothing healthy;  
touch any part of them, it will prove rotten.

We know and see what's all too palpable,  
but if the trollops pipe, we dance!

LAMIAE (*stopping*).

Stand still—he's having second thoughts, is pausing,  
stopping! 7720

To the attack, or he will get away!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*advancing*).

Forward! Don't be a fool and let yourself  
be tangled in a web of doubts;

if witches such as these did not exist,

who the devil would want to be a devil! 7725

LAMIAE (*in their most captivating manner*).

Let's parade around this brave Lothario!

Certainly his heart will tell him  
which of us inspires his devotion.

MEPHISTOPHELES. I'll concede that by dim light

you apparently are pretty, 7730  
so I won't speak ill of you.

EMPUSA (*pushing into the circle of Lamiae*).

Nor of me, I hope! I'm one of you—

let me join this circle too!

LAMIAE. She's always the unwanted extra

who only spoils the game for us. 7735

EMPUSA (*to Mephistopheles*).

Your little cousin with an ass's foot,

your dear Empusa, welcomes you;

you merely have a horse's hoof,

but welcome, cousin, just the same!

MEPHISTOPHELES. I thought that here there'd just be strangers, 7740

and find, alas! close relatives;

it's an old, familiar story:

from Harz to Hellas, always cousins!

EMPUSA. My talent is deciding quickly  
which of my many shapes to choose; 7745  
tonight I thought I'd honor you  
by putting on my ass's head.

MEPHISTOPHELES. I note that family feeling means  
a great deal to the people here;  
regardless of the consequences, though, 7750  
I'd like to disavow the ass's head.

LAMIAE. Ignore the nasty thing! She puts to rout  
all thoughts of beauty and delight;  
and when there's beauty and delight,  
if she appears, it's gone at once. 7755

MEPHISTOPHELES. These other cousins, delicate and dainty,  
awaken my suspicions too;  
beneath their rosy cheeks, I fear,  
there may be lurking metamorphoses.

LAMIAE. Find out by trying! There is lots of choice. 7760  
Take your pick! And if you're the lucky kind  
you'll grab the winning ticket.

Why harp so much upon your eagerness?  
For all your swaggering and boasting  
you are a pitiful gallant. – 7765  
At last he's venturing to join us;  
remove your masks when your turn comes  
and show him what you really are.

MEPHISTOPHELES. I've chosen her who's prettiest ...  
(*Clasping her.*) Alas! A desiccated broomstick! 7770  
(*Seizing another.*) And what is this? ... An awful face!

LAMIAE. Do not pretend you merit something better!

MEPHISTOPHELES. That one's petite—I'd like to make a deal with  
her  
a lizard's slipping from my hands,  
her slippery braids feel like a snake. 7775  
I'll grab, instead, this tall one then ...

and find I hold an ivied thyrsus  
and that her head is its pine cone.  
How will this end? ... Here's one who's stout—  
perhaps she will afford more solace. 7780  
One last attempt! I'll take the risk!  
She's quite gelatinous, just what

an Oriental pays high prices for ...  
but, sad to say, the puffball bursts!

LAMIAE. Now separate and hover in the air!

At lightning speed, in sable flight  
surround, o bats, on silent wings  
this uninvited witch's son  
with baffling, horrifying circles—  
he'll still be getting off too cheaply!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*shaking himself*).

I'm not much wiser than before, it seems;  
the world's as crazy here as back up North;  
ghosts in both places are eccentric,  
people and poets equally absurd.

A masquerade proves here, as everywhere,  
to be but show that entertains the senses.

I've tried to catch some masks that looked quite charming,  
but what I touched gave me the willies—  
I'd really like to be deluded  
if the illusion only lasted longer.

*(He loses his way in the rubble.)*

Where am I now? Where does this lead?

What was a path is now a wilderness.

I came this way on even roads,  
and now am faced by piles of rubble.

This climbing up and down is futile;  
where will I find my Sphinxes now?

I never would have thought that things could be so crazy:  
a mountain such as this produced in just one night!

Here witches really ride in style,

they bring their own Blocksberg along.

AN OREAD (*from a cliff of pre-seismic rock*).

Come, climb up here! My mountain's old  
and still retains its primal shape.

On rugged trail pay Pindus homage,  
that has its furthest outcrops here!

As now, I had long stood unshaken  
when Pompey fled across this ridge

The mock-formation over there is an illusion, and it will disappear at cockcrow.

I often see such fantasies created,

then see them vanish suddenly again.

MEPHISTOPHELES. All honor to a venerable head  
whose lofty crown of mighty oaks

does not allow the brightest moonlight  
 to penetrate the darkness of your leaves. –  
 But there, beside the underbrush, 7825  
 an unpretentious light is moving.  
 How nicely things work out—  
 it is indeed Homunculus!  
 Where have you been, my little friend!  
 HOMUNCULUS. Oh, I keep floating on from place to place 7830  
 and, eager to destroy this vial,  
 am hoping to achieve existence properly;  
 but nothing I have seen as yet  
 encourages me to become a part of it.  
 I'll tell you this in confidence, however: 7835  
 I'm on the trail of two philosophers  
 who, when I overheard them, were discussing Nature.  
 I want to stick by them, since they  
 are bound to know what real existence is,  
 and in the end I'll surely learn 7840  
 the wisest course for me to follow.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. But make your own decision, inasmuch  
 as anywhere that spectres have a say  
 they welcome the philosopher;  
 to please the public with his skill, 7845  
 he soon creates a dozen new ones.  
 You'll never learn unless you make mistakes.  
 If you want to exist, do so on your own!  
 HOMUNCULUS. Still, good advice is not to be disdained.  
 MEPHISTOPHELES Farewell, then! Let us see what happens. [*They separate.*]  
 ANAXAGORAS (*entering, to THALES*).  
 Your stubbornness makes no concessions;  
 are still more reasons needed to convince you?  
 THALES. The waves respond to every whim of air,  
 but stay away from rugged rocks like this.  
 ANAXAGORAS. That cliff is here because of fire-vapors. 7855  
 THALES. All living things evolved in water.  
 HOMUNCULUS (*hovering between them*).  
 Please let me come along beside you—  
 I'm eager to evolve myself!  
 ANAXAGORAS. Did you, o Thales, in a single night  
 ever produce from mud a mountain such as this?  
 THALES. Nature, and Nature's living fluxes, 7860  
 have never counted days and nights and hours.  
 She fashions forms according to set rules,

and even when they're huge, there is no violence.

ANAXAGORAS. This time there was! A fierce Plutonic fire, 7865  
tremendous outbursts of Aeolian gas,  
broke through the ancient level crust of earth,  
creating instantly a recent mountain.

THALES. But is this part of any lasting process?  
Your mountain's there, so let it be. 7870  
This controversy is a waste of time,  
and only bores a patient audience.

ANAXAGORAS. The mountain teems with Myrmidons,  
who've promptly occupied its crevices—  
Pygmies and Ants and Dactyls 7875  
and other busy little things.

(To HOMUNCULUS.) Your aspirations have been modest,  
you've lived in hermit-like confinement;  
if you believe you'd like authority,  
I'll have you crowned their king. 7880

HOMUNCULUS. What does my Thales say?

THALES. I would advise against it;  
A little world produces petty deeds,  
great men inspire lesser ones to grandeur.  
But look! See that black cloud of cranes!  
They are a menace to the frightened people,  
a threat to any future king. 7885

With lance-like beaks and taloned claws  
they fall upon their tiny victims;  
these are the lightning flashes of impending doom!  
As they stood peacefully beside the quiet pond 7890  
the herons suffered ruthless slaughter;  
it is that rain of murderous arrows,  
now harvested as cruel and bloody vengeance,  
which first incited their close kin  
to wrath against the wicked Pygmy race. 7895

What use are helmets, shields, and spears,  
how do their heron-feathers help those dwarfs?  
While Ant and Dactyl soon find cover,  
their army wavers, flees, is crushed.

ANAXAGORAS (*after a pause, solemnly*).  
Till now I've praised the subterranean powers, 7900  
but what's befallen makes me turn to one above....  
O you on high who, never aging,

assume three shapes and bear three names,  
 I beg relief of the distress my people suffer,  
 Diana, Luna, Hekate! 7905  
 You who exalt us with profundity of thought,  
 who seem so calm, yet have such strength of feeling,  
 unseal your dread abyss of darkness  
 and, though you hear no charm, reveal your ancient might!  
 (*Pause.*)  
     Have I been rashly heeded? 7910  
     Has my appeal  
     to higher beings  
     caused Nature's laws to be suspended?  
 Now growing larger every moment,  
 the disc that is the goddess' throne approaches, 7915  
 a dread and awesome spectacle  
 as its flames darken and turn red! ...  
 Come, mighty sphere, no closer with your threats,  
 or you'll destroy the land, the sea, and us!  
     Then it is true that women once in Thessaly, 7920  
     placing their trust in sacrilegious magic,  
     by incantation drew you from your orbit  
     and wrested from you direst powers? ...  
 Darkness has shrouded the bright disc, which suddenly  
 explodes and flares and showers sparks! 7925  
 What din, what sounds of hissing,  
 of thunder heightened by the roar of wind! –  
 Humbly I fall before your throne—  
  
 forgive me who have caused all this!  
                     *He throws himself prostrate.*  
 THALES. The things this man could hear and see! 7930  
     I'm not quite certain what has happened,  
     yet my perception of it is not his.  
     These hours are mad, on that we can agree,  
     but Luna still is resting cozily  
     in the same spot she was before. 7935  
 HOMUNCULUS. Look at the place the Pygmies occupied—  
     the peak was rounded, now it's pointed!  
     I felt a terrible collision,  
     the impact of the rock that fell out of the moon  
  
     and instantly, with no respect of persons, 7940

crushed friend and foe to death.  
 I can't, however, deprecate creative forces  
 that in the course of just one night  
 produced from nether and from upper regions  
 the mountain we see here erected. 7945

THALES. Don't get worked up! That was but make-believe!  
 Good riddance to those nasty creatures;  
 it's lucky that you weren't their king!  
 Now to the sea, and to a pleasant celebration  
 that welcomes eagerly strange guests like you! [Exeunt.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*climbing the other side of Seismos' mountain*).  
 Here I am forced to struggle through steep crevices  
 and stubborn roots of ancient oaks!  
 Back in the Harz the resin has a hearty smell,  
 with a *soupçon* of pitch—which, after brimstone,  
 is my favorite scent. – But here, among these Greeks, 7955  
 you hardly get a whiff of it;  
 I wouldn't mind discovering, though,  
 what fuel they use to keep their hell-fires going.

A DRYAD. You may be smart enough at home;  
 abroad, you lack a certain pliability. 7960  
 You ought to take your mind off your own country  
 and pay these sacred oaks the homage owed them here.

MEPHISTOPHELES. You can't forget what you have left behind;  
 what we were used to still is Paradise.  
 But tell me, what's the triple shape which crouches 7965  
 there in that dimly lighted cave?

DRYAD. The Phorcides! Approach them if you dare,  
 address them if you're not dismayed.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Why not? – What I now see astounds me!

Although it hurts my pride, I must confess 7970  
 that I have never seen such creatures—  
 they're worse by far than mandrakes.  
 Can one who sees this monstrous trinity  
 still find the vilest forms of sin  
 in any way repulsive? 7975  
 We wouldn't even let them stand beside the door  
 of the most dreadful of our hells.  
 When such things flourish in this Land of Beauty,  
 they're glorified as Classical. –  
 Stirring, they seem to sense my presence; 7980  
 their peeps and squeaks are those of vampire bats.

A PHORKYAD. Sisters, give me our eye, so that it may inquire

who dares to come so close to where our temples are.  
MEPHISTOPHELES. Venerable ladies! Allow me to approach  
and be thrice blessed by you. 7985

I know I call as one who is as yet a stranger,  
but if I'm not mistaken, I'm some kind of cousin.  
I've seen the oldest gods that mankind venerates,  
have paid obeisance to both Ops and Rhea;  
just yesterday—perhaps it is now the day before—I saw 7990  
the Fates, who are both your and Chaos' sisters;  
but never did I see your peers.

I have no more to say, but my delight is great.  
PHORCIDES. This seems to be a spirit with some sense.  
MEPHISTOPHELES. Still, I'm surprised no poets sing your praises. 7995

And tell me how it is I've never seen  
such worthy subjects treated by an artist?  
The chisel ought to strive to do you justice,  
not Juno, Pallas, Venus, and their ilk!

PHORCIDES. Engulfed in solitude and silent darkness,  
we three have never thought about such things. 8000

MEPHISTOPHELES. In any case, how could you, isolated here  
where you see no one and no one sees you?  
You'd need to live in some great town  
where art and ostentation occupy one throne, 8005  
where on the double, every day, a marble block  
enters this life in some heroic guise,  
where ...

PHORCIDES. Hold your peace! Don't make us covet glory!  
If we learned more, what good would it do us,  
born here in darkness, kin to all that is nocturnal, 8010  
known hardly to ourselves, to others not at all?

MEPHISTOPHELES. It wouldn't matter in your case, I see,  
if you transferred to others your identities.  
A single eye and tooth do for the three of you,  
and so, with mythological propriety, 8015  
you might combine your triple essence in two persons  
briefly, and lend the likeness of the third  
to me.

A PHORKYAD. How does this strike you? Would it work?

THE OTHER PHORCIDES.

Let's test it, but retaining eye and tooth!

MEPHISTOPHELES. You've just subtracted the best items:  
how can there be, without them, authenticity? 8020

A PHORKYAD. You only have to close one eye



and let but one incisor show;  
in profile then you will at once possess 8025  
a perfect sibling-likeness to us.

MEPHISTOPHELES. I'm flattered! But so be it!

PHORCIDES. Be it so!  
Mephistopheles (*in profile, as PHORKYAS*). I stand  
before you now as Chaos' well-loved son!

PHORCIDES. There's no denying we're his daughters.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Then I, o shame! will now be called hermaphroditic.

PHORCIDES. How beautiful is our new trinity: 8030  
we sisters have a second eye and tooth!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Since I must hide from public view,  
I'll go and scare the devils down in hell. [Exit.

---

ROCKY INLETS OF THE AEGEAN SEA

*The moon is at the zenith, where it remains. SIRENS, couched on  
rocks about the stage, are fluting and singing.*

SIRENS. Even though Thessalian witches  
sometimes have on nights of horror 8035  
drawn you down to serve their crimes,  
look from your nocturnal sky  
tranquilly on waves that ripple  
with the gentlest iridescence;  
shed your light on the commotion 8040  
now arising from these waters!  
We are ever-faithful servants—  
lovely Luna, hear our prayer!

NEREIDS and Tritons (*as sea-monsters*).  
Let your clarion tones be clearer,  
make the whole sea resonate, 8045  
summon all who dwell below!  
Dreadful storm-troughs made us flee  
to the depths and utter quiet;  
your sweet songs have drawn us back.

See how we, to our delight, 8050  
deck ourselves in chains of gold,  
adding to our crowns and jewels  
matching clasp and gem-set buckle,  
all of which we owe to you!

Guardian spirits of our bay, 8055  
by your singing you have brought us

treasures lost in shipwrecks here.

SIRENS. We are well aware that fish  
like to live in ocean coolness,  
gliding carefree back and forth. 8060  
Still, tonight, when all of you  
are in such a festive spirit,  
we would like to have you show us  
that you're something more than fishes.

NEREIDS *and* TRITONS.

Prior to our coming here  
we'd made up our minds to do so. 8065  
Sisters! brothers! let's be off!—  
[*They*  
we won't have to travel far  
to provide convincing proof  
that we're something more than fishes. *withdraw.*

SIRENS. They're off in a trice 8070  
on a straight course for Samothrace;  
they disappear, sped by the wind.  
What can they be intending to do  
there where the great Cabiri rule?  
Those deities are most peculiar: 8075  
they're constantly self-generating,  
but can't discover who they are.  
Gracious Luna, hear our prayer,  
do not move from there on high,  
lest the darkness disappear 8080  
and the daylight banish us!

*Enter THALES, arriving at the shore with Homunculus.*

THALES. I'd like to take you to old Nereus,  
whose cave, in fact, is close at hand,  
but he's a very stubborn person,  
peevish and uncooperative; 8085  
nothing that mankind ever does  
will please this grouchy fellow.  
But he can look into the future,  
and so enjoys all men's respect,  
and honor as a seer and pundit; 8090  
he often has provided helpful counsel, too.

HOMUNCULUS. Let's take a chance! I'll give his door a knock—  
that cannot hurt my vial or flame.

NEREUS. Does sound of human voices reach my ear?  
What sudden fury fills my heart with rage! 8095  
Those creatures—striving to be peers of gods,  
yet doomed never to change one bit!

When I got old, I'd earned celestial leisure,  
 yet I still felt impelled to give the best some help;  
 but when I saw what, finally, they did, 8100  
 it was as if I'd given no advice at all.

THALES. And yet, Sea-Ancient, you're the one we trust.  
 You are the sage, so don't send us away!  
 Regard this flame—although it may look human  
 it will follow your advice implicitly. 8105

NEREUS. Advice! Have people ever heeded it?  
 A stubborn ear is deaf to any wisdom.  
 However often acts bring bitter self-reproach,  
 mankind remains as self-willed as before. 8110  
 Paternal admonition—I gave Paris plenty  
 before he got entangled with that foreign hussy!  
 He stood undaunted on the coast of Greece,  
 and I told him what my mind's eye saw:  
 smoke filling air deluged with red,  
 slaughter and death beneath the glowing rafters— 8115  
 Troy's judgment day, held fast in rhythmic lines,  
 known for its horror to all succeeding time!  
 The shameless youth laughed at an old man's words,  
 heeded his own desires, and Ilium fell—  
 a giant corpse, its restless agony now over, 8120  
 a welcome feast for Pindus' eagles.  
 Ulysses, too! Did I not prophesy to him  
 the wiles of Circe, the dreadful Cyclopes,  
 his dilatoriness, the rashness of his men,  
 and much more too! Did that help him 8125  
 before, much buffeted and rather late,  
 kind currents brought him to hospitable shores?

THALES. Behavior of that sort may vex the sage,  
 but a good man will try once more;  
 an ounce of thanks will far outweigh 8130  
 tons of ingratitude and make him truly happy.  
 The advice we beg is urgent for this boy:  
 How can he best achieve a real existence?

NEREUS. Don't ruin what I rarely have, a happy mood!  
 Now I'm preoccupied with very different matters. 8135  
 I've summoned all my daughters here today,  
 the Graces of the sea, whom Doris gave me.  
 Neither Olympus nor this earth of yours contains  
 beauty that moves with equal ease.  
 They leap with utter grace of motion

8140

from water-dragon onto Neptune's horses,  
 united with their element so perfectly  
 that by its foam they seem to be raised higher still.  
 Borne in the opal glow of Venus' conch, 8145  
 now Galatea comes, the fairest of them all—  
 she who, since Cypria rejected us,  
 even in Paphos is worshipped as divine  
 and, as her lovely heiress, long has held  
 her templed city and sea-chariot throne.  
 Be gone! This hour of paternal bliss forbids 8150  
 hate in my heart or anger on my lips.  
 Away to Proteus, the man of magic powers—  
 ask him how life's achieved, how one can change his form!  
*He moves from center stage toward the sea.*

THALES. We haven't gained a thing by this maneuver  
 since Proteus, when he's found, will promptly melt away; 8155  
 and even if he answers, what he says  
 only leaves you astonished and perplexed.  
 Still, his kind of advice is what you need,  
 so let's go on and have a try with him! [*They withdraw.*]

SIRENS (*above, on the rocks*).  
 What is it we see gliding 8160  
 across far-distant billows?  
 They are transfigured sea-nymphs  
 who gleam with all the brightness  
 of sails whose whiteness flutters  
 before the shifting breezes. 8165  
 You can now hear their voices,  
 so let's descend and greet them.

NEREIDS *and* TRITONS.  
 What we now bear in triumph  
 should satisfy you fully:  
 Chelone's giant buckler, 8170  
 austere but glorious figures—  
 the latter deities  
 whose praises you must sing.

SIRENS. Gods small in size  
 but great in power, 8175  
 anciently worshipped  
 as saviors of sailors.

NEREIDS *and* TRITONS.  
 Cabiri give assurance  
 our fête won't be disrupted,

|                                                             |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| for in their sacred presence                                | 8180 |
| Poseidon's never hostile.                                   |      |
| SIRENS. We grant you precedence,                            |      |
| for when ships are wrecked                                  |      |
| you are omnipotent                                          |      |
| protecting their crews.                                     | 8185 |
| NEREIDS <i>and</i> TRITONS.                                 |      |
| We've brought along three of them,                          |      |
| but the fourth wouldn't come;                               |      |
| he claimed that he was the one                              |      |
| who did the others' thinking.                               |      |
| SIRENS. A god may ridicule                                  | 8190 |
| another god; you must                                       |      |
| respect all gods, must fear                                 |      |
| the harm that they might do.                                |      |
| NEREIDS <i>and</i> TRITONS. There really are seven Cabiri.  |      |
| SIRENS. And where are the other three?                      | 8195 |
| NEREIDS <i>and</i> TRITONS. That's something we don't know; |      |
| ask on Olympus where,                                       |      |
| unknown to anyone,                                          |      |
| an eighth may well be living,                               |      |
| and where, though stay-at-homes,                            | 8200 |
| they'd graciously receive us.                               |      |
| Idiosyncratic gods,                                         |      |
| they aspire ceaselessly,                                    |      |
| burning with nostalgic hunger                               |      |
| for the Unattainable.                                       | 8205 |
| SIRENS. The prayers we raise                                |      |
| to sun and moon                                             |      |
| reach all the gods,                                         |      |
| and we are well repaid.                                     |      |
| NEREIDS <i>and</i> TRITONS.                                 |      |
| How it redounds to our great glory                          | 8210 |
| that we inaugurate this pageant!                            |      |
| SIRENS. Antiquity's heroes                                  |      |
| come short of your glory,                                   |      |
| great though theirs be;                                     |      |
| although they won the Golden Fleece,                        | 8215 |
| you've won the Cabiri.                                      |      |
| NEREIDS, TRITONS, <i>and</i> SIRENS.                        |      |

Although they won the Golden Fleece,  
We've }  
You've } won the Cabiri!

*The NEREIDS and TRITONS proceed out of view.*

HOMUNCULUS. These ugly figures look to me  
like simple earthen pitchers; 8220  
today savants trip over them  
and break their empty noddles.

THALES. This sort of thing is much sought after;  
the patina enhances the coin's worth.

PROTEUS (*concealed*).  
As fabulist I find all this amusing: 8225  
the odder something is, the sooner it gains credence!

THALES. Where are you, Proteus?

PROTEUS (*ventriloquizing so that his voice first sounds close by, then distant*). Here! And here!

THALES. I'll pardon an old joke if you  
will spare a friend this pointless talk.  
I know you're not where your voice is. 8230

PROTEUS (*as if distant*). Farewell!

THALES (*aside to Homunculus*). He's very near. Quick, flash your lamp!  
He's as inquisitive as any fish,  
and in whatever guise he's lurking  
he'll be attracted by a fire.

HOMUNCULUS. I will release a flood of light at once, 8235  
but not so much that it will crack the glass.  
Proteus (*in the form of a giant turtle*).  
What's this which shines so prettily?

THALES (*covering Homunculus*).  
That's better! If you wish, you'll get a closer look;  
don't mind the bit of effort it will cost you—  
you simply must appear on two good human feet. 8240  
Whoever wants to see what we are hiding,  
may do so only if we grant permission.

PROTEUS (*as a stately human figure*).  
You haven't lost your knack for clever tricks.

THALES. And you still like to change your shape.  
THALES *uncovers* Homunculus.

PROTEUS (*with astonishment*).  
A dwarf emitting light! A novel sight! 8245

THALES. He wants advice on how he should develop.

He came, as I have heard him tell,  
 into this world quite strangely, only half complete.  
 He's well supplied with mental faculties,  
 but sorely lacks substantial attributes. 8250  
 So far he weighs no more than does his vial,  
 but hopes that he may soon obtain a body.

PROTEUS. Yours was a true parthenic birth,  
 for you exist before you ought to.

THALES (*aside*). Unless I err, there is another problem; 8255  
 he seems to be hermaphroditic.

PROTEUS. That only makes success more likely;  
 however he ends up, all will go well. –  
 There is no need for long deliberations:  
 you must begin out in the open sea. 8260  
 That's where you start on a small scale,  
 glad to ingest the smallest creatures;  
 little by little you'll increase in size  
 and put yourself in shape for loftier achievements.

HOMUNCULUS. The breezes are so gentle here, 8265  
 I like the way the air smells fresh and green!  
 Proteus. I well believe that, darling child!  
 Further along it gets to be more pleasant still,  
 and on that narrow reach of sand  
 the air has qualities which words cannot describe; 8270  
 out on its tip we'll have a close-up view  
 of the marine procession now approaching.  
 Come with me there!

THALES. I too will come.

HOMUNCULUS. Three spirits keeping step! Extraordinary!  
 TELCHINES OF RHODES *appear on sea-horses and sea-dragons; they bear Neptune's*  
*trident.*

TELCHINES (*in chorus*). We forged for Poseidon the trident he  
 uses  
 whenever he quiets tumultuous seas.  
 If thundering Zeus deploys heavy clouds,  
 Poseidon then counters their horrible rumbling;  
 although jagged lightning may strike from above, 8275  
  
 great volleys of waves will be sprayed from below;  
 whatever, between them long hurled back and forth,  
 has struggled in terror, the Deep then devours.  
 Tonight he's entrusted his scepter to us,  
 and so we float past you, carefree and festive. 8280

SIRENS. Hail to you who serve Apollo,

happy devotees of Light!  
 Welcome, as the hour inspires  
 adoration of Diana! 8285

TELCHINES. O loveliest goddess of all in the sky,  
 who hear with delight any praise of your brother,  
 you always have graciously listened to Rhodes,  
 which joyously sings endless praises to him. 8290

Beginning day's journey, and ending it too,  
 he gazes upon us with eyes flashing fire.  
 Our mountains and cities, our waters and shores, 8295  
 are lovely and bright, and stand high in his favor.  
 No fog hovers near us, but if it creeps in,  
 a sunbeam and breeze make our island's air clear.  
 In hundreds of forms the god sees himself there,  
 as colossus august, as ephebus indulgent. 8300  
 Before us no people had ever depicted  
 the might of the gods in a pure human form.

PROTEUS. Pay no attention to their boasting!  
 In the sun's sacred, living rays  
 all lifeless works seem futile jests. 8305  
 These creatures sculpt and smelt, by nothing daunted,  
 and when their work is cast in bronze  
 they think it's something highly special.  
 What is the upshot of their pride?  
 They raised the lofty statues of their gods; 8310  
 one earthquake then destroyed them all,  
 and they've long since been melted down.

Terrestrial life in any form  
 is nothing but perpetual grief;  
 water is more propitious to existence; 8315  
 as dolphin, I will bear you now  
 to the eternal sea.  
*(He turns into a dolphin.)*  
 That change was quick!

There you can count on meeting no ill-fortune;  
 I'll carry you upon my back  
 and give you in marriage to the ocean. 8320

THALES. Accede to this commendable request  
 and start your life at life's beginning!  
 And be prepared for rapid changes,  
 for you'll evolve according to eternal norms  
 changing your shape uncounted times, 8325  
 with lots of time before you must be human.  
 Homunculus *mounts* Dolphin-Proteus.



PROTEUS. Come, still a spirit, with me to the open waters  
 where, as a living being, you'll be free  
 to move in all dimensions and directions; 8330  
 just don't aspire to the higher classes,  
 for once you have become a human being  
 you've reached the end of everything.

THALES. That's as may be; it's also good, I think,  
 when one's time comes, to be a proper man.

PROTEUS (*to Thales*). You mean one like yourself, no doubt! 8335  
 Your sort does last a certain length of time—  
 I have been seeing you for many centuries  
 in circles rife with pallid spirits.

SIRENS (*on the rocks*).  
 See the little clouds now forming  
 that great ring around the moon! 8340  
 They are doves, by love inspired,  
 borne on wings of dazzling whiteness;  
 Paphos has dispatched them here,  
 all its ardent feathered hosts.  
 Now our festival is perfect, 8345  
 our delight now unalloyed!

NEREUS (*joining THALES*).  
 A nocturnal traveler may  
 call that ring mere play of light,  
 but we spirits have another,  
 and the only proper, theory: 8350  
 they are doves, and they escort  
 Galatea's sea-borne conch,  
 flying in a rare formation  
 wondrous taught them long ago.

THALES. I can but approve a theory 8355  
 that affords this good man pleasure,  
 and sustains a quiet faith  
 in the warmth of human hearts.

PSYLLI *and* MARSII *appear on sea-bulls, sea-heifers, and sea-rams*).  
 PSYLLI *and* MARSII (*in chorus*).  
 In Cyprus' deep and rugged caverns,  
 not buried under Neptune's jetsam, 8360  
 unshaken by the force of Seismos,  
  
 forever fanned by gentle breezes,  
 and still enjoying peace and quiet

as in the earliest of times:  
 we guard the chariot of Venus 8365  
 and bring in the murmuring darkness,  
 on waves intertwining and graceful,  
 unseen by today's generation,  
 this fairest of daughters to join you.  
 Quietly busy, we have no fear 8370  
 of Eagle or of Winged Lion,  
 of Cross or of Crescent, and do not care  
 who lives and rules above  
 with what ado and in which ways,  
 or how they're killed or driven out 8375  
 with fields destroyed and cities sacked.  
 We bring to you, as we always shall,  
 the loveliest mistress ever served.

SIRENS. Light of motion, not too hasty,  
 with her conch inside your circles, 8380  
 now in intertwining lines,  
 now in rows and serpentine,  
 agile Nereids, draw near,  
 sturdy women, sweet though wild!  
 bring, o Doris' tender daughters! 8385  
 Galatea, your mother's counterfeit:  
 earnest and godlike in mien,  
 rightly granted life eternal,  
 yet, like lovely mortal women,  
 graceful, charming, and alluring. 8390

NEREIDS (*on dolphins, passing Nereus; in chorus*).  
 Luna, half-light will suffice us;  
 shed on these fine youths your brilliance!  
 Hoping for paternal blessing,  
 we have brought dear husbands here.

(To NEREUS.) These are lads whom we have snatched 8395  
 from the breakers' fearful maws;  
 in warm beds of sedge and moss  
 now restored to life and light,  
 they are eager to reward us  
 with their grateful, fervent kisses. 8400  
 Don't rebuff these sweet young men!

NEREUS. To profit twice from one transaction's splendid:  
 you practice charity, and have the joys of love.

NEREIDS. Since you praise what we have done

and approve our being happy, 8405  
let us hold them fast forever  
on our young, immortal breasts!

NEREUS. Although you may enjoy your pretty catch  
and make good husbands of these youths,  
I cannot grant what Zeus alone  
possesses power to bestow.

The waves, that rock you in their cradle,  
allow no love to last forever;  
so, when affection's spell has ended,  
tenderly put them back on land. 8415

NEREIDS. Although, dear boys, we're fond of you,  
in sadness we must leave you;  
we wanted an undying love,  
but heaven won't allow it.

THE SAILOR. We worthy lads would not object  
to more such kindly treatment;  
we've never had so good a life,  
and ask for nothing better.

GALATEA *approaches on her conch.*

NEREUS. My dearest, you're here!

GALATEA. What happiness,  
father!

Linger, my dolphins—I'm held by his look! 8425

NEREUS. Gone by already, they continue on  
in sweeping circles—to them,  
what are the stirrings of a heart!  
Would that they were taking me along!  
Still, a single look is so much pleasure  
that it makes up for the whole long year.

THALES. Hail! Hail again!  
 Beauty and truth fill my being,  
 make perfect my happiness....  
 All things have their beginning in water!!

8435

Water sustains all things that exist;  
may you, Oceanus, rule us forever!  
Unless you sent the clouds  
and fed the copious brooks,  
directed rivers where to go

and filled them properly,  
what would mountain and plain, our earth, be like?  
You're the support of all living freshness.

ALL (echo-chorus of all trionfo groups.)

You are the source of living freshness.

NEREUS. Off in the distance they waver, turn back, 8445  
 but not enough for our eyes to meet;  
 In honor of our celebration  
 the countless host winds round and round,  
 making its linking circles broader still.  
 But now I see—I see it once again— 8450  
 the conch that is the throne of Galatea,  
 in the midst of all  
 it shines like a star.  
 Love is a beacon no crowd can obscure—  
 no matter the distance, 8455  
 it gleams bright and clear,  
 always seems near, always is true.

HOMUNCULUS. All that my lamp illuminates  
 amid these fostering waters  
 has grace and beauty. 8460

PROTEUS. Amid these living waters  
 your lamp, now bright at last,  
 resounds with a glorious tone.

NEREUS. Here in the middle of all this host,  
 what new revelation are we to see? 8465  
 A flame by the conch, at my daughter's feet,  
 now mounts high and strong, now bums sweet and low,  
 as though it were stirring with pulsations of love.

THALES. That is Homunculus, whom Proteus has taken....  
 Those are the symptoms of passion's imperative— 8470  
 I almost can hear the loud groans of its travails.  
 He'll shatter his vial on her glittering throne—  
 there's the flame, there the flash, and already it empties!

SIRENS. What miraculous fire transfigures our waves,  
 that break on each other and shatter and sparkle? 8475  
 Lights wave and hover, the brightness comes nearer,  
 what moves in the darkness is pure incandescence,  
 and all is enveloped in eddies of fire.  
 Let Eros now rule, the creator of all!  
 Hail to Ocean and the waves  
 8480  
 now embraced by sacred fire!  
 Hail to Water! Hail to Fire!  
 Hail this strange and rare event!

All (*all together*). Hail to Air and its soft breezes!  
 Hail to Earth's mysterious depths! 8485  
 To you four, o Elements,  
 here we offer solemn praise!

\_\_\_\_\_

ACT III

BEFORE MENELAUS' PALACE AT SPARTA

*Enter HELEN and CHORUS of CAPTIVE TROJAN WOMEN, with its Leader*

PANTHALIS.

- HELEN. I, Helen, who am much admired, much berated,  
come from the beach where only now we disembarked,  
still giddy from the lively rocking of the waves 8490  
that on their untamed backs, thanks to Poseidon's grace  
and Euros' force, have borne us from the level plains  
of Phrygia to bays that edge our native shores.  
King Menelaus and his bravest warriors  
are now rejoicing, there below, at their return. 8495  
But here I bid you bid me welcome, lofty house  
erected by Tyndareos upon these slopes  
when he, my father, had come back from Pallas' Hill  
and which, while I as happy sister grew and played 8500  
with Clytemnestra here, with Castor too and Pollux,  
he made the most resplendent house in Sparta.  
I hail and greet you, o great double door of bronze!  
It was through you, who opened wide to welcome him,  
that Menelaus, chosen from so many, once  
appeared to me as radiant bridegroom long ago. 8505  
Spread wide your wings again so that, as loyal wife,  
I may fulfil an urgent order of our king.  
Let me come in, and may I leave behind those storms  
which up to now have raged about me fatally!  
For since I left this threshold in a carefree mood 8510  
for Cytherea's shrine, as sacred duty bade,  
and was abducted by the Phrygian pirate there,  
much has occurred that people dwelling far and wide  
delight to tell, but cannot delight the ear of him  
whose story is expanded to fantastic tale. 8515
- CHORUS. Do not, great lady, disdain your glory,  
possession of the highest good!  
Supreme felicity is yours,  
beauty whose fame is all-surpassing.  
His name heralds the hero's coming, 8520  
and so he walks proudly,  
but to all-conquering beauty  
the most obdurate man forthwith submits.
- HELEN. Enough! I have come with my husband here by ship,  
am sent ahead into his city now by him; 8525  
what purpose, though, he entertains I cannot guess.

|                                                            |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Is it as wife that I come here, is it as queen?            |      |
| Is it as victim of the prince's bitterness,                |      |
| atoning for the woes the Greeks so long endured?           |      |
| I am a prize of war—am I a captive too?                    | 8530 |
| I cannot say! For the immortal gods, uncertain,            |      |
| allotted me as beauty's dubious attendants                 |      |
| fame and a fateful life, who on this threshold now         |      |
| beside me stand as gloomy, threatening presences.          |      |
| While in the hollow ship my husband rarely looked          | 8535 |
| at me, nor did he speak one reassuring word                |      |
| but sat, like someone brooding mischief, across from me.   |      |
| No sooner had, however, the first vessels' beaks           |      |
| arrived to greet Eurotas' deep-bayed shores                |      |
| than thus, as if inspired by a god, he spoke:              | 8540 |
| "My warriors here shall disembark in ordered groups        |      |
| that, when they're ranged along the beach, I will inspect. |      |
| But you shall go ahead and shall continue up               |      |
| the fertile banks of our Eurotas' holy stream,             |      |
| driving the steeds across the moist fields' loveliness     | 8545 |
| until you have attained that beautiful plateau             |      |
| where amid awesome mountains Lacedaemon once               |      |
| brought under cultivation broad and fertile fields.        |      |
| Then, enter the royal house that towers there aloft        |      |
| and muster in my name the maids I left behind,             | 8550 |
| including their sagacious ancient stewardess.              |      |
| Let her produce for you the ample treasure-store,          |      |
| your father's gifts and all that I in war and peace        |      |
| myself amassed through never ceasing increments.           |      |
| You will find everything where it's supposed to be:        | 8555 |
| on his return a prince has the prerogative                 |      |
| of finding in his house, at their appointed place,         |      |
| all things kept faithfully as he had left them there.      |      |
| No servant on his own may alter any detail."               |      |
| CHORUS. Let this increasing, glorious treasure             | 8560 |
| refresh your eye, regale your heart!                       |      |
| The graceful chain and well-wrought crown                  |      |
| are lying now arrogant and idle,                           |      |
| but if you enter and challenge them                        |      |
| they'll have to combat you.                                | 8565 |
| Beauty competing with gold, pearls, and jewels             |      |
| is a sight I shall watch with utter delight.               |      |
| HELEN. Our master then gave me a further order still:      |      |
| "When you have duly verified that all is well,             |      |
| in preparation for a holy ritual                           | 8570 |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| collect as many tripods as you think required,<br>all vessels the officiant wants close at hand.<br>Have caldrons ready, cups, and shallow plates as well;<br>have filled with purest water from the sacred spring<br>the great tall jars; moreover, let there be dry wood                                                                   | 8575           |
| available, that rapidly accepts the flame;<br>then, last, be sure there is a knife, well-sharpened, too.<br>I shall entrust all else, however, to your care.”<br>These were the words with which he urged me to depart,<br>but he who ordered thus named nothing that draws breath                                                           | 8580           |
| which he will slay to honor the Olympians.<br>This gives one pause, but I'll not worry more about it;<br>so let such matters all be left to the high gods,<br>who then shall bring to pass whatever they intend,<br>whether this be considered good by human minds,                                                                          | 8585           |
| or bad; as mortals we must bear what they allot.<br>There have been many times when to the earth-bound neck<br>of consecrated beast hands raised the heavy axe<br>and could not consummate the sacrificial rite,<br>stayed by approaching foe or intervening god.                                                                            | 8590           |
| CHORUS. Thought cannot tell you what yet is to be;<br>do not be daunted, o Queen,<br>but proceed!<br>Good or evil comes<br>as a surprise to us mortals;                                                                                                                                                                                      | 8595           |
| even foretold, it is not believed.<br>Did not Troy bum, did we not see<br>death before us, a death of shame?<br>Yet are we not here,<br>happy to serve and be with you,                                                                                                                                                                      | 8600           |
| seeing the dazzling sun in the sky,<br>and what is fairest on earth,<br>you, whose favor is our happiness?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                |
| HELEN. Let come, what may! No matter what impends, I must<br>ascend without delay into this royal house,<br>long missed, much yearned for, and nearly lost through<br>folly,<br>which once again—I know not how—I see before me.<br>My feet no longer bear me with so light a heart<br>up these high steps that as a child I skipped across. | 8605           |
| CHORUS. Sisters so sadly                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | [Exit.<br>8610 |



mourning captivity,  
cast all your sorrows away!

Rejoice with our mistress,  
rejoice with Queen Helen,  
now again happily 8615  
nearing the hearth of her fathers  
with somewhat belated,  
but all the more confident, step.

Praise the benevolent  
home-bringing gods, 8620  
the holy restorers of order!  
Rough though his road be,  
the prisoner freed  
soars on as if pinioned  
while, vainly wasting away, 8625  
the captive yearns  
with arm outstretched from prison-battlement.

Far from her home  
a mortal god laid hold of her,  
and from the ruins of Ilium 8630  
he has brought her here,  
back to the old, now newly resplendent,  
house of her fathers  
where restored and refreshed,  
after raptures and torments 8635  
that no words can describe,  
she can think of her childhood.

PANTHALIS. Now leave the joyous path of song and melody,  
and turn your gazes to the portal's open leaves!  
What is it, sisters, that I see? Is not our queen 8640  
returning with marked agitation in her step?

*(Enter Helen.)*

What can it be, great Queen, that has confronted you,  
not with the welcome of dependents, but with dread,  
there in your house's halls? You do not keep it hidden,  
for I see horror and repugnance on your brow, 8645  
and noble indignation struggling with surprise.

HELEN *(who has left the double door open, agitatedly)*.

Zeus's daughter must be far above all vulgar fear,  
and is not touched by terror's lightly passing hand;  
but horror that emerges from the primal womb

of ancient Night, that surges up like glowing clouds 8650  
of many shapes arising from some mountainous

abyss of fire, will even shake a hero's heart.  
The Stygian gods have placed my entering this house  
under so dread a sign today that, like a guest  
dismissed, I would be glad to say farewell and leave 8655  
this threshold I so often crossed, so long desired.  
But no! Although I have retreated to the light,  
you shall not force me further, whatever powers you be!  
I shall devise a lustral rite; then, purified,  
the glowing hearth will welcome mistress and her lord. 8660  
PANTHALIS. Disclose, o noble Lady, to the maids who serve  
and will support you, what has now occurred.  
HELEN. What I have seen, you'll see with your own eyes,  
unless primordial Night again at once engulfed  
her creature in her magic womb's profundity. 8665  
But I'll declare it, so that you shall know, in words:  
When I, intent upon my mission, reverently  
set foot inside the royal house's somber rooms,  
I marveled at the stillness of empty passageways.  
No sound of busy people moving met my ear, 8670  
no quick and purposeful activity my eye,  
and I saw neither maid nor stewardess appear  
to greet, as once they did, all strangers graciously.  
But when I had drawn near the central hearth,  
there by the barely warm remains of a dead fire 8675  
I saw a tall, veiled woman seated on the ground,  
less like someone asleep than one who meditates.  
Imperiously I summon her to be at work,  
surmising that perhaps she is the stewardess  
appointed by my husband's foresight when he left; 8680  
but she, not stirring, sits enfolded in her robes;  
at last, responding to my threats, she lifts her arm  
as if to order me to leave the hearth and hall.  
In wrath I turn away from her and hurry toward  
the steps that lead to where the nuptial chamber lies, 8685  
richly adorned and with the treasure-room close by;  
but now the monster quickly rises to its feet,  
barring my way peremptorily, and is revealed  
as tall and gaunt, with hollow, blood-discolored eyes,  
and as a form whose strangeness bewilders sight and mind. 8690  
But I speak to the air, since words can only strive  
in vain to build and to endow a shape with life.  
Look! There it is! It even dares confront the light,  
where we command until the royal master comes!  
Yet, either Phoebus, beauty's friend, confines to caves

8695

Night's dread abortions, or they are held in check by him.

PHORKYAS *appears on the threshold and stands between the doorposts.*

CHORUS. I have experienced much, though my hair  
lies on my forehead in youthful waves!  
Many terrible things have I seen,  
warfare's distress, Ilium's night  
when it fell.

8700

And I have heard, through the dust-clouded tumult  
of hard-pressed combatants, the cries of the gods,  
fearful to hear, and Discord's voice  
echoing brazen over the field  
towards its walls.

8705

Still they were standing, Ilium's walls,  
but, alas! the blaze of the flames  
already was moving from neighbor to neighbor,  
spread by the wind it created,  
from one point and then another,  
across the whole night-darkened city.

8710

Fleeing, I saw amid smoke and fire,  
amid the motley tongues of flame,  
the dread approach of angry gods,  
strange, gigantic figures  
striding through thick and somber clouds  
lighted on all sides by fire.

8715

Did I see that, or did my mind,  
held in terror's grip, imagine  
that confusion? What was fact  
I cannot say, but this I know

8720

is certain: here with my own eyes  
I see this hideousness,  
could even touch it with my hands  
if I were not held back by fear  
from threatening danger.

8725

Which of the daughters,  
then, are you of Phorkys,  
his being the family  
to which I'd assign you?  
Can it be that here is come  
one of the Graiae, gray since birth,  
who possess one eye and tooth

8730

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| alternately shared?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 8735 |
| Hideous creature,<br>how dare you appear now,<br>here beside beauty,<br>for Phoebus to judge you?<br>You may come still further forward!                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 8740 |
| What is ugly, he does not see,<br>even as his hallowed eye<br>never has glimpsed a shadow.<br>But, alas, our mortal eyes<br>are constrained by a sad mischance<br>to endure the unspeakable pain<br>that what is condemned as eternally ugly<br>must arouse in lovers of beauty.<br>You are warned that you'll hear our curse<br>if you brazenly affront us,<br>hear invective, imprecations, threats<br>from the mouths of fortunate beings<br>who owe their form to supernal gods.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 8745 |
| PHORKYAS. The saying's old, but what it says profoundly true,<br>that Modesty and Beauty never go their way<br>along the earth's green paths together, hand in hand.<br>In each there dwells inveterate, deep-rooted hate,<br>so that if in their travels they may somewhere meet,<br>each turns her back to her opponent then and there.<br>Then each, with more impetuous step, will hasten on,<br>Modesty sad, but Beauty insolent and bold<br>until, if age has not already made her tame,<br>she is embraced at last by Orcus' hollow night.<br>Come from abroad, I see, you inundate us here<br>with arrogance, even as do the noisy cranes<br>above our heads, whose raucous flight sends down to earth<br>from long-extended cloud its strident croaking tones<br>that tempt the quiet traveler to turn his gaze<br>into the air; but they continue on their way,<br>and he on his; so will it be with us as well. | 8750 |
| And who are you, that you, like frenzied maenads, dare<br>surround with drunken uproar here the king's great house?<br>Who are you, who assail the palace-stewardess<br>with howling, like a pack of dogs that bay the moon?<br>Do you presume I do not know your lineage,<br>you war-begotten, battle-nurtured, callow things,<br>man-hungry too, as much seducing as seduced,<br>who sap the strength of citizen and warrior both!                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 8755 |

To see you in such numbers is as if I saw  
locust swarms plunge and cover green, fresh-planted fields. 8780  
Devourers of the toil of others, who destroy  
the buds of the prosperity on which you feed!  
Wares gained in war, sold second-hand in market places!

HELEN. Who in her presence dares to scold a woman's maids  
encroaches on their mistress' authority, 8785  
for the prerogative is hers alone, to praise  
what merits praise and punish what must be condemned.  
I am, besides, well satisfied with how they served  
and aided me when Ilium's great power  
stood under siege, and when it fell; and no less so 8790  
while we endured our voyage's vicissitudes,  
when people as a rule think only of themselves.  
Here also I expect from them the same light-heartedness;  
Masters don't ask what their slaves are, but only how  
they serve. Be silent, then, and leer at them no more. 8795  
If in its mistress' stead you've taken proper care  
of the king's house till now, the merit will be yours;  
but now that she herself has come, give way to her,  
lest there be punishment instead of generous praise.

PHORKYAS. To chide her household is the great prerogative 8800  
which the august consort of one the gods have blessed  
well merits for long years of prudent governance.  
Since you, whom I now recognize, again as queen  
and mistress of this house resume your former place,  
hold fast the reins long since grown slack, and govern now, 8805  
in charge of the royal treasure and of us as well.  
But first of all, protect me, older than the rest,  
from these who are, when set beside your beauty's swan,  
merely a flock of underfeathered, cackling geese.

PANTHALIS. How ugly seems, set next to beauty, ugliness. 8810  
PHORKYAS. How shallow, next to wisdom, foolish ignorance.

*Members of the CHORUS now answer in turn, stepping forth singly.*

FIRST TROJAN WOMAN.  
Tell us about your parents, Erebus and Night!

PHORKYAS. Then you tell me about your cousin-german, Scylla!

THE SECOND.. Monsters fill up the branches of your family tree.

PHORKYAS. Be off to Orcus, where you'll find your kith and kin! 8815

THE THIRD. Those who might dwell down there were born long after you.  
Phorkyas. You might try to solicit old Tiresias.

THE FOURTH. Your great-granddaughter's daughter was Orion's nurse.  
Phorkyas. The Harpies, I suspect, gave you their filth as pap.

THE FIFTH. What food explains your special lean-and-hungry 8820

look?

Phorkyas. Not blood, for which you have too great an appetite.

The Sixth. And you still more for corpses, loathsome corpse yourself!

Phorkyas. I see the gleam of vampire-teeth in your bold mouth.

Panthalis. I could gag yours by simply saying who you are.

PHORKYAS. If you can name yourself, no riddle will remain. 8825

HELEN. I step between you, not in anger but in grief,  
to order that these stormy countercharges cease,  
since nothing gives the lord and master greater hurt  
than faithful servants' quarrels that fester secretly.

For no concordant echo of his bidding then 8830  
comes back to him as swiftly executed deed;  
instead, it surges like a wilful, noisy storm  
about him as, himself confused, he chides in vain.  
Nor is this all. In your unseemly quarreling  
you've conjured up the spectres of unhappy shapes 8835  
which so crowd in about me that I feel I'm pulled  
toward Orcus, although I'm here amid these native fields.  
Could those be memories? Was I prey to delusions?  
Was I all that? am I that now, to be so evermore,  
the nightmare-shape of one who devastates great towns? 8840  
My serving women shudder; you, the eldest here,  
still stand composed—give me some reassuring word!

Phorkyas. To one who's lived in hopes of fortune many  
years,  
the favor of the gods seems, when it comes, a dream.

But you, augustly favored to the uttermost, 8845  
have in life's course seen only men inflamed with love  
and eager for all kinds of the most daring deeds.  
You were still young when eager Theseus ravished you,  
as strong as Heracles, and truly handsome too ...

HELEN. Took me, a slender doe of ten, to Attica, 8850  
where in Aphidnus' castle I was prisoner ...

PHORKYAS. But then, by Castor and by Pollux soon set free,  
were wooed by many heroes, each a splendid man.

Helen. First in my secret favor, though, Patroclus stood,  
Pelides' counterpart, as freely I confess. 8855

PHORKYAS. Your father's will wed you to Menelaus, though,  
the bold sea-rover and protector of his home.

HELEN. He gave him both his daughter and his land to rule;  
the scion of our wedlock was Hermione.

PHORKYAS. Yet while in distant Crete he boldly gained his rights,  
 an all too handsome guest appeared to lonely you. 8860

HELEN. Why do you bring to mind that semi-widowhood  
 and the appalling consequence it had for me?

PHORKYAS. That trip resulted too in my captivity,  
 and in long slavery for me, free-born in Crete. 8865

HELEN. He promptly sent you here as trusted stewardess  
 of wealth he'd bravely won, and of his castle too ...  
 Phorkyas. Which you had left to seek the city, tower-girt,  
 of Ilium, and love's delights that never tire.

HELEN. Do not speak of delights! An all too bitter grief  
 that never, never ends engulfed my heart and head. 8870

PHORKYAS. And yet they say that you appeared in twofold  
 form,  
 that in both Ilium and Egypt you were seen.

HELEN. Do not confound the chaos of a mind confused.  
 I don't know, even now, which of those two I am. 8875

PHORKYAS. They also say, that from the realm of hollow shades  
 ardent Achilles too came forth to join with you,  
 he who, in spite of fate's decrees, loved you long since.

HELEN. A shade myself, I was conjoined with him, a shade.

That was a dream, the words themselves make this quite  
 clear. 8880

I now grow faint, become a shade to myself too.  
*She sinks into the arms of the Semichorus.*

CHORUS. Silence! Be silent,  
 you evil-eyed evil tongue!  
 From such hideous, single-toothed lips,  
 from so frightful a throat's abyss, 8885  
 what might not surge forth!

He who's malicious while posing as kindly,  
 wolf-fierce under the sheep's woolly fleece,  
 seems far more dreadful to me than the jaws  
 of the dog that's three-headed. 8890

Fearfully we wait to hear  
 when, how, where it will emerge,  
 malice lurking

deep below in a monster's guise!

Here now, instead of offering kindness, 8895  
 Lethe-bestowing, consoling words,

you evoke from all of her past  
less of its good than its evils,  
darkening at the same time  
both the present's radiance 8900  
and the future's  
softly shimmering dawn of hope.

Silence! Be silent,  
so that the soul of our queen,  
now on the verge of flight, 8905  
may stay and may retain  
this form surpassing any form  
on which the sun has ever shone.

HELEN, *who has recovered, again stands at center.*

PHORKYAS.

Come! emerge from those passing clouds, o lofty sun of this our day,  
you who veiled were ravishing, and who now reign in 8910  
dazzling light;  
you can see the world unfolding here before your gracious  
gaze.

Even though they call me ugly, I know well what beauty is.

HELEN.

Though I come, unsteadily, from the void of dizzying  
faintness  
and, because my limbs are weary, would be glad to rest  
again,  
it is proper for a queen, just as it is for all mankind, 8915  
even when surprised by danger, to be calm and stout of  
heart.

PHORKYAS.

Now that in heroic beauty you are standing here again,  
in your eye we read some bidding; tell us, what is your  
command!

HELEN.

Be prepared to rectify the rude delay your wrangling's  
caused;

quick! arrange the ritual that has been ordered by my king. 8920

PHORKYAS.

All is ready in the palace: bowl and tripod, sharpened axe,  
lustral water, needed incense; say what's to be sacrificed!

HELEN. That he left undesignated.

PHORKYAS.

Left unsaid? O word of woe!



HELEN. Why this woe that so affects you?

PHORKYAS. You, o Queen, are the one meant!

HELEN. I?

PHORKYAS. And these.

CHORUS. O woe and sorrow!

PHORKYAS. You shall fall beneath the axe.

HELEN. Heinous! yet not unexpected; poor me!

PHORKYAS. I see no escape.

CHORUS. Woe! And to us what is to happen?

PHORKYAS. She will die a noble death; like the fowler's row of thrushes, you, inside, shall hang and writhe, dangling from the lofty rafter that supports the gabled roof.

(HELEN and the Chorus stand amazed and terrified, in a striking, carefully arranged group.)

All phantoms! — There you stand like lifeless images, 8930  
afraid to quit daylight to which you have no claim.

But mortals too, who all, like you, are only ghosts,  
do not renounce the sacred sunlight willingly;  
no prayer or effort, though, can save them from their  
doom;

all men know this, but very few are pleased by it. 8935

It is enough that you're undone! So, quick, to work!

(PHORKYAS claps her hands, whereupon there appear in the doorway muffled  
dwarfish figures which carry out with alacrity the commands given.)

This way, you somber, spherical monstrosities,  
waddle along—there's pleasant mischief to be done!  
Set down the hand-borne altar with the golden horns,  
and lay across its silver edge the shining axe; 8940  
fill water jars, for you will need to wash away  
the hideous, defiling stains of blackened blood.

Spread out here on the dust the precious rug, so that  
the victim may kneel down in royal dignity  
and, wrapped in it, although with severed head, receive 8945  
all due respect and yet a prompt interment too.

PANTHALIS. Absorbed in thought, the Queen is standing there,  
aside,

her women wilt like meadow-grass beneath the scythe;  
but I, the oldest, as my bounden duty bids,  
will seek a word with you, who are far older still. 8950

Experienced and wise, you seem to wish us well,  
although these silly girls misjudged and flouted you.  
So speak, and say what you can do to rescue us.

PHORKYAS. That is soon said: to save herself, and you to boot  
as adjuncts, will depend entirely on your queen. 8955  
Resolve is needed, and as soon as possible.

CHORUS.  
You who are the wisest sibyl, are the most revered of Fates,  
keep the golden shears from closing, promise us safe days ahead,  
for already we are feeling how our tender limbs will dangle,  
sway, and swing, not pleasantly, that rather would enjoy some dancing,  
then repose on a lover's breast.

HELEN. Let these be anxious! What I feel is pain, not fear;  
but if you know of an escape, you have our thanks.  
To wisdom's circumspection the impossible  
may truly still prove possible. So tell us, speak! 8965

CHORUS.  
Speak and tell us, tell us quickly, how we can escape the horrid,  
nasty nooses that now threaten, like the meanest kinds of necklace,  
to constrict our throats and breathing. We poor things can feel already  
how we'll die of suffocation if you, Rhea, all gods' mother,  
do not deign to pity us. 8970

PHORKYAS. Have you the patience not to interrupt a speech  
that will be long? All sorts of things need to be told.

CHORUS. Patience enough! While listening we'll be alive.

PHORKYAS. The man who stays at home to guard his precious  
wealth, 8975  
who takes good care to caulk his house's lofty walls  
and to secure its roof against the rain's assault,  
will know prosperity however long he live;  
but he who lightly steps with hasty foot across  
his threshold's sacred limit, heedless of all law,  
on his return may well still find the same old place, 8980  
but all things altered, even if not all destroyed.

HELEN. What is the relevance of these familiar saws?  
You say you have a tale; avoid what must offend!

PHORKYAS. This is narrated fact, by no means a reproach.  
As corsair, Menelaus steered from bay to bay 8985  
and ravaged all the shores and islands that he touched,  
returning with the spoils which now sit there inside.  
Before the walls of Troy he spent ten tedious years,  
and for the voyage home, how long I do not know.  
But where Tyndareos' house towers grandly here, 8990  
and elsewhere in this kingdom, how do matters stand?

HELEN. Is, then, abuse so totally ingrained in you  
that you can never move your lips except in blame?  
PHORKYAS. For many, many years no one had occupied 8995  
the valleyed hills that northwards, back of Sparta, rise  
up to Taygetus; there, still a merry brook,  
the Eurotas tumbles down, then broadening its stream  
flows past our valley's reeds, gives nurture to your swans.  
Back in those mountain valleys, quietly, bold men  
have settled, a horde emerging from Cimmerian night, 9000  
and raised a towered fortress that no one can scale;  
from it they harass land and people as they please.  
HELEN. They could accomplish that? It seems impossible!  
PHORKYAS. They had the time—it may be twenty years by now.  
HELEN. Is there one chief? Is this a league of robber bands? 9005  
PHORKYAS. They are not brigands, but they have a single lord.  
I'll not speak ill of him, although I've felt his might.  
He could have taken everything, yet was content  
with what he called, not tribute, but a few free gifts.  
HELEN. How does he look?  
PHORKYAS Not bad! I rather like his looks.  
He's lively, forthright, handsome, and, to a degree  
even in Greece exceptional, intelligent.  
They call this race barbarians, but I would doubt 9010  
that any are more cruel than certain heroes who,  
before Troy's walls, showed cannibal proclivities. 9015  
He is magnanimous, I'd trust myself to him.  
His castle, too, is something you should see yourselves!  
It's very different from the heavy masonry  
erected by your forebears any way at all—  
Cyclopes-like, they heaped rough Cyclopean stones 9020  
one on the other; there, however, everything  
is plumb and level, made with regularity.  
Behold it from without, aspiring heavenward  
firm and tight-jointed and as mirror-smooth as steel!  
To scale such walls—why, thought itself slips off and falls. 9025  
Inside there are great, spacious courtyards, closed about  
with structures of all kinds and purposes.  
There you will see shafts, arches, pillars, large and small;  
platforms and galleries for looking out and in;  
and coats of arms.  
CHORUS. And what are they?  
PHORKYAS. On Ajax's shield, 9030  
there was, as you yourselves have seen, a dragon coiled.

The Seven at the gates of Thebes had on their shields,  
 each one, an image filled with rich significance;  
 there in nocturnal skies one saw the moon and stars,  
 and goddess, hero, ladder, swords, and torches too, 9035  
 and all dire threats that to a noble town bring woe.  
 Such images, inherited from their forebears,  
 are borne in glowing colors by our hero-band;  
 you will see eagles, lions, and also claw and beak,  
 the horns of buffalo, wings, roses, peacock-tails, 9040  
 and golden, argent, azure, black, and crimson stripes.  
 They hang these things, row after row, in their great halls,  
 worlds limitless in their immensity and where  
 you will have room to dance!

CHORUS. And men with whom to dance?

PHORKYAS. The best! Plenty of lively lads with golden curls 9045  
 and youth's ambrosial breath—the scent that Paris had  
 when he dared come too near our queen.

HELEN. Do not forget  
 the role you're playing; finish what you have to say!

PHORKYAS. The final word is yours; but say a clear, firm yes,  
 and I'll surround you with the fortress here and now. 9050

CHORUS. O speak that one short word, and save yourself and  
 us!

HELEN. Am I to fear, then, that King Menelaus might  
 commit so cruel a wrong and do me injury?

PHORKYAS. Have you forgotten in what dreadful way he  
 maimed  
 battle-slain Paris' brother, your Deiphobus, 9055

who claimed and took you, widowed then, with stubborn  
 force  
 as concubine, successfully? Nose, ears, were cut,  
 and more was mutilated—an atrocious sight!

HELEN. He did do that to him, did it because of me.

PHORKYAS. Because of him, he will now do the same to you. 9060  
 Beauty may not be shared; who has possessed it whole,  
 cursing all half-claims, prefers destroying it.  
*(Trumpets in the distance; the Chorus starts in terror.)*  
 Even as the trumpet's blare, with rending force, lays hold  
 of ear and bowels, even so does jealousy  
 claw at the bosom of the man who can't forget 9065  
 what once he owned, and now has lost and owns no more.

CHORUS.

Do you not hear trumpets blaring, see the weapons as they  
flash?

PHORKYAS.

Lord and King, I bid you welcome, glad to answer for my conduct.

CHORUS.

What of us?

PHORKYAS.

You know the truth, that with your eyes you'll see her death  
and, indoors, observe your own; no, there is no help for  
you.

9070

*Pause.*

HELEN. I have thought out what I may safely venture next.

You are a hostile spirit, as I clearly sense,  
and so I fear that you will change what's good to bad.  
But first I'll follow to the castle, led by you;

the rest I know alone; and what, deep in her heart,  
your queen conceals in secrecy while we do this,  
no one shall fathom. Now, old woman, go ahead!

9075

CHORUS. O how glad we are to go there,

and to hasten our step,  
with death behind us  
and a towering fortress'  
inaccessible walls  
rising before us again.

9080

May it shield us well,  
like Ilium's citadel,  
which after all only succumbed  
to contemptible guile.

9085

*(Spreading mists obscure the background, then the front of the set, as may*

*But, what is this?*

Sisters, look round you!

Was it not clear just now?

9090

Streaks of fog are floating up  
from the Eurotas' sacred stream;  
now its lovely sedge-girt banks  
have already vanished from sight;  
nor, alas, do I still see,  
silently gliding, free and proud,  
the elegant swans whose delight  
is companionable swimming.

9095

Nevertheless,  
 I do hear their cry, 9100  
 distant and hoarse, the sound  
 which men say presages death.  
 Let us hope that after all,  
 though salvation has been promised,  
 it does not foretell our doom— 9105  
 doom to us, who are so swan-like  
 with our lovely, long white necks,  
 and to our swan-begotten queen.  
 Alas! o woe to us, o woe!  
 Everything is now concealed 9110  
 by the fog that closes in,  
 even the sight of each other!  
 What can be happening to us?  
 Are we marching ahead or, with short steps,  
 merely floating along? 9115  
 Can you see anything? Is that not Hermes  
 who hovers before us, his golden wand gleaming,  
 who summons, who orders us to return  
 to dreary, twilight-gray Hades,  
 which, filled to repletion 9120  
 with impalpable shapes, is eternally empty?  
 Suddenly the light grows duller; grayed, the lifting fog  
 lacks luster,  
 is as brown as weathered stonework. Walls appear and block our vision,  
 freed again to see their starkness. Can this be a pit? a courtyard?  
 What is certain is, it's dreadful! Sisters, we alas are 9125  
 captives,  
 as much captives as before!

## INNER COURTYARD OF A CASTLE

*The enclosed yard is faced with ornate, fantastic medieval buildings.*

PANTHALIS. Hasty and foolish females, truly typical!  
 Dependent on the moment, sport of every breeze,  
 of good luck and of bad, but bearing neither one  
 with equanimity! One sure to contradict 9130  
 another angrily, then others her in turn!  
 You wail or laugh together only in joy or pain.  
 Be silent now, and hear what in her noble mind  
 our mistress may decide is right for her and us.  
 HELEN. Whatever your name is, where are you, Pythoness? 9135

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <p>             Emerge now from this gloomy castle's vaulted halls!<br/>             And if you went to tell its wondrous hero-lord<br/>             that I am here, so that I may be well received,<br/>             accept my thanks, and bring me to his presence now;<br/>             I want an end of wandering, want only rest.           </p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 9140 |
| <p>             PANTHALIS. You look about you everywhere, my Queen, in<br/>             vain;<br/>             that sorry creature's disappeared—perhaps she stayed<br/>             there in the bosom of the fog from which, somehow,<br/>             we got so quickly here without the need to walk.<br/>             Or else, perhaps, confused, she wanders through this maze<br/>             of many castles strangely blended into one,<br/>             seeking its lord, so that you're greeted regally.<br/>             But look! Already, up above, there is a bustle<br/>             as multitudes of servants hurry back and forth<br/>             by doorway and at windows and on galleries;<br/>             a fitting, noble welcome is assured the guest.           </p>                                                                                                                                                    | 9145 |
| <p>             CHORUS. How my heart is relieved! Look over there and see<br/>             with what dignity, lingering on each step,<br/>             toward us there descend, in well-ordered march,<br/>             all those lovely young men. How, and at whose<br/>             command,<br/>             can so promptly appear, marshaled in regular ranks,<br/>             such a magnificent, boyishly masculine troop?<br/>             What should I most admire? Is it the grace of their stride,<br/>             or the curls of the hair over their radiant brows,<br/> <br/>             or perhaps their twinned cheeks, red with the blush of<br/>             the peach<br/>             and having the same soft fleece-like down?<br/>             I would like a taste, but am afraid to bite,<br/>             since in a similar case—horrid even to say—<br/>             a mouth was filled with ashes.           </p> | 9150 |
| <p>             Now they're advancing,<br/>             these loveliest youths.<br/>             What's that they carry?<br/>             Steps of a throne,<br/>             carpet, a chair,<br/>             curtains, and something<br/>             tent-like, ornate,<br/>             making wreaths of clouds<br/>             which billow above,<br/>             over the head of our queen<br/>             who, as invited,           </p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 9155 |
| <p> <br/>             or perhaps their twinned cheeks, red with the blush of<br/>             the peach<br/>             and having the same soft fleece-like down?<br/>             I would like a taste, but am afraid to bite,<br/>             since in a similar case—horrid even to say—<br/>             a mouth was filled with ashes.           </p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 9160 |
| <p>             Now they're advancing,<br/>             these loveliest youths.<br/>             What's that they carry?<br/>             Steps of a throne,<br/>             carpet, a chair,<br/>             curtains, and something<br/>             tent-like, ornate,<br/>             making wreaths of clouds<br/>             which billow above,<br/>             over the head of our queen<br/>             who, as invited,           </p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 9165 |
| <p> <br/>             or perhaps their twinned cheeks, red with the blush of<br/>             the peach<br/>             and having the same soft fleece-like down?<br/>             I would like a taste, but am afraid to bite,<br/>             since in a similar case—horrid even to say—<br/>             a mouth was filled with ashes.           </p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 9170 |
| <p>             Now they're advancing,<br/>             these loveliest youths.<br/>             What's that they carry?<br/>             Steps of a throne,<br/>             carpet, a chair,<br/>             curtains, and something<br/>             tent-like, ornate,<br/>             making wreaths of clouds<br/>             which billow above,<br/>             over the head of our queen<br/>             who, as invited,           </p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 9175 |

now has ascended the sumptuous seat.

Let us advance

and, properly grave,

line up on its steps.

Let us acclaim, and bless it three times,

9180

the dignity of this reception!

*Everything the Chorus has described is enacted in due course. After the pages and squires have descended in a long procession, Faust appears above, at the top of the stairs, in the court dress of a medieval lord, and then descends slowly and with great dignity.*

PANTHALIS (*observing FAUST attentively*).

Unless the gods, as they so often do, have lent

this man but temporarily his winning presence,

this outward form that so inspires admiration,

this stately dignity, he always will succeed

9185

in what he undertakes—in battles that men fight,

and minor skirmishes with lovely ladies too.

He is indeed to be preferred to many a man

that's held in high esteem whom I have seen myself.

With slow, grave step, respectfully restrained, I see

9190

the prince approaching; turn around, o Queen, and look!

FAUST (*advancing, with a Man, fettered, at his side*).

Instead of fitting ceremonial welcome,

instead of greeting you with reverence,

I offer you, fast-bound in chains, this servant

who, failing in his duty, made me fail in mine.

9195

Before this noblest lady, on your knees!

so that you may confess to her your guilt.

This is the man, great Queen, who was appointed

because of rare acuity of vision

to watch on the high tower and scan

9200

the firmament and earth's expanse to see

whatever may appear in either place,

or move into our valley toward this fortress

from the encircling hills—perhaps great flocks

in waves, perhaps an army; them we protect,

9205

this intercept. Today, what negligence!

You come, but he does not announce your presence;

a most exalted guest is not received

with proper honors. By this crime he's lost

his life, should now be lying in the blood

9210

of death deserved, except that it is yours



alone to punish, as you choose, or pardon.  
HELEN. Since you grant me the lofty dignity  
of judge and regent—even if this be,  
as I conjecture, meant but as a test— 9215  
I shall fulfill the law's first duty now,  
grant the accused a hearing. You may speak!

LYNCEUS, the WATCHMAN.

Let me kneel and gaze upon her,  
whether I'm to live or die,  
for I am the slave already 9220  
of this Lady sent from heaven.

Waiting for the dawning glory,  
looking eastward for the sun,  
suddenly I saw it rising  
by some magic in the south. 9225

Drawn that way, my eyes now sought,  
not the valleys or the hills,  
firmament or earth's expanse,  
but this one and only Sun.

Though endowed with sharp, clear vision, 9230  
like the lynx on its tall tree,  
now I felt as if I strove  
to escape from dream-like darkness.

How was I to find my bearings,  
see the barbican, the gate? 9235  
But the swirling mists soon vanish,  
for this goddess now appears!

Turning eye and heart towards her,  
I imbibed the gentler light;  
beauty of such blinding splendor 9240  
blinded me completely too;

I forgot my watchman's duties  
and the horn I'd sworn to sound.  
You may threaten to destroy me;  
beauty, though, subdues all anger. 9245

HELEN. It is not fitting that I punish guilt  
that I have caused. Alas, what cruel fate  
I suffer, everywhere so to confound  
the hearts of men that they will neither spare  
themselves nor anything we venerate. 9250

Stealing, seducing, fighting, snatching back and forth,  
demigods, heroes, gods, dead spirits too,  
have led me, much bewildered, to and fro;  
my single self wrought great confusion, my double more

and now a third and fourth add woe to woe. 9255  
Dismiss this worthy man, let him be freed;  
may no blame smite one whom the gods make mad! [Exit LYNCEUS.

FAUST. I am amazed, o Queen, to see together  
both the sure archer and the target struck;  
I see the bow that sped the arrow forth, 9260  
and him it wounded. Arrow follows arrow,  
striking me too. I sense their feathered whirl  
on every side, in every castle room.  
What, now, am I? You suddenly make rebels  
of my most trusted vassals, and unsafe 9265  
my walls. I therefore fear my troops may soon  
obey this conquering-unconquered lady.  
What choice have I but to entrust to you  
myself and what I foolishly thought mine?  
Here at your feet in fealty and homage 9270  
let me acknowledge as my Lady you,  
whose coming won you state and throne at once.

*Enter LYNCEUS with a casket, followed by men carrying other chests.*

LYNCEUS. You see, o Queen, that I return!—  
a rich man comes to beg one look  
and, seeing you, at once he feels 9275  
both penury and princely wealth.  
What was I then, what am I now?  
What can one wish to have or do?  
A piercing gaze has lost its worth  
and ricochets from where you sit. 9280

We made our way here from the East  
in hordes so vast that those in front  
knew nothing of those coming last,  
and soon the West had had its day.  
If the first fell, the second stood,  
9285

and then a third came with his lance—  
a hundred's strength sustained each man,  
the thousands slain went unremarked.  
We drove ahead, we surged along,  
were masters everywhere in turn, 9290  
and where one day I ruled as lord,  
another robbed and stole the next.

We'd take a hurried look around,  
then one would seize the prettiest girl,  
the next a bull with good, firm legs;  
9295  
no horse was ever left behind.

But what I liked was looking for  
the rarest items to be found,  
and what some other person had  
was only withered grass to me. 9300

I went in search of precious things  
and followed where my keen eye led;  
I looked in every sack and bag,  
no chest held secrets for my eyes.

And so I soon had piles of gold  
and, best of all, of precious stones:  
this emerald now alone deserves  
to shine resplendent on your heart. 9305

This oval drop from ocean depths  
should float between your ear and lips,  
where rubies would be put to flight,  
made pallid by your roseate cheek. 9310

And so I bring before your throne  
a treasure without counterpart;  
let us now lay here at your feet  
the yield of many blood-stained frays. 9315

Although I bring you many chests,  
I have still others, made of iron;  
let me become your pursuivant,  
and I will fill your treasure vaults. 9320

No sooner are you on this throne  
than mind and wealth and sovereignty  
already are your slaves and bow  
before your beauty's perfect form.

What I clung to and claimed as mine  
is liberated now, is yours;  
I thought it precious, grand and fine,  
but now I see it had no worth. 9325

What I possessed has disappeared,  
is grass that withers when cut down.  
O let one gladdening look from you  
give its full value back to it! 9330

FAUST. Quickly remove these spoils your bravery has gained;

leave unreprieved, yet not rewarded either.  
For all is hers already that this castle 9335

hides in its depths; to offer her some part  
can have no point. Go and arrange our treasures  
in ordered piles; display a glorious picture  
of splendors yet unseen! Make vaulted ceilings  
glitter like fresh-created skies; create 9340

new paradises filled with lifeless life!  
Anticipating her each step, unroll  
a chain of flowered carpets! Let her step  
encounter gentle ground, her eye alight  
on splendor that will blind all but the gods.

LYNCEUS. Your command is without force,  
to obey it, almost farce  
since our lives and wealth now are  
subject to her beauty's power.  
The whole army has been tamed, 9350  
swords are blunted, strong arms lamed;  
set beside this glorious form,  
even the sun is dull, lukewarm;  
set against such loveliness,  
all is empty nothingness! [Exit. 9355

[Exit. 9355

HELEN (*to Faust*).

I wish to speak with you, but you must come up here, be at my side. The empty seat summons its owner and ensures me mine.

FAUST. First let me kneel and by my act of homage,  
noble lady, obtain your grace, then kiss  
the hand that raises me to sit beside you.  
Confirm me as co-regent of your realm  
that knows no bounds, and in one person gain  
a worshiper, a vassal, a protector!

HELEN. I see and hear so many marvelous things;  
I am amazed, would ask you many questions.  
Could you explain why that man's way of speaking  
sounded so strange to me—strange and yet pleasant?  
Sounds seem to be in concord with each other,  
and when one word's been welcomed by the ear,  
another comes to give it a caress.

AUST. If you already like the way our peoples speak,  
I'm sure their singing will delight you too,  
will fully satisfy both ear and mind.  
Delay is dangerous—let's practice it at once;  
responses are what tempt us to employ it.

HELEN. Then tell me how I too can learn the art.

FAUST. It's simple: let the words well from your heart.  
And when your soul is filled with yearning's flame,  
you look around and ask

HELEN.                         who feels the same.

FAUST. There is no past or future in an hour like this,  
the present moment only



Listen to the trumpet sounding,  
 danger is not far away. 9425  
 Menelaus with his legions  
 is approaching to attack you;  
 arm yourselves for bitter fighting!  
 Overwhelmed by all these victors,  
 mutilated like Deiphobus, 9430  
 you will rue your chivalry.  
 Once these cheaper goods are dangling  
 there will be a fresh-honed axe,  
 for your lady, at the altar.

FAUST. Rash interruption, odious intrusion! Even 9435  
 when dangers exist I hate foolish impetuosity.  
 Bad news makes fairest messengers ill-favored,  
 but you, the ugliest, enjoy ill tidings only.  
 This time your effort's wasted, though, and so you may  
 shatter the air with empty sound. Here is not danger, 9440  
 and any danger would be but an empty threat.  
*(Signals, explosions from the towers, trumpets and cornets, martial music. A  
 powerful armed force marches past.)*  
 Now you shall quickly see assembled  
 a loyal company of heroes:  
 he alone deserves his lady's favor  
 who has the strength to give her full protection. 9445  
*(To the leaders of the troops, who detach themselves from their columns and come  
 forward.)*  
 With your bated, quiet anger  
 you surely will gain victory—  
 you youthful blossoms from the North,  
 you, from the East, the flower of strength.  
 Encased in steel, its armor flashing, 9450  
 the host that crushed so many states  
 appears, and then the earth is shaken;  
 they march away, and thunder still is heard.  
 We came to Pylos, there we landed;  
 old Nestor is alive no longer, 9455  
 and soon our unchecked army sunders  
 the bonds uniting petty kings. –  
 No more delay! Back from these walls  
 drive Menelaus to the sea!  
 There, as was his fatal inclination, 9460

he can rove, waylay, and plunder.

I am—this Sparta's queen commands—  
to hail each one of you as Duke;  
lay hills and valleys at her feet,  
and what she gains will be your fiefs.

9465

With walls and ramparts, German Prince,  
you must defend the bays of Corinth;  
you, Goth, are ordered to attack  
Achaia with its hundred passes.

Our Frankish troops shall move on Elis,  
the Saxons are assigned Messene,  
and Normans, when they've cleared the sea,  
shall bring Argolis glory.

9470

Then, settled down, you will reserve  
the might of arms for foreign foes—  
this under Sparta's sovereignty  
which is our queen's ancestral home.

9475

While she sees each of you enjoy  
dominions that shall want for nothing,  
her throne will guarantee your rights,  
assure you of enlightened justice.

9480

FAUST *descends from the throne; the Princes form a circle about him to  
receive special commands and instructions.*

CHORUS. He who wants the fairest as his,  
let him above all be able  
and, in his wisdom, attend to his weapons.

With flattery he may have won  
what he most prizes on earth,  
but it is not easily kept:

9485

devious flattery can lure her away,  
robbers' daring tear her from him;  
lest this occur, he must have foresight!

9490

This is why I praise our prince,  
and rate him higher than others:  
so wisely has he chosen brave companions  
that men of strength stand ready

to obey his every nod.

9495

What he orders, they loyally do—  
each benefits himself and gains  
liberal thanks from his master—  
thus both vassal and lord gain glory.

Who, now, can tear her away  
from his power and possession?

9500

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>             She is his, and he surely deserves her—<br/>             doubly, we think, since we share<br/>             the protection he gives her: impregnable walls<br/>             and, without, an invincible army.           </p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <p>9505</p>                                                                         |
| <p>             FAUST. Now they have all been splendidly rewarded;<br/>             each holds in fief, as generous gift,<br/>             some prosperous land. Let them march off!<br/>             We, at the center, will stand fast,<br/>             and they will eagerly protect<br/>             this almost-island in the dancing waves<br/>             that by a slender chain of hills<br/>             is linked to Europe's outmost mountain spur!<br/>             May every nation share the joys<br/>             of this, the sunniest land of all,<br/>             that now is conquered for my queen,<br/>             to whom it lifted once its eyes<br/>             when as Eurotas' rushes whispered,<br/>             she burst resplendent from the shell<br/>             to dazzle her royal mother's eyes<br/>             and those of her two brothers also.<br/>             This land that looks to none but you,<br/>             that offers you its whole abundance—<br/>             prefer it, as your native land,<br/>             to all the realms that now are yours!<br/>             Although its jagged heights and ridges<br/>             must be content with cold rays from the sun,<br/>             one still can glimpse rocks tinged with green<br/>             and goats that forage for their scanty fare.<br/> <br/>             A spring wells forth, the streams unite and plunge,<br/>             and soon ravines and slopes and meadows all are green.<br/>             Upon the many hills that dot the plain<br/>             you see spread out the moving flocks of sheep.<br/>             Cattle, careful not to crowd each other,<br/>             come singly to the precipice's edge;<br/>             still, there is shelter for them all within<br/>             the many caves that arch the walls of rock.<br/>             Pan guards them there, while nymphs as living<br/>             creatures dwell<br/>             in the moist freshness of shrub-filled ravines<br/>             and, in their urgent search for air and light,<br/>             the close-set trees raise high their heavy branches.<br/>             Primeval woods! The mighty oak stands motionless<br/>             with boughs that branch capriciously;<br/>             the generous maple with its sugar-sap           </p> | <p>9510</p> <p>9515</p> <p>9520</p> <p>9525</p> <p>9530</p> <p>9535</p> <p>9540</p> |



risers uncluttered and bears its weight with ease.

And in the shaded stillness the warm flow  
of mother's milk provides for lamb and child; 9545  
on nearby plains ripe fruit is found,  
and honey trickles from the hollow branch.

Contentment is a birthright here, 9550  
and cheerful cheek and lip express serenity;  
all are immortal where they are,  
for they are satisfied, are healthy.

And so, in this untroubled brightness, 9555  
each precious child attains maturity.  
We see this miracle, and are compelled to ask:  
must these be gods, or are they mortal men?

Among the shepherds here, and in their guise,  
Apollo was no fairer than the fairest,  
for when the sway of nature is unhindered 9560  
all realms of being merge as one.

*(He seats himself beside HELEN.)*

Now that we have achieved this oneness,  
let what is past, be past forever!  
Remember the high god who gave you being,  
that only in this primal world do you belong! 9565

No mighty fortress need confine you!  
Arcadia, while near to Sparta,  
is a domain of ever-youthful vigor  
where we can dwell in perfect bliss.

When you were lured to flee to this fair soil 9570  
fate granted you its greatest favor!  
Our thrones shall now become a bower,  
our happiness Arcadian and free!

*The stage set changes completely. Enclosed arbors rest against a series of  
grottos. A*

## SHADED GROVE

*extends to the cliffs that rise on all sides. Faust and Helen are not visible. About  
the stage lie members of the Chorus, sleeping.*

PHORKYAS. I do not know how long these girls have been  
asleep,  
or whether in their dreams they can have dreamt the things 9575  
that I have seen so clearly with these very eyes.  
This being so, I'll wake them. They will be amazed,  
and you their bearded elders too, who sit down there

hoping these marvels may be plausibly explained. –  
Up from your beds! Just hurry, give your curls a toss! 9580  
And clear your eyes of sleep! Stop blinking! Hear me speak!

CHORUS.

Go ahead and speak! Do tell us all the marvels that have  
happened!  
What we would most like to hear is something quite  
incredible,  
since we find it very boring to keep looking at these cliffs.

PHORKYAS.

Are you children bored already, though you've scarcely rubbed your  
eyes?

Listen, then! Here in these caverns, grottos, bowers, was provided  
for our lord and for our lady, just as for idyllic lovers,  
shelter and security.

CHORUS.                      What, there! Inside?

PHORKYAS.

There, isolated  
from the world, they called on me, alone, to serve them privately.  
Highly flattered, I stayed near them, but did not abuse their 9590  
trust;  
thus I kept my eyes averted, going off one way or other  
to collect roots, barks, and mosses, since I know their special virtues,  
and the pair was left alone.

CHORUS.

You make it sound as if inside there one might find entire worlds—  
lakes and streams, and woods and meadows. You are quite a story–  
teller!

PHORKYAS.

Yes, one might, you innocents; down there are depths no man has fath-  
omed!

Musing, I investigated rooms and courtyards never ending.  
Suddenly a peal of laughter echoes through the spacious grottos;  
lo! a boy is leaping from our lady's lap into her consort's,  
then from there back to his mother; I am deafened by 9600  
alternate

sounds of cooing and caresses, of love's silly, playful  
banter,  
sportive cries, and shouts of joy.

Naked, faunlike but not bestial, a true wingless genius,  
he leaps down and hits the ground there, and the solid  
earth, reacting

bounces him a long way upwards, and his second or third 9605

leap  
 lets him touch the vaulted roof.  
 Then his mother cries, much worried: Keep on bouncing all you please,  
 but be sure you don't try flying; power of flight has been denied you!  
 And his caring father warns him: Earth possesses the resilience  
 which propels you ever higher; let your toe but touch the 9610  
 ground,  
 and at once you will be strengthened like the son of Earth, Antaeus!  
 Then he leaps atop these massive cliffs and, like a batted ball,  
 soon is bouncing every which way from one ridge-crest to another.  
 Suddenly he disappears, gone in the fissure of a gorge,  
 and it seems that we have lost him. Mother weeps as father comforts;  
 worrying, I shrug my shoulders. But he reappears, and how!  
 Are there treasures lying hid there? He has donned, now, flowered  
 robes,  
 sumptuous and dignified.  
 From his arms there dangle tassels, ribbons flow about his breast;  
 like a miniature Apollo, in his hands the golden lyre, 9620  
 he steps to the comice-rim, all self-assurance; we're  
 astounded.  
 And his parents, captivated, clasp each other, heart to  
 heart.  
  
 Every gesture, every motion, now proclaims him, still a 9625  
 boy,  
 future master of all beauty, one within whom there shall  
 live  
 all eternal melody; it is as such that you shall hear,  
 and as such that you shall see him, to your infinite  
 amazement.  
 CHORUS. This, then, is your marvel,  
 daughter of Crete? 9630  
 Can you never have listened  
 to what the poets have taught us?  
 Have you not heard the rich store  
 of Ionia's legends,  
 ancient tales of heroes and gods, 9635  
 the old fables of Hellas?  
 All that happens today,  
 whatever it be,  
 is but a dreary echo  
 of the great days of our forebears; 9640  
 the story you tell can't compare  
 with what pleasing invention,

more believable than truth,  
sang of the son of Maia.

Chattering gossips, his nurses, 9645  
foolishly lacking in foresight,

wrap the infant just born,  
prettily little but sturdy,  
in purest, downiest diapers, 9650  
in richly embroidered swaddling bands.

In no time, however, the rascal,  
little but sturdy and cunning,  
is freeing his tender limbs,  
fully supple already,

and the purple shawl that confined him, 9655  
he leaves in place of himself—

like a butterfly ready for life  
and unfolding its wings as it agilely  
slips from pupal confinement  
and ventures, wantonly fluttering, 9660  
into the sunlit air's radiance.

Even so he, agile indeed,  
demonstrates promptly now  
by his skill and adroitness 9665  
that as guardian genius he always  
will favor the thief and the rascal,  
and all who are eager for profit.

Soon from the Lord of the Sea he has stolen  
the trident and, right from its sheath,  
slyly Ares' own sword, 9670

as well as Phoebus' arrow and bow,  
and the tongs of Hephaestus,  
and would, but for fear of fire,  
take even Zeus' lightning, his father's;  
but he does, by tripping him up, 9675  
vanquish Eros as wrestler  
and steal, while Cypria holds him,  
from off her bosom the girdle.

*Pleasing, purely melodic music of stringed instruments is heard from the grotto. All  
listen attentively, and soon seem deeply affected by it. – From this point to the  
pause after v. 9938 there is full musical accompaniment.*

PHORKYAS. Hear those strains of lovely music,  
liberate yourselves from myth! 9680  
Do not cling to ancient gods—

a sorry lot that's now passé.

What you say, no more has meaning;  
we today are more exacting:  
nothing can affect our hearts  
that does not have its source in feeling.

9685

PHORKYAS *moves back to the cliffs.*

CHORUS. Dreaded creature who can like  
these ingratiating sounds,  
we, who've been restored to life,  
know that we are moved to tears.

9690

Let the sun's light lose its splendor  
now that dawn is bright within us  
and we find within ourselves  
what the world will not provide.

*Enter Helen, Faust, and Euphorion in the costume already described.*

EUPHORION. If you hear the songs of children,  
their delight is yours as well;  
when you see me dance to music,  
your parental hearts dance too.

9695

HELEN. Love, to make us humans happy,  
brings a worthy pair together,  
but to make their pleasure perfect  
it creates a precious Three.

9700

FAUST. All our wishes are fulfilled:  
I am yours, and you are mine;  
as we now stand here united  
may we be so evermore!

9705

CHORUS. For this couple there are promised  
many years of family happiness  
in the aura of their child.

It is all profoundly touching!

9710

EUPHORION. Let me try skipping,  
then let me try leaping!  
Now what I want most,  
want most of all,  
is to go high,  
high up in the sky.

9715

FAUST. Try to be careful,  
don't take any risks!  
We do not want  
our darling to fall

9720

and to be badly hurt—  
we wouldn't survive that!

EUPHORION. I won't stick around  
on the ground any longer;  
let go of my hands, 9725  
don't touch my hair,  
leave my clothing alone!  
They're mine, are mine!

HELEN. Stop and remember  
to whom you belong, 9730  
think how you're hurting us,  
how you're destroying  
the wonderful family  
we three established!

CHORUS. Their oneness, I fear 9735  
won't last much longer!

HELEN AND FAUST.  
Please, for your parents' sake  
try to control  
this violent excitement. 9740  
Have a nice quiet time  
here in the country!

EUPHORION. Simply to please you  
I'm holding back,  
(*He weaves through the Chorus, drawing them into a dance figure.*)  
am quietly dancing 9745  
with these happy girls.  
Is this kind of motion  
and music all right?

HELEN. Yes, that's what we like;  
show those young beauties 9750  
how one should dance.

FAUST. I wish this were over!  
All these mad antics  
make me uneasy.

CHORUS (*singing, as it performs intricate figures with EUPHORION*). 9755  
When your arms move  
with such delicate grace  
and you are tossing  
that bright curly hair,

when your foot lightly  
glides over the ground 9760  
and, linked all together,  
we whirl and we dance –  
then, lovely boy,  
you've accomplished your aim:  
all of our hearts 9765  
are now become yours.

*Pause.*

EUPHORION. You shall be all  
light-footed does—  
hurry, away,  
to start this new game! 9770  
I'll be the hunter,  
you the ones chased.

CHORUS. In order to catch us  
you won't need to run,  
for all we desire, 9775  
our ultimate hope,  
is to embrace  
so handsome a creature! *[Exeunt.*

EUPHORION. Off through the grove  
in every direction! 9780  
I can't bear to have  
what's easily gained;  
only what's conquered  
affords true delight. *[Exit.*

HELEN AND FAUST. What temerity and madness—  
there's no hope of moderation!  
Hear the sound of hunting horns  
echo in the wood and valley—  
what disorder! What an outcry! 9785

CHORUS (*entering singly, in haste*).  
He raced past each one of us; 9790  
scorning us derisively,  
now he's dragging back with him  
the wildest girl there is among us.

*Enter EUPHORION, carrying a young girl.*

EUPHORION. Here I bring this stalwart girl  
and shall enjoy what I have won; 9795  
for my pleasure and delight

I embrace her struggling breast,  
 kiss the mouth that shrinks from me,  
 demonstrate my stronger will. 9800

GIRL. Let me go! I too possess  
 strength of mind and force of soul—  
 peer of yours, a woman's will  
 does not have to be so pliant.  
 Do you think that I am helpless?  
 Fool, to trust your arm so much! 9805  
 Keep your hold as I enjoy  
 letting you bum with flames that scorch!  
     *(Bursting into flame, she rises out of sight.)*  
 Follow me into the air,  
 or into the chilly grave,  
 if you'd catch the prize you've lost! 9810

EUPHORION *(shaking off the remnants of flame)*.  
     How can I stay here,  
     cramped by these cliffs  
     in the midst of a forest—  
     youth is still vital!  
     There *are* winds that roar 9815  
     and billows that thunder.  
     I hear them now distantly!  
     O, to be near!  
     EUPHORION *leaps ever farther up the cliffs*.

HELEN, FAUST, AND CHORUS.  
     Must you play the mountain goat!  
     Our great fear is that you'll fall. 9820

EUPHORION. Higher still—I must climb higher,  
     gain an ever broader view!  
     Now I know where I am!  
     This is the center 9825  
     of Pelops' island,  
     kin to both earth and sea.

CHORUS. Can't you endure  
     peaceful mountains and woods?  
     Let us now gather  
     grapes in the vineyards, 9830  
     grapes on the hillside,  
     figs, and gold apples.



|            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                  |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
|            | Stay and be good<br>in this land that's so good!                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                  |
| EUPHORION. | Do you dream that there's peace?<br>Dream on, if you must!<br>War! is the countersign,<br>Win! the echoing shout.                                                                                                                                                | 9835                             |
| CHORUS.    | He who in peace-time<br>wants war again,<br>has bidden farewell<br>to hope and its joys.                                                                                                                                                                         | 9840                             |
| EUPHORION. | Those this endangered land<br>bore to face danger,<br>free and courageous,<br>not stinting their blood,<br>filled with a holy zeal<br>nothing can quench—<br>may, for these fighters,<br>hope be rewarded!                                                       | 9845<br><br><br><br><br><br>9850 |
| CHORUS.    | Look! Look up! How high he's climbed,<br>though he does not seem to dwindle:<br>a warrior on his way to triumphs,<br>wielding steel, in brazen armor.                                                                                                            |                                  |
| EUPHORION. | Walls and moats do not protect them,<br>everyone is self-reliant—<br>the sure fortress for survival<br>is man's unrelenting will.<br>If you want to live unconquered,<br>off to battle, lightly armed!<br>Let your wives be Amazons,<br>and a hero, every child! | 9855<br><br><br><br><br>9860     |
| CHORUS.    | May sacred Poetry<br>always rise heavenward!<br>Shine, fairest star,<br>from the distance forever!<br>Yet we still glimpse the light<br>and still hear the song,<br>have cause to rejoice.                                                                       | 9865                             |
| EUPHORION. | No, this is not a child you see,<br>I am a young man fully armed;<br>companion of strong, free, bold men,<br>in spirit I have shared their deeds.                                                                                                                | 9870                             |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Away!</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">See there,</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">the path to glory lies before us!</p> <p>HELEN <i>and</i> Faust. You're no sooner summoned into life</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">and enjoy a day's serenity</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">than you yearn, from dizzying steps,</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">for a place of hurt and pain.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Don't you care</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">for us at all?</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Is the joy we share a dream?</p> <p>EUPHORION. Hear that thunder on the sea!</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">It re-echoes through the valleys;</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">might meets might, in dust, on water—</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">troop after troop knows agony.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Now, at last,</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">men understand:</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;"><i>Death!</i> is an imperative.</p> <p>HELEN, FAUST, <i>and</i> CHORUS.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Dreadful word that makes us shudder!</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Do you also need to die?</p> <p>EUPHORION. Should I watch from far away?</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">No! Their distress and cares are mine.</p> <p>HELEN, FAUST <i>and</i> CHORUS.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Rash pride and peril</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">together mean death.</p> <p>EUPHORION. Not so! Wings spread</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">to sustain me!</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">I must get there—</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">let me have flight!</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;"><i>He flings himself into the air. For a moment his garments support</i></p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;"><i>him and his head radiates light; a luminous tail follows him.</i></p> <p>CHORUS. Icarus! Icarus!</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Grievous event!</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;"><i>A handsome young man falls at the feet of HELEN and FAUST; the</i></p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;"><i>body suggests a well-known figure, but disappears immediately as</i></p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;"><i>the aureole rises skywards like a comet while the garments remain</i></p> <p style="margin-left: 80px;"><i>on the stage.</i></p> <p>HELEN <i>and</i> FAUST. Brief joy has ended</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">in merciless pain.</p> <p>EUPHORION (<i>from below</i>). Mother, don't leave me here</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">down in the darkness, alone!</p> | <p>9875</p> <p>9880</p> <p>9885</p> <p>9890</p> <p>9895</p> <p>9900</p> <p>9905</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*Pause.*

CHORUS (*dirge*).

Not alone, no matter where you are!  
for we know who you must be;  
you may hasten from this life,  
but our hearts are always with you. 9910

It is hard to express sadness  
for a fate we praise and envy:  
whether day was bright or dreary,  
your bold song had lofty beauty.

Although born for this world's blessings, 9915  
endowed with strength and of high lineage,  
soon you sacrificed your birthright  
and an early blossom died:

eyes that clearly saw the world,  
empathy with every feeling, 9920  
ardent love for woman's worth,  
and a music all your own.

But your headlong rush enmeshed you  
in the snare that saps our will,  
and you made yourself the foe 9925  
of propriety and law;  
yet at last a pure high purpose  
filled your soul again with substance;  
you had hopes of great achievement—  
you were not fated to succeed. 9930

Who can succeed? Somber question  
that, as all mankind lies bleeding,  
speechless, on a day of doom,  
muffled fate declines to answer. –  
Now strike up new songs once more, 9935  
be no longer deeply bowed;  
earth will engender songs again  
as it always has before.

*Complete pause. The music ceases.*

HELEN (*to FAUST*).

An ancient saw, alas! holds true for me as well:  
beauty and happiness can form no lasting union. 9940  
The bond of love, the tie to life, are tom asunder;  
I mourn for both and, with a sorrowful farewell,  
I fling myself, this one more time, into your arms. –  
Persephoneia, now receive this youth and me!

HELEN *embraces FAUST and vanishes, leaving her robes and veil in his arms.*

PHORKYAS (*to FAUST*).

Hang on to what, after all this, is left you! 9945  
 That dress—hold on to it! Already daemons  
 eager to drag it to the underworld,  
 are snatching at its comers. Hang on tight!  
 No longer your lost goddess, still it has  
 celestial attributes. Turn to account 9950  
 this priceless gift and soar on it aloft!  
 As long as you endure it will transport you  
 through the skies, far from the common world.  
 We'll meet again—far, far away from here.  
 HELEN'S *garments, dissolving into clouds, envelop* FAUST, *lift him up, and carry him*  
*away.*  
 PHORKYAS (*picking up EUPHORIONS clothes and lyre and advancing to the*  
*proscenium, where he raises them aloft*).  
 Here is another lucky find! 9955  
 I'm well aware the flame's gone out,  
 but doubt the world feels any loss.  
 Enough is left to get your poets started  
 and make for bitter competition in their trade;  
 although I can confer no talents, 9960  
 at least I have some clothing I can lend them.  
 PHORKYAS *sits down beside a column of the proscenium.*  
 PANTHALIS. Come, quickly, girls! No more befuddled by that  
 hag  
 from ancient Thessaly, we're rid at last of magic spells  
 and of that roar of jingling, complicated notes  
 that disconcert the ear and, even more, the mind. 9965  
 Now down to Hades! where our queen, with measured  
 tread,  
 has gone so swiftly. Let her faithful servants' feet  
 follow directly, step by step, the path she trod.  
 We'll find her at the throne of the Inscrutable.  
 CHORUS. Queens, as well we know, remain happy everywhere; 9970  
 even in Hades they outrank all others,  
 are proud companions of their peers  
 and intimates of Queen Persephone.  
 We, however, in the background—  
 distant fields of asphodel— 9975  
 placed beside long rows of poplars,  
 and a mass of barren willows,  
 what entertainment will we have?

Some bat-like kind of squeaking,  
dreary words in ghostly whispers! 9980

PANTHALIS. Those who have earned no fame and lack high  
purpose  
belong to elemental matter—so, begone!  
My ardent, loyal desire is to join my queen;  
no less than merit, faith preserves identity. [Exit. 9985

CHORUS. We have been restored to the day and its light; 9985  
that we are persons no longer,  
we are well aware—  
but to Hades we need never return.  
Now, as ever-living Nature  
claims us spirits as her own, 9990  
we make our valid claims of her.

A PART OF THE CHORUS.

Here amid these myriad branches, softly stirring, gently rustling,  
we shall lure with our endearments, from the roots, the springs of life  
into each bough and, now with leafage, now with blossoms in  
abundance,  
ornament the fluttering tresses, freed to prosper in the air. 9995  
When the fruits drop, there will gather gladdened herds and happy  
people,  
pressing briskly, coming quickly, eager to collect and taste them;  
all will then bend down around us, as if to the primal gods.

A SECOND PART.

We, in gentle undulation, will caress these precipices  
clinging to their even surface, now a distant-gleaming 10,000  
mirror;  
to all sounds we'll be attentive, to song of birds, to reedy  
pipings,  
prompt to answer all the voices, even Pan's terrific cry;  
murmurs we return as murmurs; when it thunders, then our  
thunder  
doubly, triply, tenfold answers with its own augmented  
roll.

A THIRD PART.

Sisters! We, more fond of motion, will pursue the hurrying  
streams  
lured to seek those distant ranges with their hills so richly  
mantled;  
going always downwards, lower, with meandering waves  
we'll water  
first the pasture, next the meadows, then the garden by the  
house

whose existence is denoted by the tips of cypress rising  
over landscape, placid water, and the shore along a river. 10,010

THE FOURTH PART.

You may go as suits your wishes! Gently sighing, we'll encircle  
closely planted slopes and hillsides where the well-staked vine grows  
green; there the vintner's constant presence will afford us demonstration  
of his loving patient labors and their never sure success.

As he toils with hoe or shovel, while he's hilling, pruning, 10,015  
tying,

all the gods receive his prayers—Phoebus, though, most  
frequently

The voluptuary, Bacchus, disregards his faithful servant  
and reclines in cave or arbor, prattling with the youngest  
faun;

all that he has ever needed for his semi-drunken visions  
can be seen beside his grottos, in their everlasting coolness 10,020  
stored for him in wineskins, amphorae, and other vessels.

After all the gods together—Helios the most of all—  
have piled high the grapes they fanned and moistened, warmed and  
heated,

suddenly there's life and motion where the quiet vintner labored,  
noise amid the year's new leafage, scurrying from vine to 10,025  
vine.

Baskets creak and buckets rattle, dossers groan on bearers'  
backs;

all moves toward the giant winevat and the treaders' sturdy  
dance;

thus, then, is the sacred plenty of the pure-born juicy berry  
rudely crushed; to foam and splatter, all becomes an ugly  
mash.

Now we hear a piercing clangor, brasses clash and gongs  
are struck:

from the veil of mysteries, lo! Dionysus has emerged;  
he appears with his attendants, satyrs whirling satyresses,  
and all the while there's the wild braying of Silenus' long-  
eared beast.

No decorum any longer—it's been crushed by cloven feet!  
All the senses whirl, are giddy, every ear is cruelly  
deafened. 10,035

Drunkards grope for cups and glasses, heads are splitting, paunches  
bursting;

but if someone urges caution, he but makes their passions wilder:  
to provide new wine with storage, last year's wineskins must be emptied!

*The curtain falls. PHORKYAS in, the proscenium, rises to a gigantic height then steps down from the cothurni, pushes back mask and veil, and stands then steps down from the cothurni, pushes back mask and veil, and stands revealed as MEPHISTOPHELE, prepared to comment on the play, as much as may be necessary, in an epilogue.*

---

ACT IV

HIGH MOUNTAINS

*Rugged, serrated peaks. A cloud floats in and touches a peak, then settles on a projecting ledge; it then divides.*

FAUST (*stepping forth from the cloud*).

As my eyes see the utter solitude below  
I step with care onto the margin of these peaks 10,040  
and send away the cloud that during sunlit days  
softly transported me across the land and sea.

It slowly separates from me without dispersing.  
The greater part, a massive sphere, is pressing eastward,  
followed by my admiring and astonished gaze: 10,045  
although its changing billows, as they move, divide,  
it seems to shape a figure. – Yes, my eyes are right! –

I see, stretched out in sun-gilt splendor on a couch,  
a gigantic, yet still godlike, woman's form.  
In its majestic loveliness it hovers there 10,050  
within my sight, resembling Juno, Leda, Helen!

Already it moves on! Like distant icy masses  
piled high upon each other, there in the east it stays,  
a dazzling symbol of these fleeting days' vast import.

Yet one bright tenuous streak of mist still hovers near 10,055  
and cheers me with its cool caress on heart and brow.

Lightly it rises, hesitates, goes higher still,  
and draws together, – Am I entranced by a mirage  
of what, when young, I valued most, but lost long since?  
Deep in my heart youth's first rich springs well up; I see 10,060  
the image of love's dawn, its carefree happiness—  
that swiftly felt, first, scarcely comprehended vision  
which, had it lasted, would surpass all other treasures.

Like inward beauty of the soul the lovely form  
grows clearer, rises, not dissolving, to the ether, 10,065  
and draws away with it my best and inmost self.

*A seven-league boot plumps itself down, immediately followed by another; after*

*MEPHISTOPHELES has stepped down from them, they stride quickly away.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. I'd call that making proper progress! –

But tell me now, what's gotten into you  
and made you land amid the horror  
of these hideous maws of rock? 10,070

I know them well, though not in this location,



since they once paved the floor of hell.

FAUST. You're never at a loss for silly legends,  
and now, I see, you're going to offer me another.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*with gravity*).

When God, our lord—for reasons I well understand— 10,075  
banished us from the skies down to those lowest depths  
where all about a glowing core  
eternal fire feeds on its own flames,  
we found ourselves, despite—too much—good light,  
in very cramped, uncomfortable quarters. 10,080  
We devils all began to cough,  
emitting puffs from top and bottom;  
sulphuric fumes inflated hell  
with such a vast amount of reeking gas  
that very soon the earth's flat crust, 10,085  
thick though it was, could only crack and burst.  
What we see now is upside down,  
the bottom's now become the top—  
this is the basis of those glorious doctrines  
that turn all values topsy-turvy. 10,090  
And so we fled our over-heated dungeon  
and gained new, greater freedom as princes of the air.  
I have disclosed a mystery, one long concealed  
and only recently revealed to all the world. (Eph. 6, 12.)

FAUST. I—I'll always see in mountains silent grandeur 10,095  
and do not ask about their whence or why.  
When Nature, from herself, created nature,  
she made this globe complete and perfect;  
pleased with its peaks and its abysses,  
she set the mountains and the rocks in line, 10,100  
then formed the easier slopes below  
and drew them gently outward to form valleys.  
There all is verdant growth, and for her happiness  
chaotic madness is redundant.

MEPHISTOPHELES. How you talk! You think that's all as clear as 10,105  
day,  
but one who saw it all knows better.  
I was down there when the abyss was seething  
and welled up raising floods of flame,  
when Moloch's hammer, welding rock to rock,  
cast bits of shattered mountains far and wide. 10,110  
The heavy chunks lie where they don't belong,  
and what ballistic force can be the explanation?

Philosophers and scientists are at a loss:  
there is the rock, they say, you'll have to let it lie,  
since we are hopelessly confounded by it. 10,115  
Only the honest common people know the truth  
and, in their ancient wisdom,  
are not to be dissuaded from it:  
the rock's a miracle, and credit's due to Satan. 10,120  
My travelers, with the crutch of their credulity,  
hobble along to Devil's Rocks and Bridges.

FAUST. It's interesting to see, I must admit,  
the view that devils have of nature.

MEPHISTOPHELES. A fig for yours! Be nature as it may,  
I'll stake my life on this: the devil was on hand! 10,125  
Our kind are specialists in what's colossal,  
upheaval, chaos, violence—you see their signs about you. –  
But let me now return to clear and simple language.  
Back here upon our earth, has nothing pleased you?  
You've now surveyed, in measureless expanses, 10,130  
the kingdoms of the world and all their glory. (Matt. 4.)  
Yet I suppose, since nothing ever suits you,  
that you saw nothing you desired.

FAUST. You're wrong! Something important aroused my  
interest.  
Try guessing!

MEPHISTOPHELES. That won't take too long. 10,135  
I'd pick some capital whose center  
sustains itself by dreary trade,  
with crooked narrow streets and gabled peaks,  
a crowded market filled with onions, cabbage, beets,  
and meat stalls where flies hang about 10,140  
to feast upon the greasy joints;  
there you are sure, at any time,  
to find activity and noisesome odors;  
next, broad streets and spacious squares  
pretending to gentility; 10,145

and finally, outside the city gates,  
suburbs stretching on for ever.  
To top all that, I'd love to watch  
the carriages, the noisy traffic,  
the teeming ant-like colonies 10,150  
that never cease their to and fro.  
And if I drove or if I rode,  
I'd always be the cynosure  
of people by the hundred thousands.

FAUST. That could not ever satisfy me! 10,155  
 It's nice to see the population grow,  
 the people make a fairly decent living,  
 and get some culture and more education—  
 but you are only training rebels.

MEPHISTOPHELES. And then, aware of my importance, 10,160  
 I'd build a chateau in some pleasant spot,  
 converting wood and hill, champaign and farmland,  
 into a park of great magnificence 10,165  
 with velvet lawns before its walls of verdure,  
 straight paths, correctly managed shadows,  
 cascades that plunge in pairs down rocks,  
 and jets from every kind of fountain  
 that rise imposingly while at their sides  
 a thousand piddling sprays are hissing,  
 I'd also have less formal residences 10,170  
 for rendezvous with lovely ladies  
 and in them spend time without end  
 in pleasantly gregarious solitude—  
 I speak of *ladies* for a simple reason:  
 I always think of beauties in the plural. 10,175

FAUST. Sardanapalus—tawdry, but still quite in fashion!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Perhaps I'll guess what's fired your ambition  
 —  
 something sublime and daring, I am sure!  
 Did you, while floating near the moon, not have  
 the lunatic desire for a lunar voyage? 10,180

FAUST. No, not at all! Here in this world  
 there still is room enough for deeds of greatness.  
 Astounding things shall be achieved—I feel  
 in me the strength that will sustain bold efforts.

MEPHISTOPHELES. So what you want is to win glory? 10,185  
 It's obvious that you have been with heroines.

FAUST. I wish to rule and have possessions!  
 Acts alone count—glory is nothing.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Nevertheless, there will be poets glad to tell  
 posterity what splendid things you did  
 10,190  
 and with their folly kindle other folly.

FAUST. What you call folly is no threat to you.  
 What do you know of human aspirations?  
 How can your bitter, sharp, and hostile temperament  
 know what it is that mankind needs? 10,195

MEPHISTOPHELES. Have it your way! What you want will be

done;  
 make me the confidant of all your various whims.

FAUST. The ocean far below attracted my attention;  
 it surged and rose to towering heights, 10,200  
 then it abated, scattering its waves,  
 that hastened to assault the low, broad shore.  
 And I was vexed—for arrogance,  
 unbridled blood, will always cause  
 uneasy feelings in a spirit  
 that, though free, respects all laws and rights. 10,205  
 I thought it chance, but looking close I saw  
 the surge desist, and then roll back and leave  
 the goal it had so proudly reached;  
 at certain times what happens is repeated.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*ad spectatores*).  
 There's nothing new in this for me to learn; 10,210  
 I've known that for a hundred thousand years.

FAUST (*continuing, with passion*).  
 The surging sea creeps into every comer,  
 barren itself and spreading barrenness,  
 expands and grows and rolls, and covers  
 a long expanse of ugly desolation. 10,215  
 Imbued with strength, wave after wave holds power  
 but then withdraws, and nothing's been accomplished—  
 a sight to drive me to despair,  
 this aimless strength of elemental forces!  
 This has inspired me to venture to new heights, 10,220  
 to wage war here against these forces and subdue them.  
 It can be done! – Although the tides may flood,  
 when there's a hill they gently press beyond it;  
 however arrogant their motions,  
 the slightest mound confronts them proudly, 10,225  
 the slightest depth attracts them to itself.  
 And so I quickly worked out plans,  
 resolving to obtain a precious satisfaction:  
 to bar the shore to the imperious sea,

narrow the limits of the ocean's great expanse, 10,230  
 and force the waters back into themselves.  
 I've worked out every step within my mind;  
 this is what I want, what you must help me do!  
*A distant sound of drums and martial music is heard from the right-rear of the audience.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. That should be easy! Do you hear distant drums?

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| FAUST. War once again! Bad news for all who're sensible!                                                                                                                                                                   | 10,235 |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. With war or peace, what's sensible<br>is to derive advantage from it.<br>You wait and watch for the right moments.<br>This is your opportunity. Now, Faustus, seize it!                                    |        |
| FAUST. Spare me your enigmatic nonsense!                                                                                                                                                                                   | 10,240 |
| Get to the point, explain what you're proposing!                                                                                                                                                                           |        |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. On my way here it came to my attention<br>that the kind Emperor is having problems.<br>You know what he is like. When we provided him<br>with entertainment and false riches,                              | 10,245 |
| he thought the whole world could be had for money.<br>He was still young when he came to the throne,<br>and so he drew the false conclusion<br>that it was proper and commendable<br>to practice two activities at once—   | 10,250 |
| to govern, and to lead a life of pleasure.                                                                                                                                                                                 |        |
| FAUST. A grave mistake! A ruler's happiness<br>must be derived from how he rules;<br>he must have lofty strength of purpose,<br>but none must know his purposes;                                                           | 10,255 |
| his whisper in a faithful ear<br>becomes some deed at which mankind will marvel;<br>thus he may hold supremacy<br>and merit it. – The cult of pleasure is degrading.                                                       |        |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. That's not our man. He cultivated pleasure!                                                                                                                                                                | 10,260 |
| Meanwhile, the empire fell apart in anarchy<br>as great and small all feuded with each other,<br>as brother banished or slew brother,<br>and castle fought with castle, town with town,<br>the guilds with the patriciate, | 10,265 |
| and bishops with their chapter and their parish;<br>all men were enemies at sight.<br>In church they murdered and assassinated;<br>outside the towns, no merchant traveled safe.                                           |        |
| Audacity became a common trait—                                                                                                                                                                                            | 10,270 |
| to live was self-defense. – Thus things went on.                                                                                                                                                                           |        |
| FAUST. You mean they staggered, fell, got up again,<br>then went head over heels, collapsing in a heap.                                                                                                                    |        |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. And no one dared deplore the situation,<br>for all now had the will and right to be important.                                                                                                             | 10,275 |
| The paltriest were anybody's equals<br>until, at last, the best got tired of the madness.<br>Men of ability rebelled, and said:                                                                                            |        |

Let him be ruler who'll establish order; 10,280  
the Emperor can't and won't, so let's hold an election  
and have a new one give our land new life  
and guarantee each subject's safety;  
thus, in a world that starts afresh,  
we shall let righteousness and peace be wed.  
FAUST. That sounds quite clerical.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Well, there were clerics 10,285  
who, to protect their well-fed paunches,  
played a more active part than did the others.  
Turmoil increased, then it was sanctified,  
and so the Emperor, whose heart we'd lightened,  
marches this way, perhaps to his last battle. 10,290

FAUST. I feel for his distress; he was so kind and easy.

MEPH. Let's see how things are going—while there's life, there's hope!  
We'll get him out of this confining valley;  
once he is safe, he'll have a thousand chances more,  
and who knows how the dice will fall next time? 10,295  
If he should win, he'll win his vassals back.

*They cross the next lower range of mountains and view the disposition of the army  
in the valley below, from which the sound of drums and military music arises.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. I see they've occupied a good position;  
with us beside them, victory is certain.

FAUST. But what can we provide? Illusions,  
the empty make-believe of magic! 10,300

MEPHISTOPHELES. The stratagems that win all battles!  
Do not relapse into faint-heartedness,  
remember what great plans you have:  
if we preserve his throne and lands for him,  
you'll kneel before the Emperor and get 10,305  
the boundless shore you seek as fief.

FAUST. You have performed a lot of feats so far,  
so go ahead and win a battle too!

MEPHISTOPHELES. No, you will win it; you shall be  
the general in charge today. 10,310

FAUST. It is absurd to put me in command  
of matters I don't understand at all.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Leave such things to your General Staff;  
you, as field marshal, won't have any worries.  
I long since saw war's horrors coming 10,315  
and, to help out, created a war-council

of primal mountains' primal-human forces;  
 he's lucky, who has gathered them together.

FAUST. What's that I see there, bearing arms?  
 Have you involved the mountaineers? 10,320

MEPHISTOPHELES. No! But I do, like Peter Quince,  
 provide the quintessence of all of them.

*Enter the THREE MIGHTY MEN. (2 Sam. 23, 8.)*

MEPHISTOPHELES. Here come my fellows now! As you can see,  
 each is a different age and has  
 a different kind of clothes and armor; 10,325  
 you'll find that they are worth their salt.

(*Ad spectatores.*) Today you cannot find a child who doesn't  
 dote  
 on suits of armor or a uniform,  
 and since they're allegories too,  
 these wretches will but please the better. 10,330

BULLY (*young, wearing light armor and dressed in motley*).  
 Whoever tries to stare me down  
 will feel my fist where he had teeth,  
 and if he tries to run away,  
 I'll grab the coward by his hair!  
 Get-Quick (*mature, well armed and richly dressed*).  
 It's folly to seek pointless brawls— 10,335  
 they're nothing but a waste of time.  
 Never forget to grab the booty,  
 and settle other matters later!

HOLD ON (*well on in years, heavily armed and unostentatiously dressed*).  
 That, too, won't get you very far—  
 in the torrential stream of life 10,340  
 great wealth is quickly dissipated.  
 It's well and good to take, but better still to keep;  
 let this old fellow manage things,  
 and your reserves will never be depleted.  
 (*All descend to a lower level.*)

---

#### ON A FOOTHILL

*Drums and martial music from below; the imperial tent is being pitched. – Enter  
 the EMPEROR, the GRAND-MASTER, as COMMANDING GENERAL, and  
 BODYGUARDS.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| GENERAL. I still believe it was a prudent plan<br>to have withdrawn and concentrated all our forces<br>in this well-situated valley;<br>I have high hopes that this will prove the proper choice.                                                                                                                                                                                               | 10,345                               |
| EMPEROR. We'll have to wait and see what happens;<br>this half-retreat chagrins me nonetheless.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 10,350                               |
| GENERAL. Observe, my liege, where our right flank is placed.<br>Terrains like this are the tactician's dream:<br>the hills, not steep, yet not too easy either,<br>will help our troops and cause the enemy trouble;<br>we're half concealed here on this rolling land;<br>their cavalry will never dare approach us.                                                                           | 10,355                               |
| EMPEROR. I can't withhold approval any longer;<br>stout arms and hearts now have a chance to test their<br>strength.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                      |
| GENERAL. Here, at our center, where the fields are flat,<br>you see our phalanx, ready to attack;<br>high in the air their pikes reflect the sunlight<br>and glitter through the morning haze.<br>Thousands of men aflame with love of glory<br>there form a great, dark, heaving square!<br>This tells us how tremendous are our numbers;<br>I have no doubt they'll split the enemy's forces. | 10,360<br><br><br><br><br><br>10,365 |
| EMPEROR. This is the first time that I've seen them all so well;<br>an army such as this is worth one twice its size.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                      |
| GENERAL. About our left flank nothing need be said;<br>our bravest men are holding that steep cliff,<br>upon whose rocks you see the flash of weapons,<br>and which protects this valley's vital pass.<br>It's there that I expect the enemy<br>will suffer bloody, unforeseen disaster.                                                                                                        | 10,370                               |
| EMPEROR. There they advance, those lying kinsmen<br>who called me Uncle, Cousin, Brother<br>as they kept taking ever greater liberties<br>and robbed my throne of honor, my scepter of its power,<br>who next laid waste our lands with feuds,<br>and who have now all joined against me in rebellion.                                                                                          | 10,375<br><br><br><br><br>10,380     |
| Many have not made up their wavering minds,<br>but they will rush along in any torrent's wake.<br>General. A trusted man, sent out to reconnoiter,<br>is hurrying downhill; let's hope his news is good!                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                      |



A SCOUT. Thanks to boldness and to cunning 10,385

we've succeeded in our mission,  
gotten through the lines and back;  
but our news is not too good.

EMPEROR. What egoism teaches is self-preservation,  
not gratitude, affection, duty, honor.

Do you forget that, when accounts are settled,  
your neighbor's burning house may burn you out as well?

SECOND SCOUT. For a while we watched, well pleased,  
riot marching in confusion; 10,400

suddenly, to our surprise,  
a new emperor appeared,  
and in order multitudes  
now are marching through the field.

EMPEROR. An anti-emperor's a benefit to me;  
at last I really feel I'm Emperor.

I donned this armor simply as a soldier,  
but now I wear it with a nobler purpose.

you only recommended tilting at the rings  
while I, with eager heart, desired jousting;

I felt my self-reliance was confirmed  
when I beheld myself inside that sphere of flame;

I've had confusing dreams of victory and fame;  
I'll now make up what I have wantonly neglected.

*Enter FAUST, in armor, with half-closed visor, and the THREE MIGHTY MEN, armed and attired as already described.*

FAUST. We hope you won't object to our appearing;  
prevision's useful even in untroubled times.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| You know that mountain people are deep thinkers,<br>can read what nature's written in the rocks.                                                                                                                                                                                  | 10,425 |
| Spirits, who left the lowland long ago,<br>are fonder now of mountain rocks than ever;<br>through labyrinthine crevices they toil<br>in vapors laden with the gas of precious metals;                                                                                             | 10,430 |
| they analyze, they test, they synthesize,<br>obsessed with making substances unknown before.<br>With deftness only spirits can possess<br>they fashion clear transparent forms;<br>then, in the crystal's everlasting silence,                                                    | 10,435 |
| they see what happens in the world above.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |        |
| EMPEROR. I've heard and credit what you say;<br>but tell me, my good man, how it applies to us.                                                                                                                                                                                   |        |
| FAUST. At Norcia lives a Sabine necromancer<br><br>who is your loyal, faithful servant.                                                                                                                                                                                           | 10,440 |
| How fearful was the fate that menaced him!<br>The faggots crackled, tongues of fire had appeared;<br>surrounded by dry piles of interlocking boards,<br>to which they'd added pitch and sulphur-matches,<br>he was beyond the help of man, or God, or devil;                      | 10,445 |
| but you released him, Sire, from fiery bondage.<br>That was in Rome. As your eternal debtor,<br>he follows your career with deep solicitude.<br>Ever since then unmindful of himself, he now<br>consults the stars and underworld for you alone.                                  | 10,450 |
| He charged us urgently to hasten to your aid.<br>Great forces are at work there in the mountains,<br>where nature is omnipotent and free;<br>dull-witted priests denounce such things as magic.                                                                                   |        |
| EMPEROR. When we salute, on festive days,<br>the cheerful guests who come to share good cheer,<br>we watch with pleasure as they push and crowd<br>and make our halls seem insufficient.<br>But no one is more welcome than the worthy man<br>who offers us his help and strength | 10,455 |
| at this precarious morning hour<br>controlled by fate's uncertain scales.<br>However, at this solemn juncture,<br>lift from your ready sword that valiant hand<br>and so pay tribute to a moment when, by thousands,                                                              | 10,460 |
| men march to fight against or for me.<br>A man does things himself! And he who wants a crown and                                                                                                                                                                                  | 10,465 |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| throne,<br>must demonstrate that he is worthy of them.<br>So let this ghost that's risen up against us,<br>that dubs itself the Emperor and claims our lands,<br>that calls itself the army's duke, our princes' liege,<br>be thrust by my own hand into the underworld!                                                                                                         | 10,470                                               |
| FAUST. However that may be, you would be ill-advised<br>to risk your person in this noble enterprise.<br>Your helmet, with its crest and plume,<br>protects the head that gives our hearts their strength.<br>Without a head, what use are limbs?<br>If it is sleepy, they all droop;<br>if it is hurt, they all share in the wound,<br>but are restored as soon as it recovers. | 10,475<br><br><br><br><br><br><br>10,480             |
| The arm is prompt to use its innate strength<br>and raise the buckler, lest the head be harmed;<br>the sword assumes responsibility at once,<br>parries with vigor and returns the blow;<br>and then the foot shares aptly in their triumph—<br>it's planted quickly on the slain foe's neck.                                                                                    | <br><br><br><br><br>10,485                           |
| EMPEROR. That is my wrath exactly; that's how I'd like to treat<br>him,<br>and make his insolent head my footstool.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                      |
| THE HERALDS ( <i>returning</i> ).<br>We enjoyed but scant respect<br>and acceptance over there;<br><br>for our brave and noble challenge<br>they had scorn and ridicule:<br>"Emperor! He's now forgotten—<br>you've an echo in your valley;<br>Once upon a time,' we say,<br>if we think or talk of him."                                                                        | <br><br><br>10,490<br><br><br><br><br><br><br>10,495 |
| FAUST. This has turned out as they desired<br>who are your best, most loyal supporters. –<br>The enemy approach, we're eager to see action;<br>bid us attack, the moment is propitious.                                                                                                                                                                                          | <br><br><br>10,500                                   |
| EMPEROR. At this point I relinquish my command.<br>( <i>To the GENERAL.</i> ) Your duties, Prince, are yours again.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                      |
| GENERAL. Have our right wing advance!<br>Before they reach the top, the enemy's left,<br>now climbing up this hill,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <br><br>10,505                                       |

shall flee our tried and true young troops.

FAUST. Permit this lively and courageous youth  
to join these ranks of yours at once;  
assimilated to them, he'll display  
his sterling strength and character. 10,510

FAUST *points to a figure at his right.*

BULLY (*stepping forward*).  
The man who lets me see his face won't turn away  
with jaw and cheekbones still intact;  
and if he turns his back, his head and hair  
will soon be flopping from a hideous neck.  
And if, while I rampage, your men 10,515  
rain blows with sword and mace,  
the enemy will drop in quick succession  
and drown in their own blood. [Exit.

GENERAL. Let them be followed by the center, slow and prudent;  
our phalanx's total strength will thus engage the foe— 10,520  
our furious forces there, a little to the right,  
have already dealt their battle-plan a blow.

FAUST (*pointing to the second Mighty Man*).  
Let this man too be covered by your order!  
With his élan, he'll give the rest an impetus.

GET-QUICK. The heroism of our Emperor's troops 10,525  
shall have a partner, thirst for plunder;  
and so let's make our common goal  
the Anti-Emperor's sumptuous tent!  
He will not boast a throne much longer,  
with me now at the forefront of this phalanx. 10,530

QUICKLOOT (*camp-follower, clinging to his side*).  
Although I have no marriage lines,  
this is the man whom I love best.  
What a rich harvest now awaits us!  
A woman's never gentle if she's grabbing,  
and if she is a thief, she's merciless— 10,535  
forward to victory, and no holds barred! [Exeunt both.

GENERAL. As was to be expected, their right flank  
attacks our left full-force. To the last man  
our troops are to resist this furious attempt  
to take the pass's narrowest stretch. 10,540

FAUST (*beckoning to the left*).  
My lord, pray do not overlook this man;

it will not hurt to add more strength to strength.  
HOLD-ON (*stepping forward*).  
Don't give your left wing further thought!  
Nothing that's held is lost when I am with it;  
though old, I can be trusted as custodian, 10,545  
and even lightning will not break my hold. [Exit

MEPHISTOPHELES (*descending from above*).  
See in the background there of jagged rock  
how now from every gorge armed men  
are issuing in throngs that crowd  
the narrow pathways even more; 10,550  
with helmet, armor, sword, and shield  
they form a rampart at our rear  
that's ready to attack on signal.

(*Aside, for those in the know.*).  
You're not to ask where *they* come from. –  
The fact is, I have not been idle; 10,555  
I've emptied every arms-collection hereabout;  
these suits of armor stood or sat astride  
as if they still controlled this world;  
once knights and kings and emperors,  
they're only empty snail's shells now; 10,560  
ghosts often have used them as finery  
and helped revive some medieval fashions.  
Regardless of what devil's in them,  
today they're sure to be effective.

(*Aloud.*). Hear how they're working up a rage 10,565  
and clank when shoving one another!  
Beside our standards, tattered flags now wave  
that long have waited for some breezes.  
Remember that these are old stock,  
who gladly get involved in modem broils. 10,570

*A tremendous peal of trumpets is heard from above; the enemy forces are seen to waver.*

FAUST. Darkness has covered the horizon,  
and only here and there are to be seen  
ominous flashes of glowing red;  
weapons already gleam with blood;  
the rocks, the woods, the air, and the whole sky 10,575  
turn crimson too.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Our sturdy right flank holds its own;

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| I even see, surpassing all in height,<br>that nimble giant, Jack the Bully,<br>plying his trade with customary vigor.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 10,580                               |
| EMPEROR. Where I saw only one arm raised<br>I now can see a dozen flailing;<br>what's happening defies the laws of nature.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                      |
| FAUST. Haven't you heard of those streaks of fog<br>that drift along the coasts of Sicily?<br>There, in broad daylight, halfway up the sky,<br>mirrored with shimmering clarity<br>in exhalations of a special kind,<br>one sees a strange mirage:<br>cities are swaying to and fro,<br>and gardens floating up and down,<br>as image after image cleaves the aether. | 10,585<br><br><br><br><br><br>10,590 |
| EMPEROR. I find it nonetheless disquieting to see<br>the tips of all the spears emitting sparks,<br>and nimble little flames<br>dancing along our phalanx's glittering lances.<br>This is too spectral for my taste.                                                                                                                                                  | 10,595                               |
| FAUST. Forgive me, Sire, but those are after-traces<br>of long-since vanished spirit beings—<br>a light the Dioscuri cast,<br>by whom all sailors used to swear;<br>for us they're making one great final effort.                                                                                                                                                     | 10,600                               |
| EMPEROR. But tell me whom we owe it to,<br>that in our interest Nature has assembled<br>her greatest prodigies in this one place.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 10,605                               |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. To whom but to that noble seer<br>whose heart is mindful only of your welfare!<br>The violence your enemies have threatened<br>caused him the most profound distress.                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                      |
| His gratitude insists that you be rescued,<br>though this might mean his own destruction.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 10,610                               |
| EMPEROR. To celebrate, the Romans took me everywhere in<br>triumph;<br>at last I was important, and I wished to prove it;<br>and so, not really thinking, I saw fit<br>to give his white beard somewhat cooler air.<br>Because I spoiled their entertainment,                                                                                                         | 10,615                               |

the clergy ceased to be my strong supporters.  
Now, after all these years, am I to see  
the consequences of a carefree deed?

FAUST. Instinctive kindness is a good investment: 10,620  
look there, up in the sky; unless I err,  
your friend's about to send a portent!  
Now watch; its meaning will be soon made clear.

EMPEROR. An eagle's soaring high above us,  
pursued and threatened by an angry griffin. 10,625

FAUST. Keep watching! To my mind, this augurs well:  
a griffin's but a beast of fable—  
how can it so forget its limitations  
that it dares challenge a real eagle?

EMPEROR. Now they are wheeling in great circles 10,630  
about each other; now each rushes  
at the same instant at the other,  
eager to claw the other's breast and throat.

FAUST. See how the hateful griffin, tom and mauled,  
has suffered all the hurt; see how, 10,635  
with drooping lion's tail, it plunges  
into the trees atop that hill and disappears.

EMPEROR. May the event confirm the omen,  
which I accept amazedly.  
Mephistopheles (*looking toward the right*).  
Pressure from sustained assaults 10,640  
forces them to yield the field,  
and in aimless skirmishes  
they are pushing toward their right;  
this disrupts the battle-order  
of their main contingent's left. 10,645

Our unwavering phalanx's spearhead,  
moving right, with lightning speed  
dashes toward that weak position.  
Now, like splashing storm-tossed waves,  
equal forces in their furious rage 10,650  
meet together in this duel;  
this surpasses all our hopes,  
we've already won the battle!

EMPEROR (*on the left, to FAUST*).  
Look! I think there's something wrong;  
on the left our outpost's threatened. 10,655

I don't see them hurling stones;  
lower ledges have been scaled,

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| higher ones have been abandoned.<br>See! – Concerted masses of the foe,<br>pressing ever nearer now,<br>may have seized the pass already—<br>end result of godless efforts!<br>In vain are all your stratagems.                                                                               | 10,660 |
| <i>Pause.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |        |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. There is my pair of ravens coming—<br>I wonder what their message is?<br>It's possible that something's wrong.                                                                                                                                                                | 10,665 |
| EMPEROR. What do these dismal birds portend?<br>The way their sable sails are set,<br>they've come from that fierce mountain-fray.                                                                                                                                                            |        |
| MEPHISTOPHELES ( <i>to the ravens</i> ).<br>Perch here, close to my ears.<br>No one is lost who has your patronage;<br>advice you give is good to follow.                                                                                                                                     | 10,670 |
| FAUST ( <i>to the Emperor</i> ).<br>You've surely heard how homing pigeons<br>return from the most distant lands<br>to where they nest and feed their young.<br>Here it's the same, with an important difference:<br>a dove may carry peace-time mail,<br>but war requires somber messengers. | 10,675 |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. The news they bring is dire:<br>see how, up on those heights of rock,<br>our soldier-heroes stand endangered!<br>The near-by heights already have been scaled,<br>and should the pass itself be taken,<br>our own position will be critical.                                  | 10,680 |
| EMPEROR. Then I am now betrayed completely!<br>The net into which you have drawn me<br>gave me the horrors from the very start.                                                                                                                                                               | 10,685 |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. Do not despair! All is not lost.<br>Patience and cunning will resolve the plot—<br>things often look their worst, close to the end.<br>I've messengers on whom I can rely;<br>command that I be given the command!                                                            | 10,690 |
| GENERAL ( <i>who has moved to the Emperor's side</i> ).<br>That you allied yourself with these two men<br>has bothered me right from the start;<br><br>no lasting good can come from magic.<br>I can't control the course of battle;                                                          | 10,695 |



since they began it, let them end it;  
 I'm giving back the marshal's baton.

EMPEROR. Keep it until some better time  
 that fortune may bestow on us. 10,700  
 This villain and his raven-friends  
 fill me with horror and disgust.

(To MEPHISTOPHELES.)  
 I can't entrust this staff to you,  
 who do not seem the proper man;  
 but take command, avert defeat, 10,705  
 and let what can be done, be done!

*The EMPEROR, with the GRAND-MASTER, withdraws into his tent.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. I hope his baton will protect him;  
 it wouldn't be much use to us—  
 it had some cross or other on it.

FAUST. What must we do?

MEPHISTOPHELES. All has been done! – 10,710  
 Now, my black cousins who're such eager servants,  
 be off to the great mountain-lake, and ask—  
 politely—the undines to lend us a mock-flood.  
 They know the trick, that is a woman's secret,  
 of separating semblance from reality, 10,715  
 so all will swear that what they see is real.

*Pause.*

FAUST. It's clear our ravens' flattery  
 has stirred your water sprites profoundly;  
 I see a trickle there already.  
 Freshets are gushing forth in various places 10,720  
 where only bare, dry rock was seen;  
 their victory is now defeat.

MEPHISTOPHELES. They are amazed by this strange welcome,  
 their boldest climbers are dumbfounded.

FAUST. Now one great rushing stream turns into many brooks, 10,725  
 that soon reissue doubled from their gorges  
 and form a mighty waterfall;  
 this torrent comes to rest upon a bed of rock  
 and fills its broad expanse with raging foam,  
 then plunges tier by tier into the valley. 10,730  
 What good is gallant, hero-like resistance  
 when this vast flood will sweep them all away?

I am myself appalled by its fierce surging.

MEPHISTOPHELES. I see no part of these aquatic lies—  
the human eye alone can be deceived— 10,735  
but am amused by what is happening.  
Whole mobs are now in headlong flight;  
the fools believe that they are drowning,  
and though they stand and breathe on solid ground,  
run ludicrously about with swimming motions. 10,740  
There's now confusion everywhere.  
*(To the ravens, who have returned.)*

I shall commend you to our Lord and Master;  
but if you'd like to show that you yourselves are masters,  
speed to the glowing forge at which,  
with endless energy, the dwarfs 10,745  
strike sparks from ores and metals.  
Persuade them, with a long oration,  
to lend you fire, of the kind our Master likes,  
that glows, and sparkles, and explodes.  
There's nothing special when, on summer nights, 10,750  
you see heat lightning in the distance  
and falling stars shoot flashing from the zenith,  
but summer lightning in a maze of bushes  
and stars that hiss along wet ground  
are not an every-day occurrence. 10,755  
But don't make an inordinate effort—  
start with entreaties, then give orders.  
*The ravens leave, and what is described by MEPHISTOPHELES is seen occurring.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. Now let dense blackness shroud the foe,  
their every step be an uncertain groping  
as sparks flit waywardly about them 10,760  
and sudden lightnings daze their vision!  
That hardly could have been improved on;  
but horrid noises are required too.

FAUST. The empty armor from funereal halls  
regains its vigor here in the fresh air; 10,765

that continuous clank and rattle up above  
provides a strange, discordant note.

MEPHISTOPHELES. The fact is that they can no longer be  
restrained;  
you hear the sound of knightly cudgels  
just as one did back in the good old days. 10,770

Arm-guards and leg-pieces have once more become  
the Guelfs and Ghibellines, and hasten  
to start their endless feud again.

Inheriting their fixed opinions,  
they are immune to reconciliation; 10,775  
you now can hear their bluster everywhere.

When all is said and done, at diabolic revels  
it's party hatred that is most effective  
and is their culminating horror.

Let its abhorrent, frightening voice, 10,780  
at times so shrill and stridently satanic,  
spread panic throughout all the valley.

*Warlike tumult in the orchestra, finally changing into lively military tunes.*

---

#### THE ANTI-EMPEROR'S TENT

*A throne and lavish trappings. Enter GET-QUICK and QUICKLOOT.*

QUICKLOOT. We are here first, then, after all!

GET-QUICK. No raven's flight can match our speed.

QUICKLOOT. There is so much wealth piled up here! 10,785  
Where should I start? Where can I stop?

GET-QUICK. The place is crammed so full with stuff,  
I don't know what to reach for first!

QUICKLOOT. That tapestry's just what I need— 10,790  
my bed is often much too hard.

GET-QUICK. Here's a steel mace with lots of spikes,  
exactly what I've long wished for.

QUICKLOOT. This scarlet cloak with a gold hem  
is like what I've been dreaming of.

GET-QUICK (*taking the mace*).

With this you don't waste any time, 10,795  
you knock them dead and keep right on. –  
Your sack's already filled enough,  
but what you've grabbed is not worth much.

Leave all that rubbish where it is,  
and take one of these little chests; 10,800  
they hold the pay that's due the troops,  
each one of them's chock-full of gold.

QUICKLOOT. This is a fiendishly great weight!

I cannot lift or carry it.

GET-QUICK. Hurry, crouch down! Bend over more—  
your back is strong, I'll put it there! 10,805

QUICKLOOT. That hurts! I'm truly done for now—  
the load is going to break my back!

*The coffer falls and bursts open.*

GET-QUICK. Your gold's now piled there on the ground;  
get to work quick and snatch it up! 10,810

QUICKLOOT (*crouching down*).  
Quick, sweep it here into my lap!  
There'll still be plenty of it for us.

GET-QUICK. That is enough! Now hurry up!  
(QUICKLOOT *rises*.)

This is too much! Your apron leaks;  
no matter where you stand or walk, 10,815  
you'll scatter money like a spendthrift.

*Enter BODYGUARDS of the rightful emperor.*

GUARDS. What are you up to in this sanctum,  
ransacking the imperial treasure?

GET-QUICK. We've risked our lives and limbs for you,  
and take as pay our share of loot. 10,820  
That is what's done in enemy tents,  
and we are in the military.

GUARDS. That's not what's done when we're around—  
being soldiers and dirty thieves.  
To serve our emperor, a soldier man 10,825  
must also be an honest soldier.

GET-QUICK. We know your kind of honesty,  
you call it requisitioning!  
We're all on the same footing here;  
the password of our trade is: give! 10,830

(*To QUICKLOOT.*) Clear out, and take what you have got;  
we are not welcome here as guests. [Exeunt.

A GUARD. Why didn't you, right then and there,  
slap that smart aleck in the face?

SECOND GUARD. It's hard to say; I lacked all strength, 10,835  
and they were somehow ghost-like, too.

THIRD GUARD. Something was bothering my eyes;  
my head was swimming, things were blurred.

FOURTH GUARD. I can't exactly tell you either:

It's been so sultry all day long, 10,840

oppressive, hot, uncomfortable;  
as one man stood, his neighbor fell;  
just groping, you would strike a blow,  
and with each blow some foe was felled;  
gauze seemed to hang before our eyes, 10,845  
our ears heard buzzing, hisses, roars;  
that never stopped, and now we're here  
with no idea how it was done.

*The EMPEROR enters with FOUR PRINCES; the BODYGUARDS retire to the background.*

EMPEROR. It does not matter how! What counts is that we've won  
and that the scattered foe is fled across the plain. 10,850

Here is the empty throne, and crowding in about us  
is treason's treasury, wrapped up in tapestries.  
We, with the full protection of our honor guard,  
await as Emperor the envoys of all nations;

from all directions come reports to make us joyous, 10,855  
our realms are pacified, all gladly swear allegiance.

Although our battle did involve some use of tricks,  
the fact remains that we were those who did the fighting.  
Sometimes coincidence, we know, will help combatants:  
a stone falls from the sky, blood rains upon the foe, 10,860  
and rocky caves emit mysterious, loud noises

that make the enemy less, and us much more, courageous.  
The vanquished are the butt of never-ending taunts;

the victor, in his triumph, lauds Him who favored him,  
and of their own free will all voices join with his 10,865

as countless throats intone "We praise Thee now, our God."  
I turn my pious eyes in highest praise however—

a thing I've rarely done—to where my own heart lies.  
In youth a carefree prince may give his days to pleasure,  
but with advancing years he learns the moment's worth. 10,870

To make secure forthwith my line, this court, our realm,  
I join my lot with that of you four worthy men.

(*To the FIRST PRINCE.*)

We owe to you, o Prince, the army's wise deployment  
and, at the crucial point, its bold, heroic guidance;

perform the tasks of peace the times will now require; 10,875  
I here give you this sword and dub you Lord Arch-Marshal.

ARCH-MARSHAL.

When once your loyal troops, now civil war is over,  
have made our borders strong, made safe your throne and  
person,

grant us the privilege of serving you at table  
as celebrating guests crowd through ancestral halls. 10,880

Before you I will bear, beside you hold this sword,  
attendant at all times upon Your Majesty.

EMPEROR (*to the* Second Prince).

You, sir, who are both brave and sweetly courteous  
shall be Arch-Chamberlain. This is no easy office, 10,885  
for you will be the head of our domestic staff,  
that fails to serve me well when servants quarrel and  
bicker;  
henceforth may they have you as their respected model  
of how to please one's liege, one's court, and all one's  
fellows.

ARCH-CHAMBERLAIN.

To do what you enjoin will make all nobly eager  
to lend good men support and treat the less good kindly, 10,890  
and be undevious, reserved without deceit.

My true reward, o Sire, is how you've read my heart.  
May I imagine, too, your coming celebration?

When you prepare to feast, I'll fetch the golden basin  
and hold your rings for you so that on that great day, 10,895  
your hands may be refreshed as I am by your gaze.

EMPEROR. My mood is still too grave for thoughts of  
celebration,

yet be it so! Joy, too, may serve a proper need.

(*To the* THIRD PRINCE.)

I've chosen you Arch-Steward, who henceforth shall be  
in charge of hunting grounds, of barnyard and of manor. 10,900  
Have carefully prepared, according to the season,  
whatever then is best to make my favorite dishes.

ARCH-STEWARD.

No duty shall more please me than keeping a strict fast  
until you can be served a dish that suits your taste.

The kitchen staff and I shall make it our joint effort 10,905  
to get exotic fare and expedite the seasons—  
although such luxuries do not mean much to you,  
whose preferences are what's nourishing and simple.

EMPEROR (*to the* FOURTH PRINCE).

Since banquets seem the theme that none of you avoid,  
you, my young hero, shall be changed to a cup-bearer. 10,910  
As Arch-Cupbearer now, make sure that in our cellars  
the best of wines are kept in plentiful supply.  
Be temperate yourself, and when there's merriment  
do not be led astray because occasion's offered!

ARCH-CUPBEARER.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| My Lord, young people will, if only they are trusted,<br>achieve maturity before you notice it.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 10,915                                                                                           |
| I too can see myself at your great celebration,<br>when I will lavishly adorn the royal buffet<br>with ceremonial plate, of gold and silver only,<br>but for your use will save the loveliest cup of all,<br>of clear Venetian glass, in which delight awaits you;<br>it adds to the wine's taste, prevents intoxication.<br>Some might rely, besides, upon its precious magic,<br>but your sobriety protects you, Sire, still better.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 10,920                                                                                           |
| EMPEROR. What I've conferred on you here in this solemn<br>moment,<br>you've heard with confidence from lips that you can trust.<br>The Emperor's word alone enforces these donations,<br>but to attest the fact a formal deed's required<br>that bears his signature. To phrase it properly,<br>here comes the proper man exactly when he's needed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 10,925<br><br><br><br><br><br><br>10,930                                                         |
| <i>Enter the Chancellor-Archbishop.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                  |
| EMPEROR. As soon as a great vault's entrusted to its keystone,<br>it is securely built for all time still to come.<br>You see four princes here. We've been discussing how<br>our house and court may have a surer permanence.<br>For matters that concern the empire as a whole<br>you five together shall have full authority.<br>In lands you hold you must surpass all other men,<br>and so I here extend your borders to include<br>the legacies of all who were unfaithful to us.<br>Thus, loyal friends, I grant you many fine estates,<br>together with the right, when chance permits, to add<br>by purchase or exchange, or by succession, to them;<br>it further is decreed that you may exercise<br>without impediment all territorial rights.<br>The verdicts that you give as judges will be final,<br>and no man shall appeal to any higher court.<br>All taxes, tributes, rents, safe-conducts, tolls, and fiefs,<br>the royalties of mines, salt-works, and mints, are yours.<br>To demonstrate to all my gratitude's extent,<br>I've raised you to a rank next only to my own. | 10,935<br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>10,940<br><br><br><br>10,945<br><br><br><br>10,950 |
| ARCHBISHOP. Let me in all our names express our heartfelt<br>thanks!<br>You make us powerful, and strengthen your own power.<br>Emperor. I wish to grant you five an even higher honor.<br>I still live for my state, still have a zest for life,<br>but my great forebears' seal now turns my prudent gaze                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                  |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 10,955                                           |
| from eager aspirations to that which looms ahead.<br>When, in my turn, I bid the ones I love farewell,<br>your duty let it be to say who's my successor.<br>Raise him, when he is crowned, aloft the holy altar,<br>and so shall end in peace what was so stormy here.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 10,960                                           |
| ARCHBISHOP.<br>With pride deep in their hearts, but humble in their<br>bearing,<br>there bow before you here the first of this earth's princes.<br>As long as loyal blood still courses through our veins,<br>we'll be the body which obeys your slightest wish.<br>Emperor. And so now, to conclude, let all I've here enacted<br>for every age to come be ratified in writing.<br>You have full sovereignty in each of your estates,<br>with the condition, though, that none may be divided.<br>However you increase what you've received from us,<br>it shall descend upon your eldest sons entire.                                                                                                                           | 10,965<br><br><br><br><br><br><br>10,970         |
| ARCHBISHOP. To parchment I'll at once commit this statute<br>which,<br>both for the Empire's weal and ours, is so important;<br>fair copy, seals, can be prepared in chancery;<br>your signature will then attest its sanctity.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  |
| EMPEROR. I now shall let you leave, so that you may, each one,<br>with tranquil mind reflect upon this glorious day.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 10,975                                           |
| [Exeunt the FOUR SECULAR PRINCES.]                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                  |
| ARCHBISHOP ( <i>remaining, and speaking with pathos</i> ).<br>The Chancellor withdrew. The Bishop still remains,<br>impelled by grave concern to seek your ear and warn it;<br>paternal feelings fill his heart with fears for you!                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                  |
| EMPEROR. What can, in this glad hour, cause you to feel alarm?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 10,980                                           |
| ARCHBISHOP. It grieves me bitterly to see your hallowed head<br>at such a time as this in covenant with Satan.<br>Although you seem, indeed, secure upon your throne,<br>you flout, alas! the Lord and flout our Holy Father.<br>The Pope, once he's informed, will pass a penal judgment<br>that shall with sacred bolts destroy your sinful realm.<br>He still remembers how, when you were celebrating<br>your coronation day, you set that sorcerer free.<br>To Christendom's great hurt, it was your diadem<br>that first shed mercy's rays upon that evil head.<br>But beat your breast and give, from your ill-gotten fortune,<br>to things of holiness a modest mite again;<br>confirmed in piety, donate to holy efforts | 10,985<br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>10,990 |



[illegible]

Emperor. The burden of my sin is large and hard to bear;  
those scoundrel sorcerers are doing me great harm.

ARCHBISHOP (*returning again, with as low a bow as is possible*).

Your pardon, Sire! That man of dubious character  
received in fief our coasts; on them the ban will fall  
unless, in penitence, to our consistory  
there too you cede the tithes, the rents, the dues, the taxes.

EMPEROR (*with annoyance*).

That land does not exist, it's only high sea still.

ARCHBISHOP.

The right time always comes for patient and just causes. 11,040

For our part, we expect your promise to be valid. [Exit.

EMPEROR (*solus*).

At this rate I'll have soon signed all my realm away.

---

ACT V  
A BROAD LANDSCAPE

*Enter a TRAVELER*

TRAVELER. Yes, they're there, the same dark lindens  
now grown old, but sturdy still. –  
After all these years of travel, 11,045  
I shall see my friends again!  
It's the old familiar place—  
in that cottage I found shelter  
when the storm and wave had cast me  
on the sand-dunes over there. 11,050  
I should like to greet the couple  
who were very helpful then,  
but already rather old  
to be still my hosts today.  
They were worthy, pious people! 11,055  
Shall I knock or shall I shout?  
Greetings if, as kind as ever,  
doing good still gives you pleasure!

*Enter BAUCIS, a little woman, very old.*

BAUCIS. Softly, softly, welcome stranger!  
Quiet! let my husband rest! 11,060  
Long naps give the old the power  
to be active when awake.

TRAVELER. Are you, mother, then still here  
to receive my thanks again  
for the way you and your husband 11,065  
saved my life when I was young?  
Are you Baucis, who so promptly  
offered half-dead lips new life,

*(Enter her husband, PHILEMON.)*

you Philemon, who so bravely  
rescued from the sea my goods? 11,070  
That my dire adventure ended  
happily, I owe alone  
to your quickly kindled beacon  
and your bell's clear silver sound.

Now let me walk into the open 11,075  
and survey the boundless sea,  
there to kneel and say a prayer—  
for my heart is much oppressed.

*He strides forward on the dune.*

PHILEMON (*to BAUCIS*).

Quick! and lay the table for us  
where it's pretty in the garden. 11,080  
Let him hurry and be startled—  
he will not believe his eyes.

*He joins the TRAVELER.*

PHILEMON. See! the place where angry waves

mistreated you so cruelly  
has been laid out as a park, 11,085  
is a counterfeit of Eden.

Age prevented me from helping,  
as I would have done before;  
even as my strength kept failing,  
so the waters too withdrew. 11,090

Under cautious masters, workmen  
daringly built dams and channels,  
limited the ocean's rights  
to obtain them for themselves.

See how meadows, fields, and gardens, 11,095  
woods and villages all flourish. –

But now come and have your meal,  
for the sun will soon be gone. –  
Far away I see sails seeking  
a safe harbor for the night! 11,100

Birds know how to find their nests—  
there is where the port now is.  
That is why the sea's blue edge  
only shows there in the distance,  
and left and right you see extending 11,105  
densely populated land.

*The three seat themselves at a table in the small garden.*

BAUCIS. Silent still? And you take nothing  
to relieve your thirst?

PHILEMON. Our friend  
is curious about this marvel;  
since you like to talk, you tell him. 11,110

BAUCIS. *Marvel* is the word to use!  
Even now I'm still uneasy;  
I'm convinced that the whole business  
was not done with proper means.

PHILEMON. Can the Emperor have sinned 11,115

who gave him these shores as fiefdom?  
Did a herald with a trumpet  
not proclaim it everywhere? –  
The first foothold was established  
not far distant from our dunes—  
tents and huts! – But soon a palace  
rises, there amid the green.

11,120

BAUCIS. In the daytime noisy workmen  
hacked and shoveled, all in vain;  
where, at night, small fires flickered,  
there was a dam the following day.  
Human lives were sacrificed,  
groans of torment filled the darkness;  
fires flowed down to the sea—  
there, at dawn, was a canal.  
He's a godless man who covets  
both our cottage and our grove;  
boasting that he is our neighbor,  
he would have us be his serfs.

11,125

11,130

PHILEMON. But in exchange he's offered us  
an estate in the new land.

11,135

BAUCIS. Do not trust land in a marsh,  
stick to where the ground is high!

PHILEMON. Let's go over to the chapel—  
there we'll see the sun's last light—  
toll the bell, then kneel and pray,  
trusting in our fathers' God!

11,140

---

## PALACE

*Before the Palace is a spacious formal park with a great rectilinear canal. FAUST,  
now an extremely old man, walks back and forth, meditating.*

LYNCEUS (as WATCHMAN, through a speaking-trumpet).

The sun is setting; some last sails  
are making briskly for the harbor.  
A good-sized boat in the canal  
will reach this quay at any moment. –  
Your colored pennants flutter gaily,  
your masts and rigging show no damage—  
the grateful sailor gives you thanks,  
and fortune welcomes your well-timed return.

11,145

11,150

*The little chapel-bell tolls on the dune.*

FAUST (*starting*).

Confound that bell's atrocious sound,  
as painful as an unexpected shot!  
Ostensibly my realm is boundless,  
but at my back vexation, taunting,  
reminds me with these irritating noises 11,155  
that my great holdings have a blemish:  
that linden grove, its old brown cottage,  
and the dilapidated chapel are not mine.  
Although I would enjoy its restful quiet,  
I cannot bear the thought of shade that's not my own, 11,160  
that pricks the eye and stabs the flesh like thorns—  
oh, would that I were far from here!

LYNCEUS (*as above*).

See how the painted ship approaches gaily  
as evening breezes swell its sails!  
How agilely that moving tower bears 11,165  
chests, crates, and bales along its course!

*There appears a splendid vessel, richly laden with colorful exotic wares;  
on it are* MEPHISTOPHELES *and the* THREE MIGHTY MEN.

MEPHISTOPHELES *and the* MIGHTY MEN (*in chorus*).

Here we will land—  
have landed already.  
We greet our master,  
hail our patron! 11,170

*They disembark, and the cargo is unloaded.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. As can be seen, we've proved our worth,

and praise from you would give us pleasure.  
We started out with two ships only,  
but now we're back in port with twenty.  
Our cargo clearly demonstrates 11,175

what great success we have achieved.  
On the open sea your mind is open,  
and no one gives a fig for prudence;  
you have to grab things in a hurry:  
you catch a fish or catch a ship, 11,180  
and once you've three in your possession,  
you soon have caught a fourth as well;  
the fifth then hasn't got a chance,  
since it's a fact that might is right—  
not *how* but *what* will be the only question asked. 11,185

Unless I'm all at sea about maritime matters,  
war, trade, and piracy together are  
a trinity not to be severed.

THE MIGHTY MEN. No thanks or welcome!

No welcome or thanks— 11,190

as if we brought  
our master trash!

He looks askance  
and finds repugnant  
these treasures  
worthy of a king. 11,195

MEPHISTOPHELES. Do not expect

still more rewards—

you know you took  
your share already! 11,200

THE MIGHTY MEN. That does not count

in any way;  
we all demand  
our equal shares.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Put all our treasures 11,205

on display

in the great rooms  
of the main floor!

When he goes up  
and sees this wealth,

11,210

sees more exactly  
what it's worth,

I'm sure he won't

be stingy then,

will give our squadron

many a feast. – 11,215

Our merry company will all be here tomorrow,  
and I'll take proper care of them.

*(The cargo is removed.)*

(To FAUST.) Your brow is grave, your look is somber,  
despite this news of great success. 11,220

August sagacity has won its crown of triumph:

the ocean and your shore are now at peace,

and from this strand the willing sea

allows your ships a speedy journey—

admit that here, here from this palace, 12,225

you have the whole world in your reach.

This is the spot where all began,

here stood your first rude wooden shack;  
a little ditch was dug where now  
is seen the splash of busy oars.

Your courage, and your workmen's zeal,  
make you victorious on sea and land.  
And right from here ...

FAUST. Confound your *here* —

that's what's so terribly oppressive!  
I have to tell you, you who know so much;  
it causes me such endless heartache,  
it's something I can bear no longer!  
And yet, I feel ashamed to say it.  
Those old folk there ought to give in;  
I want those lindens part of my estate;  
the few trees spoil, because I do not own them,  
everything that I possess on earth.  
Among their branches I would like to build  
a platform with a panoramic vista

and so obtain an unobstructed view  
of all that I have now accomplished—  
survey with one inclusive look  
this masterpiece the human spirit has wrought  
to augment, by intelligent planning,  
the space its peoples have for living.

The worst of torments we can suffer is to feel want when we are rich.

The tinkling bell, the lindens' scent,  
make me feel buried in a crypt.

The freedom of an invincible will  
is blunted by this pile of sand.

How rid myself of this obsession—  
the bell will ring, and I'll be frantic!

MEPHISTOPHELES. It's only natural that something so annoying should sour life for you. The fact is not to be disputed: any cultivated ear must find such clinking noisome.

And yet that damned ding-dong-ding-dong,  
casting its damp pall on serenest evening skies,  
intrudes itself upon whatever happens  
from first immersion to interment,  
as if, between that ding and dong,  
life were a dream to be forgotten.

FAUST. Such wilful, obstinate resistance



so blights the acme of success 11,270  
 that, with intense regret and pain,  
 one has to tire of being just.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Why let yourself be bothered so by this?  
 You surely know, by now, how best to colonize.

FAUST. So be it! Go and rid me of their presence— 11,275  
 you know the pretty piece of property  
 that i have designated for their use.

MEPHISTOPHELES. We'll carry them off, then set them down;  
 there! you see them settled once again;  
 a nice new place will reconcile them 11,280  
 to any violence they suffer.

*He whistles shrilly; the MIGHTY MEN enter.*

MEPHISTOPHELES. Come! There is an order from our master.  
 The party for the fleet will be tomorrow.

THE THREE. The old man's welcome wasn't generous—  
 a lively party's our just due. 11,285

MEPHISTOPHELES (*ad spectatores*).  
 Here's an old story, ever the same—  
 Naboth's vineyard once again. [1 Kings 21.]

---

*The Darkness becomes complete.*

LYNCEUS (*the keeper on the palace watchtower, singing*).  
 Sight is my birthright;  
 assigned to this tower  
 to watch is my task, 11,290  
 and the world is my joy.  
 I gaze into the distance  
 or look at what's near—  
 the moon and the stars,  
 the forest with deer. 11,295  
 In what I behold  
 there always is beauty;  
 content with it all,  
 I'm content with myself.  
 Oh fortunate eyes! 11,300  
 whatever you've seen,  
 whatever the outcome,  
 you have known beauty!

*(Pause.)*

I have not been stationed here  
 simply for my private pleasure— 11,305

what's this threat of monstrous horror  
 from the dark world down below!  
 Through the lindens' twofold night  
 I see flashing sparks explode; 11,310  
 incandescence, fanned by breezes,  
 swirls in ever greater rage.  
 Woe! the fire's in the cottage  
 that so long was damp with moss;  
 quick assistance is what's needed,  
 but no rescuers are near. 11,315  
 Will that dear, that kind old couple,  
 once so careful with their fires,  
 be the victims of that smoke!  
 What a terrible disaster!  
 Blazing flames—and glowing red 11,320  
 the moss-covered timberwork—  
 let us hope that those good people  
 have escaped from the inferno!  
 Tongues of flashing light are climbing  
 through the leaves and up the branches; 11,325  
 withered boughs that bum and flicker  
 soon are blazing, then cave in.  
 Is this what my eyes should see!  
 Why must I be so far-sighted?  
 Now the chapel too collapses, 11,330  
 burdened down by falling branches.  
 Coiling flames with serpent tongues  
 have the treetops in their grasp.  
 To their roots the hollow trunks  
 blaze scarlet in the glow they cast. – 11,335

*(Long pause. Song.)*

What was once a joy to see  
 now belongs to ages past.

*FAUST appears on the balcony, looking toward the dunes.*

*FAUST. What is that dolorous song up there?*

The message has arrived too late.  
 My watchman grieves; my inmost being 11,340  
 is offended by this impatient action. –  
 Although the stand of lindens may now be  
 reduced to ugly half-charred trunks,  
 a lookout soon can be erected

that will grant me a boundless view. 11,345  
 From it I'll also see the home  
 that gives new shelter to those two old people

who, grateful for my generous indulgence,  
 will spend their final days in happiness.

MEPHISTOPHELES *and the MIGHTY MEN (appearing below).*
11,350

As fast as possible, we have returned;  
 excuse us if there was a bit of trouble.  
 We knocked, then beat upon the door,  
 but still no one would open it;  
 we kept on rattling and pounding,  
 then the rotted door fell down; 11,355  
 we shouted and made angry threats,  
 but still we met with no response.  
 And as so often in such cases,  
 they did not hear, they would not listen;  
 but we refused to brook delay, 11,360  
 and, as you wished, soon cleared them out.  
 The couple didn't suffer much,  
 they simply dropped down dead with fright.  
 A stranger who was hiding there  
 put up a fight—we knocked him flat. 11,365  
 During this short but savage struggle,  
 with embers scattered all about  
 some straw ignited. Now it's blazing,  
 the pyre on which all three must die. 11,370

FAUST. Were your ears deaf to what I said?  
 I wanted an exchange, not theft.  
 My curse upon your senseless savagery—  
 may each of you bear his part of it!

MEPHISTOPHELES *and the MIGHTY MEN (in chorus).*

The ancient truth is loud and clear:  
 Obey with grace when Force commands! 11,375  
 But if you're bold and must resist,  
 then risk your house and home and—life. [Exeunt.

FAUST *(on the balcony).*

The stars conceal their glittering light;  
 the fire dies down to a faint glow,  
 then a damp breeze rekindles it 11,380  
 and brings to me the smoke and vapor.  
 An order quickly given, too quickly executed! –  
 What are these shadows drifting toward me?

---

*At the last stroke of midnight, FOUR GRAY WOMEN appear in the courtyard.*

THE FIRST. My name is Want.  
 THE SECOND. And mine is Debt.

THE THIRD. My name is Care. 11,385

THE FOURTH. And mine, Distress.

THREE (*together*). The portal is locked, we cannot get in;  
the owner is wealthy, it's no place for us.

WANT. I'd be but a shadow.

DEBT. And I would be canceled.

DISTRESS. Those whom life pampers have no eyes for me.

CARE. You, sisters, are helpless, have no right to enter. 11,390

But Care, through the keyhole, will slip quickly in. [*Disappears.*]

WANT. Away, then, gray sisters, away now from here!

DEBT. As close as I can I'll stick to your side.

DISTRESS. And to your heels as close as she can, Distress.

THE THREE. See the clouds gather, the stars disappear! 11,395

Look there, look off there! Far away in the distance  
our brother is coming – it's he, it is – – – Death. [*Exeunt.*]

FAUST (*within the palace*).  
I saw four come, but only three depart;  
I could not catch the sense of what they said.  
I heard one word that sounded like *distress*, 11,400  
the somber rhyme that followed it was – *death*.  
It had a hollow, muted, spectral sound.  
I have not fought my way to freedom yet!  
If I could rid my path of magic,  
could totally unlearn its incantations, 11,405  
confront you, Nature, simply as a man,  
to be a human being would then be worth the effort.

That's what I was before I probed obscurities,  
blasphemed and cursed my world and self.  
Now the air holds so many spectral shapes 11,410  
that there's no knowing how to shun them.  
Though reason grant us happy, lucid days,  
the nights entangle us in webs of dream;  
as, gladdened, we return from springtime fields,  
some bird will croak—an omen of ill-fortune! 11,415  
Enmeshed in superstition all our lives,  
when something happens it's a sign or warning.  
And so we stand alone and frightened. –  
There the door creaks, and yet no one appears.

(*Shaken.*) Is someone here?

CARE. The question asks for Yes. 11,420

FAUST. And who are you?

CARE. I'm here—that's all that matters.

FAUST. Begone!

CARE. This is my proper place.

FAUST (*at first angry, then addressing himself in a moderated tone*).

Take heed to use no incantation!

CARE. Even though no ear may hear me,  
in your heart my voice is loud; 11,425

I appear in many masks,  
and I wield a vengeful power:  
the companion-cause of fear  
whether you're on land or sea;  
always met with, never sought, 11,430  
always cursed, but never banished.

Have you not ever, then, known Care?

FAUST. I've never tarried anywhere;  
I snatched from fortune what I wanted,  
what did not please me I let go, 11,435  
and disregarded what eluded me.

I've only had desires to fulfill them,  
then wished anew, and so I've stormed amain  
my way through life; once grand and vigorous,  
my days are spent with prudent caution. 11,440

I know this mortal sphere sufficiently,  
and there's no seeing into the Beyond;  
he is a fool who casts a sheep's eye at it,  
invents himself some peers above the clouds—  
let him stand firm and look at what's around him: 11,445

no good and able man finds this world mute!  
What need has he to float into eternity—  
the things he knows are tangible!  
Let his path be this earth while he exists;  
if spirits haunt him, let him not break stride 11,450  
but, keeping on, find all life's pains and joys,  
always, in every moment, never satisfied!

CARE. Once I make a man my own,  
nothing in this world can help him;  
everlasting darkness falls, 11,455

suns no longer rise or set—  
though no outward sense has failed,  
all is darkness in his heart,  
and however great his treasures,  
there's no joy in their possession. 11,460

Good and bad luck both depress him,  
he is starving though there's plenty;  
source of joy or spot of trouble,

it's postponed until the morrow—  
caring only for the future,  
he gets nothing done at all.

FAUST. Stop! In this way you won't get at me!

I will not listen to this madness.

Begone! Your wretched litany

might well seduce a man of wisdom. 11,470

CARE. Whether he should go or come

is something he cannot decide;  
in the middle of a street  
his stride will break, he'll grope his way;  
more and more he is bogged down,  
everything seems more distorted;  
to himself, to all, a burden,  
when he breathes he feels he's choking,  
neither stifled nor yet living,  
tom between despair and hoping.

All is one unceasing round

of things not done, of odious duties,

of sense of freedom, then depression;

broken, unrefreshing sleep

|                                 |        |
|---------------------------------|--------|
| leaves him without will to move | 11,485 |
|---------------------------------|--------|

and prepares him for damnation.

FAUST. Ill-omened spectres! Time and time again

this is the way you work on human kind,

transforming even days that are indifferent

into an ugly tangle of enmeshing torments. 11,490

We can't, I know, be rid of daemons easily—

their ties upon us never can be severed—

but I shall not acknowledge, Care, not ever,

your vast, insidious power.

CARE. Then feel it now, and hear the curse 11,495

with which I turn away from you:

throughout its whole existence your human race is blind—

now, Faustus, it's your turn at last.

*She breathes upon him and vanishes.*

FAUST (*blinded*).

The darkness seems to press about me more and more,

but in my inner being there is radiant light;

11,500

I'll hasten the fulfillment of my plans—

only the master's order carries weight. –

Workmen, up from your beds! Up, every man,

and make my bold design reality!

Take up your tools! To work with spade and shovel— 11,505  
what's been marked off must be completed now!  
Prompt effort and strict discipline  
will guarantee superb rewards:  
to complete a task that's so tremendous,  
working as one is worth a thousand hands. 11,510

---

*The large outer courtyard of the palace is now lit by torches. – Enter*

MEPHISTOPHELES, *leading a group of* LEMURES.

MEPHISTOPHELES. Come, hurry here! Come in! Come in,  
you tottery Lemures,  
you patched-together, half-live creatures  
of sinew, ligament and bone.

LEMURES (*chorus*).

Here we come, and promptly too, 11,515  
half under the impression  
that this concerns a lot of land  
of which we'll take possession.

We see the poles and pointed stakes,  
the chain to measure sections, 11,520  
but why we have been summoned here  
is something we've forgotten.

MEPHISTOPHELES. No fine surveying's needed here;  
just use the standard of your bodies:  
he who is tallest must lie down full length, 11,525  
you others make a ridge of turf around him;  
then, as they did for our forefathers,  
dig a long four-sided hole!  
From palace into these cramped quarters—  
that's the inane conclusion of all this. 11,530

LEMURES (*digging, with derisive gestures*).

In youth when I did live and love,  
I thought that all was pleasant;  
when there was song and merriment,  
my feet would take to dancing.

But then malicious Age appeared 11,535  
and smote me with his crutch;  
I tripped beside an open door—  
why must be graves left open!

FAUST *emerges from the palace, groping his way past the door posts.*  
FAUST. How good to hear the sound of shovels!

The mass of workers serve my pleasure, 11,540  
uniting land again with land,  
imposing borders on the ocean,  
confining it in rigid bonds.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*aside*).

|                                                                                                                                                               |        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| And yet with all your dams and levees<br>your striving serves no one but us;<br>in fact, you're now preparing a grand feast<br>for the water-daemon, Neptune. | 11,545 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|

All of your kind are doomed already; –  
the elements have sworn to help us;  
the end will be annihilation. 11,550

FAUST. Overseer!

MEPHISTOPHELES. Here!

FAUST. Use every means you can  
and get a plentiful supply of laborers;  
use benefits and discipline to spur them on,  
make payments, offer bonuses, conscript them!  
And day by day I want to be informed  
how the canal I've started is advancing.

11,555

MEPHISTOPHELES (*sotto voce*).

The word I heard was more banal:  
they mentioned graves, not some canal.

|                                                                                               |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| FAUST. A marsh stretching along those mountains<br>contaminates what's been reclaimed so far; | 11,560 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|

to drain that stagnant pool as well  
would be a crowning last achievement.

If I can furnish space for many millions

|                                                                                               |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| to live—not safe, I know, but free to work<br>in green and fertile fields, with man and beast | 11,565 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|

soon happy on the new-made soil

and settled in beside the mighty hill

a dauntless people's effort has erected,

creating here inside a land of Eden—

then there, without, the tide may bluster to its brim, 11,570

but where it gnaws, attempting to rush in by force.

communal effort will be quick to close the breach.

To this idea I am committed wholly,

it is the final wisdom we can reach:

|                                        |        |
|----------------------------------------|--------|
| he, only, merits freedom and existence | 11,575 |
|----------------------------------------|--------|

who wins them every day anew.

And so, beset by danger, here childhood's years,

maturity, and age will all be vigorous.

If only I might see that people's teeming life,



|                                            |        |
|--------------------------------------------|--------|
| share their autonomy on unencumbered soil; | 11,580 |
|--------------------------------------------|--------|

then, to the moment, I could say:

the traces of my days on earth

Envisioning those heights of happiness, 11,585

I now enjoy my highest moment.

MEPHISTOPHELES. No pleasure sates him, no success suffices,

this final, mediocre, empty moment—

He who resisted me with such great vigor

The clock stands still –

midnight!

MEPHISTOPHELES. It falls, and all is finished.

MEPHISTOPHELES.      *Over*—a stupid word!      11,595

## Why over?

So what's the point of making all our effort

“All’s over!”—what’s the inference from that? 11,600

but chase around in circles as if they did exist.

## INTERMENT

Who built me such a wretched house

LEMURES (*chorus*).

it's far too nicely made.

Why is the room so badly furnished?

LEMURES (*chorus*).

All items were on short-term loan.

and creditors are many.

MEPHISTOPHELES. The body's here, and if its spirit tries escaping  
I'll promptly show my blood-signed title to it—  
although, alas! today they have so many ways  
to cheat the devil of his souls.

11,615

Our good old-fashioned methods give offense,  
and modem ways won't help us much;  
once I'd have acted on my own,  
but now I'll need to call upon assistants.

Things have come to a pretty pass!

11,620

Established usages and ancient rights—  
there's nothing we can count on any more!  
The soul used to emerge when someone breathed his last;  
I'd lie in wait and, like the nimblest mouse,  
snap! it was clenched within my claws.

11,625

But now it hesitates to leave that dreary place,  
its noisome home inside a worthless corpse.  
But in the end the feuding elements  
will ignominiously evict it.

And though I fret for days on end, the questions  
*when, how, and where* continually plague me;  
old Death has lost his former mettle,  
so even *whether* has been long in doubt.

11,630

I've often coveted some limbs in *rigor mortis* —  
illusion only! They stirred and began to move again.

11,635

*(He makes fantastic gestures of conjuration, in the manner of a squad-leader.)*

Here, quickly! On the double! When you come,  
you fellows with straight horns, and you with crooked  
ones,

you sterling coins from our infernal mint,  
bring the hell-mouth along as well.

Hell, to be sure, devours with many different jaws,  
according to one's rank and status—  
though in the future, even for this final fanfare,  
people will bother less about the niceties.

11,640

*(The hideous hell-mouth, placed stage-left, opens its jaws.)*

Past gaping tusks the fiery torrent  
pours raging from the dome of the abyss,

11,645

and in the background, amid seething vapors,  
I see the Flaming City glow eternally.  
The red surf surges forward to the teeth,  
bearing damned souls that seek salvation;  
crushed in the hyena's colossal jaws,

11,650

they must retrace the fearful path of fire.  
 In the comers, much more could be discovered—  
 the maximum of horror in a minimum of space!  
 Try as you will to terrify the sinful, 11,655  
 they think these things are only lies and figments.  
     *(To the FAT DEVILS, who have short, straight horns.)*  
 You there, pot-bellied rascals with the fiery cheeks,  
 fattened on brimstone, your faces fairly shining!  
 You bullnecked scoundrels with untuning heads!  
 watch out below for any phosphorescent glow:  
 that will be Psyche with her wings—his petty soul— 11,660  
 but if you pluck them off, she is a loathsome worm.  
 The moment I have set my mark upon her,  
 away with her in flaming cyclone!  
     It is your duty, fat-paunched rogues,  
 to pay attention to the lower regions, 11,665  
 although it is somewhat uncertain  
 if that is where she would prefer to dwell.  
 The navel is one place she likes to stay,  
 so be on guard, or she may slip out there.  
     *(To the THIN DEVILS, who have long, twisting horns.)*  
 You giant clowns, file-leaders everyone, 11,670  
 keep sawing the air—no letting up!—  
 with arms full length and sharp claws out  
 to grab the fluttering fugitive.  
 Her spirit's surely wretched in her present house,  
 will want to move up right away to something better. 11,675  
     *A Glory is lowered from above-right.*  
 HEAVENLY HOST. Heavenly messengers,  
     kin to the blest above,  
     come, flying calmly,  
     to bring sinners forgiveness  
     and new life to dust; 11,680  
     provide, as you soar  
     in leisurely flight,  
     all living creatures  
     with tokens of love!  
 MEPHISTOPHELES. I hear discordant, nasty tinklings— 11,685  
     they come from that disturbing light up there;  
     such juvenile-androgynous bumbling  
     is what the sanctimonious enjoy.  
 You will remember how, in our most heinous hours,  
 we plotted the destruction of mankind: 11,690

the vilest method we invented  
exactly suits the needs of their devotions.

The canting puppies, here they come!  
Those mincing ways have cost us many a soul,  
snatched from us as they wage their war with our own  
weapons—

11,695

they're devils, too, but in disguise.  
To be defeated there would be your lasting shame—  
on to the grave, and take your stand beside it!

ANGELS (*in chorus, strewing roses*).

Roses so brilliant  
and aromatic,  
fluttering, floating,  
secretly quickening—  
on leaf-wings to hold you,  
with blossoms unfolding,  
hasten to bloom!

11,700

11,705

Springtime and crimson  
and purple, appear!  
Bring paradise down  
to him who rests here!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*to the* DEVILS).

Why do you flinch? Is that good devilish behavior?

11,710

Stand fast, and let them strew away!

## Back to your posts, you beardless boys!

No doubt they think that with this snow of tiny flowers

they'll cool your diabolic ardor,

but it will melt away before your breath.

11,715

Now blow, you bellows-devils! – That's enough!

your breathing makes the whole flock blench. –

Take it easy! Now shut your mouths and noses!

I see that you've been blowing much too hard.

## Why can't you ever learn to practice moderation!

11,720

The stuff not only shrivels, it scorches, withers—bums!

Now the bright mass of poisoned flame drifts toward us,

Brace yourselves, close ranks, and stop it! –

The devils' strength gives out! All valor's gone!

They've caught an unfamiliar scent of wheedling warmth!

11,725

THE ANGELS.

These blossoms of happiness,  
these flames filled with gladness,  
disseminate love  
and prepare for the bliss  
all hearts desire.

11,730

|                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |        |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                 | In radiant skies<br>what's said will be truth,<br>and heavenly hosts<br>will always know light.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |        |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. | A curse upon these scurvy dolts!                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 11,735 |
|                 | My fiends are standing on their heads—<br>the fat ones turning cartwheel after cartwheel,<br>before they plunge breech-first down into hell. –<br>I hope your bath will be as hot as you deserve!<br>But as for me, I won't desert my post.                                                                                                              | 11,740 |
|                 | <i>(Fighting off the roses that drift about him.)</i><br>Will-o'-the-wisps, begone! You, there! You may shine bright<br>but, once you're caught, you are a nasty whitish slime.<br>Why are you fluttering still? Be on your way! –<br>I feel the pinch of pitch and brimstone on my neck.                                                                |        |
| THE ANGELS.     | What you find alien,<br>be sure to avoid it;<br>what hurts your inward self,<br>you must reject it.<br>But if still it intrudes,<br>we must confront it.                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 11,745 |
|                 | Love only succors<br>those who can love.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 11,750 |
| MEPHISTOPHELES. | My head's on fire, and I've heart-and-liver<br>burn;<br>that superdiabolic element<br>is far more poignant than the flames of hell.                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 11,755 |
|                 | I see why you unhappy lovers moan so overmuch—<br>you who, although you're spumed, still twist<br>your necks to catch a glimpse of her you love.<br>My plight too! What's pulling my head in that direction,<br>when that's the side of my sworn foes—                                                                                                   | 11,760 |
|                 | I used to find them an offensive sight!<br>Has some strange thing infected me?<br>I love to look at them, these loveliest of youths;<br>what makes me hesitate to curse them?<br>And if I let myself become infatuated,<br>who will be henceforth called a fatuous fool!<br>Confounded rascals—though I hate them,<br>I find them only too attractive! – | 11,765 |
|                 | You lovely children, may I ask<br>if you're descendants too of Lucifer?<br>You are, I swear, so pretty that I'd like to kiss you;<br>I have a feeling you would suit me nicely.                                                                                                                                                                          | 11,770 |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| I am as much at ease and natural<br>as if we'd met a thousand times already,<br>and am as eager as a stalking kitten,<br>while you grow lovelier each time I look.<br>Please don't hang back—look at me at least once!                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 11,775 |
| THE ANGELS. Now that we are advancing, why do you<br>withdraw?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |        |
| We're coming closer, and if you can, remain!                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |        |
| <i>The ANGELS proceed to occupy the whole stage.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |        |
| MEPHISTOPHELES ( <i>forced into the proscenium</i> ).<br>You call us spirits damned but prove to be<br>the actual sorcerers yourselves,<br>for you seduce both men and women. –<br>Oh, what a damnable affair!<br>Is this the stuff that love is made of?                                                                                                                                                                      | 11,780 |
| My body is on fire everywhere—<br>I hardly feel those bums upon my neck. –<br>You're hovering without direction—come down here<br>and use your limbs in ways a bit more worldly;<br>your grave looks suit you very nicely, I admit,<br>but just for once I'd like to see your smile—<br>that would afford me everlasting ecstasy!<br>I have in mind the way that lovers look:<br>it only takes a little movement of the mouth. | 11,785 |
| You, there, the lad that's tall, I like you best;<br>that sanctimonious air is not becoming to you,<br>so please give me a slightly wanton look!<br>Another thing! Without offending decency<br>you could wear less; long pleated robes are prudish –<br>They're turning – see them from the rear! –<br>the rascals really whet my appetite!                                                                                   | 11,790 |
| THE ANGELS. Turn into clarity,<br>you fires of passion!<br>May truth cure all<br>who seek self-damnation,<br>so that from evil<br>they win joyous redemption<br>and, one with the All,<br>are evermore blessed!                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 11,795 |
| THE ANGELS. Turn into clarity,<br>you fires of passion!<br>May truth cure all<br>who seek self-damnation,<br>so that from evil<br>they win joyous redemption<br>and, one with the All,<br>are evermore blessed!                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 11,800 |
| MEPHISTOPHELES ( <i>regaining composure</i> ).<br>What's happening to me? – Like Job a mass of boils<br>from head to toe, a horror to myself,<br>and yet triumphant after self-inspection,<br>still confident in both my tribe and self!                                                                                                                                                                                       | 11,805 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 11,810 |

The parts essential to a devil all are rescued,  
the love-illusion has become a healing rash; 11,815  
all those atrocious flames have now stopped burning—  
and, as is only proper, I curse you one and all!

THE ANGELS. Fires of holiness!  
Whom they encompass,  
will live in blessed oneness  
with all who are good. 11,820  
Let us, together,  
ascend and give praise!  
The air is now purified,  
his spirit may breathe!

*The ANGELS rise, bearing away the immortal part of FAUST.*

MEPHISTOPHELES (*looking about*).  
But what has happened, where can they have gone? – 11,825  
You stole a march on me, you puppies! –  
They're flying off toward heaven with my prey—  
so that is why they dallied at the graveside!  
They've robbed me of a great, unequalled treasure;  
the noble soul that pledged itself to me— 11,830  
they've tricked me out of it and smuggled it away.

From whom can I now seek redress?  
Who will procure me what I've duly earned?  
You've been deceived—and late in life, besides—  
it serves you right, this is your worst of times. 11,835  
I bungled everything disgracefully,  
and so, o shame! a great investment's wasted—  
a seasoned devil overcome  
by vulgar lust, erotic silliness!  
If one possessing wisdom and experience 11,840  
could get involved in childish madness,  
it is indeed the very height of folly  
that in the end defeated him.

---

#### MOUNTAIN GORGES

*Forest, rocks. A solitude with HOLY ANCHORETS in crevices of the mountainside.*

CHORUS and ECHO. Woods seek to come near  
as rocks press them down, 11,845  
roots try to take hold  
as trees crowd together,  
wave splashes on wave

|                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                         | as caves give us shelter;<br>lions roaming about,<br>silent and friendly,<br>respect this asylum,<br>love's sanctuary.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 11,850                                                                     |
| PATER ECSTATICUS ( <i>hovering at various levels</i> ). | Searing eternal bliss,<br>love's bond of fire,<br>heart's seething anguish,<br>divine surges of rapture—<br>arrows, transpierce me,<br>lances, subdue me,<br>batter me, cudgels,<br>lightning, crash through me,<br>so that what's trivial<br>may evanesce<br>and love's lasting core<br>shine as a constant star!                     | 11,855<br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>11,860<br><br><br><br>11,865 |
| PATER PROFUNDUS ( <i>in a lower region</i> ).           | When the abyss of rock below<br>weighs down abysses deeper still,<br>when jetting streams in thousands plunge<br>into the seething cataract,<br>when with its strong innate compulsion<br>a tree will rise straight to the sky,<br>it is all-potent Love that gives<br>all things their form, sustains all things.                     | 11,870                                                                     |
|                                                         | When all about me there is tumult—<br>woods and ravines a surging sea—<br>the roar is pleasant as the streams,<br>bringing water to a valley,<br>gush and plunge into the gorge;<br>the thunderbolts that crashed in flame<br>to purify the atmosphere<br>of poisonous vapors it had nursed—                                           | 11,875<br><br><br><br><br><br><br>11,880                                   |
|                                                         | these messengers of love proclaim<br>creative force encompassing us always.<br>May it enkindle, too, my inner being<br>where, confused and chill, my spirit<br>is consumed, racked by their fetters,<br>in the tormenting bondage of my blunted senses.<br>Quiet, o God, my troubled thoughts,<br>and grant my needy heart Your light! | 11,885                                                                     |
| PATER SERAPHICUS ( <i>at median elevation</i> ).        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                            |



|                                                                                                                                                                           |        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Lo! a morning-wisp of cloud is floating<br>through the spruces' waving hair;<br>I divine what lives within it—<br>it's a group of newborn spirits.                        | 11,890 |
| BLESSED BOYS ( <i>in chorus</i> ).                                                                                                                                        |        |
| Tell us, Father, where we're going,<br>kindly tell us who we are! –<br>We are happy, for existence<br>seems so easy to us all.                                            | 11,895 |
| PATER SERAPHICUS.                                                                                                                                                         |        |
| You are boys!—were born at midnight,<br>half-endowed with mind and senses—<br>right away lost to your parents,<br>for us angels, source of gain.                          | 11,900 |
| Since you feel someone is present<br>who can love you, come to me;<br>you are fortunate that on you<br>earth's harsh paths have left no mark.                             | 11,905 |
| Come down here into my eyes,<br>organs made to see this world;<br>you may use them as your own—<br>gaze upon the landscape here!                                          |        |
| (He takes the BOYS into himself.)                                                                                                                                         |        |
| Those are trees, and those are rocks,<br>that's a stream—its falling waters<br>tumble down in giant loops<br>to make short the steep descent.                             | 11,910 |
| BLESSED BOYS ( <i>heard as if speaking from within</i> PATER SERAPHICUS).                                                                                                 |        |
| That is a tremendous sight,<br>but this place, it is too gloomy,<br>makes us quake with fear and dread.<br>Kindly let us leave, good sir!                                 | 11,915 |
| PATER SERAPHICUS. Rise to higher spheres above,<br>growing imperceptibly<br>as God's pure sustaining presence                                                             |        |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 11,920 |
| always works to make you stronger.<br>Absolute where skies are boundless,<br>it is this which feeds all spirits:<br>eternal love's epiphany<br>that flowers as beatitude. | 11,925 |
| BLESSED BOYS ( <i>circling the highest summits</i> ).                                                                                                                     |        |
| Let us join hands<br>to begin a gay round;                                                                                                                                |        |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| <p>let's dance and let's sing<br/>and feel pious besides!<br/>With such godly instruction<br/>there's no need to be hesitant,<br/>and soon we'll behold<br/>Him we revere.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 11,930 |
| <p>ANGELS (<i>hovering in the upper sky with the immortal part of</i><br/>FAUST).<br/>This worthy member of the spirit world<br/>is rescued from the devil:<br/>for him whose striving never ceases<br/>we can provide redemption;<br/>and if a higher love as well<br/>has shown an interest in him,<br/>the hosts of heaven come<br/>and greet him with a cordial welcome.</p>                                                                | 11,935 |
| <p>YOUNGER ANGELS. All those roses, given us<br/>by penitents whose love is saintly,<br/>helped us win our victory<br/>and fulfill our lofty mission,<br/>helped us seize this priceless soul.<br/>When they fell, the wicked faltered,<br/>when they hit, the devils fled.<br/>Spirits used to hellish torment<br/>felt the pangs of love instead;<br/>even the old Master-Devil<br/>suffered agony all over.<br/>Hallelujah! We have won!</p> | 11,940 |
| <p>YOUNGER ANGELS. All those roses, given us<br/>by penitents whose love is saintly,<br/>helped us win our victory<br/>and fulfill our lofty mission,<br/>helped us seize this priceless soul.<br/>When they fell, the wicked faltered,<br/>when they hit, the devils fled.<br/>Spirits used to hellish torment<br/>felt the pangs of love instead;<br/>even the old Master-Devil<br/>suffered agony all over.<br/>Hallelujah! We have won!</p> | 11,945 |
| <p>MORE-PERFECT ANGELS.<br/>This remainder of earth,<br/>it's distasteful to bear it;<br/>even cremated,<br/>it would still be impure.<br/>When a strong spirit<br/>has taken the elements<br/>and made them its own,</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 11,950 |
| <p>This remainder of earth,<br/>it's distasteful to bear it;<br/>even cremated,<br/>it would still be impure.<br/>When a strong spirit<br/>has taken the elements<br/>and made them its own,</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 11,955 |
| <p>angels can't separate<br/>two natures conjoined<br/>in one single entity—<br/>only Eternal Love<br/>can disunite them.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 11,960 |
| <p>YOUNGER ANGELS. Close to us here,<br/>I suddenly sense</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 11,965 |

spirit-life stirring  
as mists near the mountain-top. 11,970

The clouds, now transparent,  
 reveal Blessed Boys,  
 all lively and active;  
 free of earth's pressures  
 they've formed a circle  
 and now are enjoying  
 the upper world's beauty,  
 the freshness of spring. –

11,975

|                                |        |
|--------------------------------|--------|
| As his start toward perfection |        |
| let him who has come           |        |
| be their companion!            | 11,980 |

BLESSED BOYS. We're glad to receive  
 this chrysalid entity,  
 since it's you angels  
 who give us the surety.  
 Let's pull off the floss  
 still clinging to him!  
 Filled with life's sacredness  
 he's handsome and tall.

11,985

DOCTOR MARIANUS (*in the highest and neatest cell*).  
The view here is vast,  
the spirit exalted. 11,990

There I see women  
floating past upwards—  
I can tell by the glory  
that she at the center  
of their wreath of stars  
is heaven's High Queen.

(*In ecstasy.*) Sovereign mistress of the world,  
 let me, in the azure  
 of the heaven's canopy,  
 contemplate your secrets!

12,000

Sanction that which stirs man's heart  
to earnest tenderness  
and bears it aloft to you  
in love's sacred rapture.

When you give august commands, 12,005  
nothing daunts our courage;  
when we know the peace you give,  
passion soon is quiet—  
Virgin, pure in the best sense;

venerated Mother; 12,010  
one coequal of the gods;  
Queen we have elected!

Nebulous cloudlets  
dancing around her  
are penitent women— 12,015  
delicate creatures,  
down at her knees  
breathing the pureness,  
anxious for mercy.

You whom none may ever touch 12,020  
always gladly suffer  
those who're easily seduced  
to confide in you.

Hard indeed it is to save  
those swept away by weakness— 12,025  
how can they, desire's slaves,  
burst their bonds unaided?  
All too quickly feet give way  
on a slippery slope!  
Who resists a welcoming look, 12,030  
is deaf to words that flatter?

*The MATER GLORIOSA now floats past.*

PENITENT WOMEN (*in chorus*).

You who soar upward  
to eternity's kingdoms,  
o peerless Being,  
fountain of mercy, 12,035  
give ear to our prayers.

MAGNA PECCATRIX [Luke, 7, 36].

By the love that shed the tears—  
which the Pharisee despised—  
to be ointment for the feet  
of your son, whom God transfigured; 12,040

by that box of alabaster  
with its overflowing fragrance  
and the hair that wiped and dried  
the sacred limbs so tenderly –

MULIER SAMARITANA [John 4].

By the well to which of old 12,045  
the flocks of Abraham were driven  
and the waterpot allowed  
to refresh our Savior's lips;

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| by the pure, abundant waters<br>that since then spring up from it<br>and in everlasting brightness<br>overflow and flood the universe –                                                                                                                                                                                              | 12,050                                   |
| MARIA AEGYPTICA [ <i>Acta Sanctorum</i> ].<br>By that holiest of places,<br>where our Lord has been entombed,<br>and the arm that from its door<br>thrust me back with silent warning;<br>by the forty years that I devoted<br>to true penance in the desert<br>and the peaceful farewell message<br>that I wrote down in the sand – | 12,055<br><br><br><br><br><br><br>12,060 |
| THE THREE PENITENTS ( <i>together</i> ).<br>You who let come near to you<br>women who have greatly sinned,<br>and augment the gains of penance<br>in eternity forever,<br>grant unto this good soul also—<br>one who lost her head but once,<br>unaware that she did wrong—<br>as is fitting, your forgiveness!                      | 12,065                                   |
| A PENITENT <i>alias</i> GRETCHEN ( <i>clinging to the</i> MATER GLORIOSA).<br>Deign, O Deign,<br>you who are peerless,<br>you who are radiant,<br>to look down on my joy—<br>the love of my youth,<br>no longer unhappy,<br>has now returned!                                                                                        | 12,070<br><br><br><br><br><br>12,075     |
| BLESSED BOYS ( <i>circling closer</i> ).<br>Already he has grown<br>bigger than we,<br>and will reward our loving care<br>with love still greater:<br>as children we were separated<br><br>from all of life's spheres;<br>but this man has gained learning,<br>he'll be our teacher.                                                 | 12,080                                   |
| THE PENITENT (GRETCHEN).<br>Amid this host of lofty spirits<br>our novice is uncertain he exists,<br>but when he senses there is new life here,                                                                                                                                                                                      | 12,085                                   |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| <p>he soon will be the peer of any angel.<br/> See him work loose from all the bonds<br/> that once enveloped him on earth!<br/> See how his early, youthful vigor<br/> shows to advantage in ethereal raiment!<br/> Grant me permission to instruct him—<br/> he still is dazzled by the strange new light.</p> | 12,090 |
| <p>MATER GLORIOSA. Come, rise to higher spheres—<br/> Sensing your presence, he will follow!</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 12,095 |
| <p>DOCTOR MARIANUS (<i>prostrate, in adoration</i>).<br/> Look up to salvation's eyes,<br/> tender penitents,<br/> so that you may gratefully<br/> be reborn for heaven! –<br/> May all nobler spirits be<br/> eager for thy service;<br/> Virgin, Mother, Queen, and Goddess,<br/> keep us in your grace!</p>   | 12,100 |
| <p>CHORUS MYSTICUS. All that is transitory<br/> is only a symbol;<br/> what seems unachievable<br/> here is seen done;<br/> what's indescribable<br/> here becomes fact;<br/> Woman, eternally,</p>                                                                                                              | 12,105 |
| <p>shows us the way.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 12,110 |

[Finis.]

---

## NOTES

### CHRONOLOGY OF THE COMPOSITION OF FAUST

[Dates in square brackets are those of publication.]

- 1771–1772      Simultaneous interest in Götz von Berlichingen and in the puppet-play hero (cf. *Dichtung und Wahrheit*, Book X [1812] and Book XII [1814]).
- 1773–1775      “Urfaust.” [‘The King in Thule,’ 1782; *Faust. A Fragment*, 1790 (about 1600 verses correspond to “Urfaust” passages); the subsequently discarded scene ‘A Highway,’ 1794; *Goethe’s Faust in ursprünglicher Gestalt*, 1887.]  
Cf. *Faust*, v. 354–605; 1868–2050; 2073–2336—here followed by ‘A Highway’ (4 verses); 2608–3216; 3374–3619; 3776–3834; 3620–59; 3342–69; ‘An Expanse of Open Country’; 4399–4612.
- 1787–1790      *Faust. A Fragment* [1790].  
Cf. *Faust*, v. 354–605; 1770–1867;\* 1868–2050 (1882–95, 1904–10, 1964–2000); 2051–72; 2073–2336 (2095ff., 2015–8, 2120–3, 2161–78, 2181–8, 2270–3, 2284–9, 2313–5, 2324f., 2331, 2336); 2337–2604; 2605–3261; 3374–3586; 3217–3341, 3370–73; 3587–3619; 3776–3834.
- 1797–1801      *Faust I* [1808]. (New are v. 1–353; 598–601, 606–1769; 2366–77; 3290–3; 3835–4334; 4343–98; some 50 verses in the scene ‘Prison’—4405–4612—without equivalents in the prose of “Urfaust.”)
- 1800–1801      *Faust II* begun.  
‘Helen in the Middle Ages’ [1888].—Cf. *Faust*, v. 8489–8802.  
Act I, first two scenes (v. 4613–c.5064).  
Act V, Faust’s death (v. 11,151–c. 11,603, *passim*).
- 1816      Résumé of Acts I, III, and IV, originally meant for inclusion in *Dichtung und Wahrheit* [1888].
- 1825f.      *Helen. Classico-Romantic Phantasmagoria. A Faust Intermezzo* [1827].

- 1827f. Act IV begun (v. 10,039–66), and Act I continued (text of v. 4613–6036 in definitive form).  
1828 Opening scenes of Act II (v. 6566–7004).—*Faust II*, v. 4613–6036, published as a continuation of *Faust I* (to which v. 4335–42 are added).  
1829f. Act I completed (*i.e.*, final revision of v. 6037–6565).  
1830 ‘Classical Walpurgisnight’ (v. 7005–8487).  
1830f. Act V completed (v. 11,043–142; c. 11,604–12,111).  
1831 Act IV completed (v. 10,067–11,042) and, after final revision, the manuscript of *Faust II* sealed for posthumous publication.  
1832 *Faust II* [1833] posthumously printed.
- 

---

\**Newly written or extensively revised passages in Faust. A Fragment and Faust I are indicated by italic verse-numbers.*



## GOETHE'S *FAUST* AND THE PRESENT TRANSLATION

Faust is often thought of as the figure who embodies most completely—in proportions determined by the temper of the times—what are considered the best or the worst features of the German national character. He is also universally acknowledged to be the prototypical representative, for better or worse, of all post-medieval civilizations. Both these somewhat contradictory but not mutually exclusive conceptions of what Faust symbolizes ultimately derive from the fact that he is the protagonist of a tragedy which Goethe began in the early 1770's, when he and other young writers were urgently concerned with creating what they hoped would be a literature with distinctively German themes and qualities, but which he subsequently transmuted into a drama expressing humanistic and cosmopolitan values that transcend all nationalisms. Into the tragedy he reconceived and began to execute in 1788, toward the end of his first sojourn in Italy, Goethe fitted almost all of what he had originally written for his *Faust*. He was guided by the ideal of a new classicism that would reconcile permanently his aesthetic and scientific modes of thought and would reflect the influence, until the completion of the drama in 1831, of what he had come to regard—primarily because of their high artistic achievements—as the exemplary greatness of Greco-Roman antiquity and the Renaissance.

*Faust* is thus a mosaic, often in one and the same scene, of elements written decades apart—for details the reader is referred to the tabular summary “Chronology of the Composition of *Faust*” (p. 306 f.). Only what Goethe completed, at Schiller's urging and with Schiller's encouragement, as [Part One](#) contains passages that grant an occasional glimpse of his original, relatively naive, dramatic conception; although they hardly constitute a tenth of the total text of *Faust*, they are often emotionally powerful or trenchantly witty and give [Part One](#) a greater range of tonal intensity than [Part Two](#), which otherwise is distinguished by even more variety of tone and style. Begun in 1800, when [Part One](#) was still unfinished, [Part Two](#)—nearly twice its length—took Goethe almost exactly the same number of years to complete as had [Part One](#). Although, between 1801 and 1825, he is not known to have written any passage of *Faust*, Goethe

continued to make revisions of his plans for it and of the motifs to be used. Thus, in 1816, still uncertain whether he would ever be able to complete the drama, he prepared for inclusion in *Dichtung und Wahrheit* a detailed summary of the action of [Part Two](#) as he then conceived it. It was while revising this summary for publication that he was persuaded in early 1825 by Eckermann and others to withhold it, and to undertake instead the completion of [Part Two](#), which is therefore comprised primarily of material actually written in Goethe's last years.

Composed over so many decades, often at moments of immediate response to new ideas and experiences, *Faust* mirrors in varying degrees of intensity the ever-widening interests and concerns of Goethe's long and rich life which are thematically integral to it. Accordingly, despite the unified conception underlying its dramatic action, themes and motifs are sometimes developed so fully, with such great abruptness, or in such a variety of styles that (to be sure, more for the reader than the theater-goer) their functions become evident only when an earlier context is remembered or a subsequent one illuminates them. Motival repetition and thematic counterpoint are thus often more important, especially in [Part Two](#), than immediate transparency of plot or character development; they offset structural ellipses, integrate what would otherwise be disparate textual elements, and, as a consequence, establish the interconnectedness of the several real worlds and their imaginary extensions in which the action of *Faust* takes place. Regardless of any disadvantages attendant upon it, the quasi-organic complexity consequent to Goethe's mode of composition keeps *Faust* free of the monotonous homogeneity or artificial heterogeneity that flaws otherwise comparable dramas of epic scope by authors who emulated Goethe's technique of varying dramatic styles and prosodic forms. (Examples would be contemporaries like Tieck, Brentano, Atterbom, and Oehlenschläger, and such later writers as Mickiewicz, Ibsen, Hardy, and Werfel.)

That in *Faust* the primary function of formal variety is to be thematic rather than ornamental best explains why Goethe prefaced his tragedy with three prologues—Dedication, Prelude on the Stage, Prologue in Heaven—which would otherwise be superfluous. Neither the dedication nor the stage-prelude makes any specific reference to Faust or to the plot of *Faust*, and although the heaven-scene announces an untraditional use of the Faust legend—the tragedy's

hero is to prove to be “a good man”—it too says nothing about the action of the play, while all it has to say about Faust will be stated dramatically in either [Part One](#) or [Part Two](#) of the tragedy proper. The three prologues do serve, however, to establish the thematic and tonal range that is to be a salient feature of *Faust*. The subdued, almost private, elegiac lyricism of Dedication is immediately followed by the realism of the farce-like scene in which the voices of cynical materialism and conciliatory practicality quickly silence the voice of conventionally rhetorical pathos. And after this typically eighteenth-century pseudo-improvisation there comes the timeless symbolism of a miracle-play heaven in which the rapid alternation of hymnlike sublimity, satiric diatribe, and gentle irony demonstrates that intense lyricism can coexist as it were simultaneously with bathos and ridicule.

The great tonal range displayed in these prologues is not without antecedents in dramatic literature—Shakespeare and Calderón, both of whom Goethe much admired, are major earlier masters of it—but it is not to be found in the introductory scenes of what was to be a serious play (and had perhaps never been used with such virtuoso concentration as in Goethe’s Prologue in Heaven). By insistently indicating that *Faust* represents a radical break with—or at least radical modification and extension of the functions of—traditional poetic and dramaturgical elements, it underscores the fact that Goethe’s drama will deviate radically from tradition in its conception of Faust’s character and its use of motifs from an already well-established Faust-legend.

The only writer before Goethe to anticipate the motif of Faust’s salvation was Lessing, but although an earnest concern for truth was to save his primarily intellectual hero from the paths of wickedness, traditional motifs were to constitute the main action of his never completed play, which is only a dream that Faust would awaken from as a better and wiser man. With the exception of Paul Valéry, most later writers—e.g. Heine, Gounod’s librettists Barbier and Carré, Thomas Mann, Dorothy Sayers, John Hersey—have been more conservative and conventional than Goethe; despite their often generous use of motifs, like the Gretchen action, which are Goethe’s sole invention, they have preferred to follow earlier tradition and let Faust sell his soul to the devil and, after twenty-four years of wish-fulfillment, die either literally or figuratively damned. Even Arrigo

Boito's *Faust*-opera, by virtue of its title *Mefistofele*, pays homage to that tradition, and although its Faust is "saved," by giving the miracle-play motif of Prologue in Heaven a dramatic function not attached to it in Goethe's tragedy, his work represents a return to the tradition established by Marlowe's morality play of treating the *Faust* theme allegorically.

By virtue of its extremes of tone and style—motivally embodied in Prologue in Heaven as the polarity of light (Divine Reason) and darkness (human and Mephistophelean finitude)—Goethe's tri-partite introduction establishes thematic variation and contrastive parallel as basic structuring principles of the tragedy that follows. The flexible application of these principles not only makes congruous the coexistence of present and past, of reality and dream, of temporality and timelessness, of life and art, of actuality and vision; through small and large parallelisms it also keeps certain longer scenes and several loosely connected scene-sequences from being a mere congeries of discrete elements and, most importantly, integrates with [Part One](#) of *Faust* a [Part Two](#) not radically different in dramatic and other techniques, but very unlike it in the proportions in which these are used. Thus the brief dream-play that in [Part One](#) concludes Faust's Walpurgis Night visions adds little to them and means nothing to him, while that, well over ten times its length, which follows the visions of his "classical" Walpurgisnight significantly extends the symbolic exteriorization of his growing ability to be objective, especially about himself. Analogously, [Part Two](#) has many more, and many much longer, passages of strictly regular verse than does [Part One](#), most immediately noticeable being those from which rhyme is absent; whereas in [Part One](#) only one of its three unrhymed passages (23 verses in iambic pentameter) is metrically regular, in [Part Two](#) there are five scenes with longer passages in variously regular unrhymed meters (in all nearly 1100 verses, including 101 iambic pentameters).

A motival technique much more important in [Part Two](#) than in [Part One](#) is the use of iconic and pictorial elements. Although Goethe occasionally employs this technique in [Part One](#), chiefly in passages composed after his espousal of conscious classicism, and then chiefly as an ornamental surrogate for or supplement to detailed stage directions, in [Part Two](#) he uses it not only more extensively and more insistently, but also to all intents and purposes exclusively as a sign indicating that what is described—usually a motif from classical or

Renaissance art—is to be displayed or imagined as Faust envisions it. This obviously holds true for the iconic elements of the long masque he stages for the Emperor, but elsewhere in the drama—whether or not Faust is an active participant or even present—its importance is far greater, since it establishes that what is happening must be looked at from Faust’s point of view and in terms of how it mirrors a given stage of his development as a dramatic character. Insofar as they are chiefly “classical,” the iconic motifs in *Faust* often reflect Goethe’s personal artistic preferences, but if they have an extra-dramatic function, it is not to document his aesthetic judgments or his knowledge of art history, but to underscore the secular-humanistic and humane-liberal values he lets Faust share with himself—values which, as he wrote [Part Two](#) of his tragedy, seemed threatened by a romantic cult of the irrational and by the forces of political, social, and religious reaction too often supported in the post-Napoleonic decades by consciously conservative exponents of romanticism. However ornamentally used, the iconic motifs of *Faust* are thus never merely incidental; like its motifs from myth and history, music and literature, philosophy and science, they represent elements that, by being archetypally significant, illuminate and bring into focus the themes and values given symbolic substance in Goethe’s uniquely universal drama.

---

Even the most scrupulous translation, whether prose or verse, will fail to convey some distinctive feature of an original text—a shade of meaning, a degree of emphasis, a sound effect, a level of tone, etc. A translator may be aware of all such textual features, but since no two languages are sufficiently alike to permit the simultaneous transfer of more than some of them from one language to another, the translator of a particular text has to decide which of its features it is most important to retain in translation. Translating, unless merely piecemeal hackwork, is thus a hermeneutic process, and a translation represents the results not only of textual analysis and linguistic (chiefly historico-lexicographical) interpretation, but also, and far more significantly, since this will determine what the translator retains in translation, of critical evaluation.

*Faust* as translated here will, I hope, give the English reader fully adequate equivalents of those features of the text which I have

already indicated I regard as most important. Its language is present-day English, not so much because there was in Goethe's day no contemporary literary equivalent of Goethe's German that could be recreated, but because only modern English permits the reading or reciting of the text at a tempo approximating that possible with the German original. Accordingly, I have consciously introduced slightly old-fashioned words or turns of phrase only when it seemed appropriate to provide the counterpart of a German archaism, have eliminated *thee* and *thou* except when God is addressed (even though this has occasionally meant the addition of words to clarify whether a *you* is singular or plural), and have reproduced inversions only when they are thought-structuring rather than German-grammatical. And although I always sought the closest possible English approximations of the rhythms of Goethe's text, I have not hesitated to sacrifice metrical regularity to idiomatic clarity.

Most translators of *Faust* into English (some ninety of the hundred, including myself on two earlier occasions, who have heretofore translated either the entire text or generous portions of it) seem to have subscribed to the view that the distinguishing feature of poetry is rhyme. Although they sometimes have demonstrated a keen ear for Goethe's rhythms or substituted for them effective rhythmic patterns of their own, simply by employing rhyme—either rhyme schemes modeled upon those of the German text or, occasionally, ones of their own choosing—they have made it a far more conspicuous prosodic element in their translations than it is in the original German. In *Faust*, as in most of Goethe's verse, rhyme is minimally obtrusive, since it ordinarily functions only to mark line-closure, i.e., to indicate the length of rhythmic units. To write doggerel, convoluted English, or non-English ("translatese") for the sake of having rhyme gives as false an impression of how and what Goethe wrote as does mistranslation of lexical and syntactic elements. Aware of this, a handful of translators chose to disregard Goethe's use of verse and were content to reproduce the tonal range of *Faust* only to the extent that it can be conveyed through prose. A few others tried using blank verse as the sole equivalent of what in *Faust* is great metrical variety. In each case, but especially in the second, the result has been a rhythmic homogenization that is not only minimally functional but, sooner or later, monotonous as well.

To avoid the pitfalls of rhyme, the limitations of prose, and the



losses attendant upon metrical transposition or homogenization, in this translation I have made extensive use of what Randall Jarrell called “metered verse” (and used for his translation of [Part One](#) of *Faust*). By dispensing with rhyme it almost always permits the translator to reproduce the rhythms and to convey adequately the prosodic variety of Goethe’s German without recourse to inappropriate inversions or distortions of meaning. It not only allows inconspicuous transition to rhyme when rhyme—usually because it is mentioned—is demanded by the text of *Faust*; it is also so distinctively flexible that, when metrical regularity must contrast functionally with it, this regularity is immediately recognizable. I have therefore made it a basic principle to introduce no “undemanded” rhyme into my translation. To do so in order to imitate a rhymed couplet marking a scene-closure would be to attach a greater degree of importance to it than it has in an already rhymed context. To do so when rhyme is simply a signifier of lyric intensity, as in Gretchen’s monologue at her spinning-wheel, would be to intrude into the text a dramatically incongruous *Singspiel* or opera-like element as well as to diminish the functional effectiveness of other metrically regular passages meant—and marked—for singing. And to do so with these metrically regular passages would, in a now normally unrhymed context, make them unwarrantedly more conspicuous than are their German equivalents. (That, whatever its functional importance, rhyme is inconspicuous in *Faust* can most easily be confirmed by consulting the German counterpart of Bartlett’s *Familiar Quotations*, Büchmann’s *Geflügelte Worte*; of the 50 *Faust* passages cited in my edition of it, only 15 are two lines or more in length, and only two of these 15 constitute rhymed couplets.)

In the present translation metered verse usually corresponds to what in the original are either octosyllabic couplets or irregularly rhymed passages of lines with as few as one and as many as six stresses. Stanzaic verses are normally, and *terza rima* and non-discontinuous alexandrine couplets are always, reproduced (without rhyme) in more or less exact equivalents of the original meters; as in the German text of Goethe, indentation makes stanzaic verse immediately identifiable. The few irregularly rhythmical unrhymed verses of the German text—they occur only in [Part One](#)—have been assimilated to metered verse. Blank verse, and the lines in rhymeless “classical” meters of [Part Two](#), are differentiated from metered verse

by their sustained metrical regularity. Goethe's "classical" strophes, which appear only in Act III of [Part Two](#), strictly imitate Greek models and, when there is an antistrophe, repeat its meters. I have not—as, at the expense of clarity of expression, I did in earlier translations—reproduced their metrical patterns exactly, but offer only rhythmic approximations of them; their irregular rhythms distinguish them from stanzaic verses that, even though also rhymeless, are metrically far more regular. Naturalness of idiom has, I believe, never been sacrificed in order to establish stanzaic or metrical regularity, and it is the explanation of why—as is sometimes the case, though less often, in Goethe's German—classical verses are here occasionally hypermetric or have, like some alexandrines, an improperly placed caesura. (Identification of verse forms and their German equivalents is provided, *passim*, in the Explanatory Notes to the text of this edition.)

Although, Goethe says in *Dichtung und Wahrheit* with reference to prose translations of Shakespeare, rhythm and rhyme make poetic works Poetry, "what actually produces a profound and fundamental effect... is what remains of a poet when he is translated into prose. It leaves us with the essential substance, which a dazzling exterior ... may have concealed." How best to be faithful to the substance—the meaning—of *Faust* and convey in English its poetic essence is the fundamental decision that its translator must make. All other decisions are ones that arise in connection with any translation and are, in the case of *Faust*, chiefly syntactic and lexicographical. If the translator is not trapped by "false friends"—does not mistake some lexical or grammatical element for another that resembles it, does not fail to recognize that the semantic value of a word may no longer be what it was in Goethe's day, and does not fall into the trap of using an English word that, although it strongly resembles a German one in the text, has very different connotations—the result can be a reasonably close English counterpart of what *Faust* says and means. The only trap a scrupulous translator may fail to avoid is translating too carefully and too much. As Lessing noted:

Over-exactness makes any translation stiff; what is natural in one language cannot always be so in another. And when verses are translated (even) a prose translation becomes dilute and skewed. For where is there a successful versifier whom meter or rhyme ... has not caused to say something otherwise than he would have without their constraints? If the translator



cannot discern when this has occurred and lacks the judgment and courage to omit incidentals, to replace a metaphor by its referent, to supplement an ellipsis or introduce one, he will transmit to us all the flaws of a text without the symmetry and euphony that made venial their presence in its original language.

In making my translation of *Faust* I have frequently followed Lessing's implicit advice; the one important exception is that I have kept textual elements apparently incidental to rhyme closure—i.e., that seem only to prepare for or to complete a rhyme—when a context of flexible line-lengths permitted their unobtrusive retention.

The distinctive features of the original text that have been preserved in this translation will, I believe, permit English readers to understand why *Faust* has long been everywhere recognized as one of the world's "Great Books," and why Goethe has earned an acknowledged place beside Homer, Dante, and Shakespeare in the pantheon of Western literature. In a world of time and history, *Faust* is Goethe's timeless vision of what it is to be human. It is the expression of a spirit that transcends any national character, and I hope that my translation into today's English lets this spirit be fully conveyed.

## BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

The translation of [Part One](#), and of [Part Two](#) v. 4613–6036 and v. 8488–10,038, is based on the last editions published under Goethe's personal supervision (1827 f.); for the sections of [Part Two](#) published posthumously, I have normally followed the first edition (1832), which, despite minor deviations from Goethe's manuscript text, best reproduces his often helpfully idiosyncratic punctuation. Line numbering, as in all modern German editions of *Faust*, is that of Goethe, *Werke*, 1. Abt., XIV–XV (Weimar, 1884 f.): a few discrepancies occur when idiomatic English did not permit line-for-line equivalents of the German text.

---

As of 1981, 12 English translations of *Faust* were in print.

There are two prose translations of both Parts, one by B. Q. Morgan, and the other by Barker Fairley; the latter, somewhat free and often deliberately elliptical, occasionally omits—it may be presumed, inadvertently—short sections of the text.

The verse translations of both Parts that offer more or less close approximations of the original meters and rhyme schemes are those by Bayard Taylor, Philip Wayne, Charles Passage, and Walter Arndt; a revision of Taylor's translation by Stuart Atkins; and the W. H. Bruford revision of the translation of Theodore Martin. With these may be included the abridged version of Louis MacNeice, a translation of about two-thirds of the text; its most notable omissions are *Dedication*, *Prelude on the Stage*, Mephistopheles' interview with the Student, *Auerbach's Wine-Cellar*, *Walpurgis Night's Dream*, *A Great Hall* (the Court Masquerade), the scene between Mephistopheles and the Baccalaureate, slightly more than half of "Classical Walpurgisnight," the entire first section of Act III, and about one-third of Act IV.

There are also in print two translations of [Part One](#) almost entirely in "metered verse," by Carlyle F. MacIntyre and by Randall Jarrell (with v. 3374–3413 by Robert Lowell), and a rhyming translation of it by John Prudhoe.

---

Information in English about Faust, and commentaries on and interpretations of *Faust*, can be found under the entries “Goethe” and “Faust” in any library catalogue or general encyclopedia, and in many editions of *Faust* (including the translations of Arndt and Taylor-Atkins). The selective bibliography in Vol. III of Goethe, *Werke*, “Hamburger Ausgabe,” ed. Erich Trunz (München: C. H. Beck), which is updated every two or three years, is international in its coverage and, in addition, lists all comprehensive Faust-bibliographies to date.

Illustrations of many of the works of art alluded to in *Faust* are reproduced in the Passage translation and in the German editions with commentary by Georg Witkowski.

---

## EXPLANATORY NOTES

All references are to line numbers (in *italics*) — When not reproduced in the translation, distinctive verse forms are identified. If not identified in the notes, and not printed as stanzas, unrhymed iambic verse represents iambic lines (usually with four to six stresses) variously rhymed—e.g., *aa*, *abab*, *abba*, etc.

**1–32** (and **59–74**) ottava rima (iambic pentameter, rhymed *abababcc*).

**2** *young* 25 years earlier (1772, since these lines were written when Goethe undertook, in 1797, to complete **Part I**).

**17** *songs* (Germ. *Gesänge*—also: the books of an epic poem).

**21** *tragic song* in texts printed in Goethe's lifetime: *Leid* (sorrow); in some modern editions: *Lied* (song), a manuscript reading.

**26** *spirit realm* realm of the spirit (of dream, imagination, and poetry —not: of spirit creatures).

**27** *aeolian harp* traditionally: the lyre of the heart, of uncontrollable feeling.

**33–242** *Director*: financial principal of an acting troupe. *Poet-Playwright* (Germ. *Theaterdichter*): primarily an adapter of others' works to the troupe's resources. *Player of Comic Roles* (Germ. *Lustige Person*): actor-clown, a figure that largely disappeared from the German stage in the course of the 18th century. Time: first two-thirds of that century (53: late afternoon performances had long ceased to be customary when Goethe began completing **Part I**).

**156 f.** variation of the Renaissance commonplace that the gods are the invention or creation of poets.

**243–353** parallels to Job 1 f.

**243–70** hymn stanzas (rhymed *abab*).

**285 f** Renaissance commonplace (e.g., Macchiavelli); cf. the Earl of Rochester: "Reason, an *ignis fatuus* of the mind, / Which leaves the life of nature's sense behind."

**312** *What'll you bet?* Equivalent of the formulaic phrase of challenge introduced by Luther in translating Job 1, 11; it replaces "and" in the English version of "and he will curse thee to thy face."

**354–807** Time: primarily 16th century (especially 354–85), with some

- 18th-century elements (feeling for landscape; Storm-and-Stress satire in Wagner episode). Pictorial models: Thomas Wyck, *Alchemist's Laboratory*; Rembrandt, *The Astrologer* (an adaptation of the latter was used as frontispiece to *Faust: Ein Fragment*, 1790).
- 360** *Doctor* university professor (with privileges of the nobility).
- 420** *Nostradamus* a French astrologer-prophet and younger contemporary of the historical Faust (here as an alchemist-mystic).
- 434** *signs* symbols of planets and elements.
- 442** *sage* a mystic or mystagogue.
- 446** *roseate dawn* here figurative: a moment favorable for mystic insights.
- 449** *forces* stars, angels.
- 460–513** *Earth Spirit* (Germ. *Erdegeist*) not the alchemical-mystic *anima terrae*, but a symbol of the divine-creative spirit as this manifests itself in terrestrial activity.
- 469–74** unrhymed verse.
- 482** *fearful* overwhelmingly large (in a stage design sketched by Goethe: a colossal Olympian head).
- 737–41, 449–61, 785–807** rhymed chorale (hymn).
- 749–61, 785–96** Pictorial model: Raphael, *The Transfiguration*.
- 808–1177** Time: 16th century (998 plague of 1525), with 18th-century elements in the first folk scene 808–902 (e.g., 862 refers to Russo-Turkish Wars, 1768–74 and 1787–92—in the 16th century the Turkish threat was not so remote). First use in the text of a stage set representing several different places simultaneously.
- 878** *Saint Andrew's night* Nov. 29 (patron saint of the unmarried).
- 1043** *Lily* an acid.
- 1046** *Young Queen* the sublimate produced (the elixir or panacea, the Philosopher's Stone).
- 1178–1529** Time: 16th century (1220 ff. recall Luther's translation of the New Testament, printed 1522).
- 1255** *fire-red eyes* fiery eyes are a striking feature of the dog in the elder Matthäus Merian's *The Devil Appears as a Dog to Cardinal Crescentius* (engraving).
- 1258** *Solomon's Key* collection of spells, incantations, etc.
- 1272** *Spell of the Four* i.e., the four elements Fire, Water, Air, and Earth, here identified with nature spirits.
- 1273** *Salamander* not the mythically incombustible animal, but—in Paracelsus' writings—a being that inhabits fire.
- 1333** *Lord of Flies* (Hebr. *Beelzebub*), *Destroyer* (Satan), *Liar* (Gr.

*diábolos*, slanderer).

**1366** the indestructibility of matter became an accepted principle in the later 18th century (and was scientifically demonstrated, c. 1780, by Lavoisier).

**1447–1505** rhymed (except for two verses).

**1507** *sleep* hypnotic sleep (as of Miranda in *The Tempest*, I, ii, 185–304).

**1530–2072** Time: 16th century (with later elements: 17th-century wigs, 1807; mid-18th century student scene, 1868–2050; ascent in 1783 of the hot-air balloon of the brothers Montgolfier, 2069 f.).

**1607–26** verses of one to four stresses (all but three lines rhymed).

**1705** *its hand may fall* the clock's mechanism—or the clock itself—be broken.

**1712** *doctoral banquet* Goethe at one time planned to write a scene with a comic disputation (traditional at academic celebrations), but the reference now serves only to underscore the fact that the long Easter recess is over—that considerable time has elapsed since the first scene with Mephistopheles.

**1808** *shoes* such patten-like shoes (Ital. *zoccoli*) were fashionable in 16th-century Venice.

**1911** *Collegium Logicum* required introductory lecture course on logic.

**1941** *encheiresis naturae* (18th century GK.-Lat. scientific jargon; the form in the text is accusative) Nature's knack of combining substances so that they are endowed with life (as opposed to products of distillation, crystallization, etc.).

**2000** *jot or tittle* (Germ. *Jota*, the Greek letter *iota*); an allusion to the bitter conflict between Homoiousians and Homoeousians (Eccl. Hist.).

**2048** “Ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil”—Gen. 3, 5 (Vulgate, with *Deus* substituted for the plural *dii*, gods).

**2073–2336** Time: 18th century (the German Holy Roman Empire no longer significant, 2090 ff.; political absolutism questioned, 2211 ff.; effect of electric shock on nervous system—Galvani, 1789—2324 and 2331).

**2113** *witches' sabbath* (Germ. *Blocksberg* = the Brocken, in the Harz Mountains, where the witches' sabbath is held on Walpurgis Night).

**2189** *Rippach* town in which Master Jackass (Germ. *Hans* [sc. *Arsch* or *Dumm*]) was said to live.

**2337–2604** Pictorial models: illustrations in books on witchcraft; David Teniers, the younger, *Witch's Kitchen with Young Apes Playing*

- with a Ball; H. B., *Witch's Kitchen with Apes* (Dresden Gallery—formerly attrib. to Adriaen Brouwer).
- 2369 (cf. 10,121) allusion to rock-formations called Devil's Bridges.
- 2429 ff. Faust presumably sees a nude in the style of Titian, Giorgione, or Paris Bordone.
- 2530 ff. The Witch's preparations are traditional, but the ringing of glasses is a feature of later, 18th-century spiritualist séances (e.g., Cagliostro).
- 2759–82 ballad-like quatrains (rhymed *abab*).
- 3037 *Sancta simplicitas* saintlike naivety.
- 3217–50 blank verse.
- 3318 *her song* an actual folksong (“Were I a little bird, I’d fly to thee”).
- 3337 lilies (Germ. *Rosen*—Luther’s translation of Song. Sol. 4, 5, has “roses”).
- 3374–3413 lyric monologue (except for four lines, rhymed *xaxa*, *xbxb*, etc.).
- 3537 interest in physiognomy (and phrenology—Gall) developed in the second half of the 18th century (cf. n. to 4323).
- 3540 *radical* (Germ. *Genie*) writer of the German Storm-and-Stress period (mid-1770’s).
- 3587–3169 verses of one to four stresses (all but two lines rhymed), with many echoes of the Stabat Mater (particularly popular in the 18th century in the setting for two voices by Pergolesi).
- 3673 *pearls* omens of tears and misfortune.
- 3682–97 folksong motif (cf. Ophelia’s “Tomorrow is Saint Valentine’s day,” *Hamlet*, IV, v, 49–56).
- 3776–3834 The German text is unrhymed (verses of one to six stresses).
- 3788 *agonies* of purgatory (having died, unshriven, in her sleep).
- 3798f., 3813ff., 3825ff. (from the Latin hymn, *Dies Irae*, sung in requiem masses) “The day of wrath shall dissolve this world into ashes. / When therefore the Judge shall take His seat, whatever is hidden shall appear, nothing shall remain unpunished. / What shall I, wretched man, then say? what protector supplicate? when scarcely the just may be secure!”
- 3835–4398 Time: dream-present, with steadily increasing number of allusions to persons and events of the late 18th century. – *Schierke* and *Elend* are towns at the base of the Brocken. – Pictorial models: illustrations in books and broadsides on witchcraft. – Stage set: several different places.



- 3855 *will-o'-the-wisp* ignis fatuus (cf. n. to 285f.).
- 3962 *Baubo* a lewdly amusing nurse in the Greek mysteries of Demeter.
- 3996–4007 the voice of a recidivist (in the Enlightenment the Renaissance and Reformation were regarded as the beginning of modern rationalism).
- 4072–91 untraditional figures (persons disadvantaged by the political and intellectual changes of the late 18th century).
- 4096 *Huckstress-Witch* A huckstress is a figure in Renaissance Italian carnival processions.
- 4144–75 (and 4267–70, 4319–22) Friedrich Nicolai, a life-long exponent of rationalism and prolific author of semi-autobiographical travel books, in 1799 reported his (earlier) cure of hallucinations by use of the treatment described by Mephistopheles.
- 4211 *Prater* a park in Vienna that became a popular fairground in the later 18th century.
- 4223–4398 quatrains (rhymed *abab* except for two that are rhymed *xaxa*). – *Intermezzo* an interlude—comic or satiric—given between the acts of an *opera seria*; here a satiric masque (masquerade). From *Midsummer-Night's Dream* the figures Oberon, Titania, Puck; from *The Tempest*, Ariel.
- 4224 *Mieding* court cabinet-maker who served as stage manager of the Weimar theater until his death in 1782.
- 4227 *Herald* the announcer—and often describer—of figures in a masque or pageant.
- 4259 *Materializing Spirit* grotesque (and “unorganic”) poetry.
- 4271 *Orthodox* an orthodox Christian like Count F. L. von Stolberg, who condemned Schiller for glorifying “The Gods of Greece” in a poem so titled.
- 4275 *Artist* Goethe, who planned a third trip to Italy in 1797; military-political developments, however, made it impractical.
- 4279 *Purist* language-purist, and prude.
- 4295 *Weathervane* backbiting opportunist.
- 4303 *Satiric Verses* (Germ. *Xenien*: title of satiric distichs by Goethe and Schiller published in 1796; they aroused much anger among the butts of the satire—e.g., Hennings, 4307–18).
- 4307 *Hennings* (cf. n. to 4303).
- 4311 *Would-Be Apollo* (Germ. *Musaget*, Gr. *mousagêtes*, Apollo as leader of the Muses—the title of a collection of Hennings’ poems).
- 4315 *Spirit of the Age* (Germ. *Genius der Zeit*) title of a journal edited



- by Hennings that was changed in 1801 to *Genius des 19. Jahrhunderts* (Spirit of the Nineteenth Century).
- 4323** *Crane* J. C. Lavater, Swiss Protestant pastor and leading 18th-century physiognomist (cf. 3537), friend of Goethe in the 1770's and early 1780's whom Goethe later came to distrust.
- 4327** *Worldling* (Germ. *Weltkind*) Goethe's name for himself as a secularist.
- 4331** *group* representatives of various systems or types of philosophy (4343–62).
- 4347** *Idealist* J. G. Fichte or a Fichtean (cf. n. to 6736).
- 4367** *Adroit* those who survive social and political change (beginning with the French Revolution) successfully.
- 4371** *Awkward* *maladroit* French emigrés.
- 4375** *Will-o'-the-Wisps* those who have risen socially as a result of political change.
- 4379** *Shooting Star* a political idealist disillusioned by the actualities of revolution.
- 4383** *Massive* the masses who have not fully adjusted to their new importance.
- 4394** *Hill of Roses* site of the castle of Oberon in C. M. Wieland's verse romance *Oberon* (1780).
- p. 113* *avenger of blood* executioner (cf. Deut. 19, 12). That devils cannot release prisoners magically is traditional folklore.
- 4399–4404** unrhymed.
- 4405–4612** rhymed (except for 18 random verses).
- 4412–20** the song (by Goethe) with its Atreus-like motif is based on a German folktale.
- 4590** *the white rod* a wand broken after the decree of execution has been publicly read.
- 4613–78** rhymed (4613–20, 4634–65 *abab*). *Ariel* (cf. n. to 4223 ff.) and the *Spirits* personify the curative powers of nature and time.
- 4666** *Horae* goddesses of (the orderly passage of) the seasons. Pictorial model: Guido Reni, *Aurora*.
- 4679–727** In terza rima (i.e., pentameters rhymed *aba bcb* etc.)—a verse form used in Italian for epic (e.g., Dante, *Divine Comedy*) and lyric poetry, and in Spanish drama of the Golden Age for lyric monologues (e.g., Calderón, Cervantes).
- 4728–6565** rhymed (when quatrains: *abab* or, occasionally, *abba*). Time: early 16th century (eve of the Reformation).
- 4743–50** Perhaps Mephistopheles' self-introduction (fool as privileged

- critic), perhaps preliminary allusion to Faust as potential savior of the Emperor (cf. 4895 f.).
- 4938 *subsoil* earth below the level reached by a plow (Roman law).
- 4979 f. The shriek of the mandrake root when pulled from the ground was said to be fatal unless the agent used was a black dog.
- 5065–5986 The *Masquerade* is a mixture of carnival masquerade, pageant, and allegorical masques (cf. n. to 4223–4398) staged by Faust, the last of which—the triumph of the Emperor as Pan—ends in a mock-tragic conflagration modeled after a historical incident in the life of Charles VI of France. Almost all the figures who appear are standard types in Italian (Renaissance) carnival processions. For the role of the *Herald*, cf. n. to 4227.
- 5136 *Theophrastus* Greek botanist (pupil of Aristotle).
- 5299 *The Graces* Pictorial model: Andrea Boscoli (drawing).
- 5305 Pictorial model: Primaticcio, *The Three Fates as Youthful Nudes* (a motif occurring without nude figures, e.g., in *The Fates* by Heinrich Meyer, painter-collaborator of Goethe).
- 5357 *Alecto* identified, as traditionally since the Renaissance, with Calumny.
- 5378 *Asmodeus* In Tobit 3, 8 (Apocrypha) the demon who kills the husbands of Sara; here, as in 16th-century German literature, the devil responsible for (marital) discord.
- 5393–5456 The first allegory: Prudence (Italian carnival figure) controls idle fears and vain hopes, permitting Victory (successful activity) to use Power, of which the elephant is a traditional symbol, effectively.
- 5457 *Zoilo-Thersites* the spirit of Mephistophelean anti-heroism and antiidealism: Zoilus, a carping Alexandrian critic of Homer; Thersites, the scurrilous enemy of Achilles and Ulysses in the *Iliad* (and in Shakespeare, *Troilus and Cressida*).
- 5479 Pictorial model: Aldegrevier, *Envy with Snake and Bats*.
- 5494–5708 The second allegory: things of the spirit, including poetry (Boy Charioteer), are not appreciated by a materialistic society (Mephistopheles as Sir Greed; greed of the Crowd). Pictorial model: elements from Mantegna, *The Triumph of Caesar*.
- 5649 *Avarice* traditional carnival (female) figure.
- 5801 *Wild Hunt* spectral hunters of folklore; here, as in heraldry, a group of Salvage (Savage, Wild) Men, who were often figures in masques even in the 18th century.
- 5840 *Gnomes* carnival and masque figures (here: miners).

- 5864 *Men of Great Stature* (Germ. *Riesen*, giants). These were often “Ethiopians.” Pictorial model: Giulio Parigi (engraved by Jacques Callot).
- 5872 *f Pan* Frequent symbol of the ruling prince in Renaissance masques (e.g., of James I in collaborative work of Ben Jonson and Inigo Jones). Pictorial model: Claude Gillet, *Pan with Attendants and Satyrs*.
- 5934 *ff.* Pictorial model: Matthäus Merian, the elder, *Pre-Lenten Fire at the Court of Charles VI* (showing the king’s head and beard in flames). – Mock conflagrations were a popular Renaissance (and later) firework effect.
- 6025 *f. Thetis* a Nereid, mother of Achilles by *Peleus*, king of the Myrmidons.
- 6072 *conjurers* printers (allusion to the long popular identification of Faust with Gutenberg’s associate Fust).
- 6216 *Mothers* despite Graeco-Roman analogues (e.g., Sicilian mother-goddesses), inventions of Mephistopheles (and of Goethe); they allegorize the eternal existence of (insubstantial) forms and ideas. In a conversation recorded by his friend Riemer, Goethe called the Mothers’ realm of solitude a “sphere of dreams and magic” (cf. 3872), an experience of “poetic reverie” in which Faust gains “the Idea of Beauty in the form of Helen.”
- 6259 *key* The key (to Nowhere) is a traditional symbol of (magical) power—here: of Mephistopheles’ hypnotic powers as much as of any power it may lend Faust.
- 6421 *in priestly robe and wreath* Pictorial models: Giuseppe Cesari, *Priest at Altar* (drawing); *Simon Magus* (Assisi fresco, attr. Giunta Pisano).
- 6436 *sorcerer* Faust both as Magus and as Poet staging a pantomimic drama. (Goethe first wrote *Dichter*, poet, which he later changed to *Magier*, magician, sorcerer, magus; the equation is traditional.)
- 6509 *picture* Sebastiano Conca, *Diana and Endymion* (other treatments known to Goethe include those of Guercino, Annibale Carracci, and a Graeco-Roman fresco at Herculaneum).
- 6557 *doubly* as not only created, but also rescued—from Paris—by Faust (i.e., transported from the sphere of the imagination, of the Mothers, into that of tangible realities).
- 6566–10,038 Acts II and III take place on the same night as does the scene Knights’ Hall (cf. 7442, 7990 *f.*)—i.e., in February or March and not, as Mephistopheles will suggest through Homunculus (6940

f.), on the anniversary of the Battle of Pharsalus (Aug. 9, 48 B.C.,—cf. 6955 ff. and 7018).

6566–7004 Rhymed (except for four lines *xaxaxbxb*, 6596 f.). Time: 16th century (with allusions to the 18th century—cf. notes to 6588 and 6736).

6588 *professor* (Germ. *Dozent*, non-tenured professor—introduced as title in the later 18th century).

6634 *Nicodemus* a literal-minded person (cf. John 3, 4).

6635 *Oremus* “Let us pray.”

6736 *with nothing left up there* (Germ. *nicht absolut*) i.e., an adherent of some form of philosophical absolutism, which was often condemned as atheistic by the religiously orthodox—possibly that of Fichte (cf. n. to 4347), in which the Absolute Ego is God.

6879 *Homunculus* since antiquity an artificially produced diminutive man supposed to have great learning and magical powers. (Goethe said that the voice in the vial was to be projected ventriloqually—presumably here by Mephistopheles, since in this scene the homunculus seems to be the latter’s spokesman.) Pictorial model: Pretorius-Illustrator, *Homo lunaris* (1666), and illustrators of books with bottle-imps (e.g., Le Sage’s *Le Diable boiteux*).

6864 *crystallized* allusion to folklore accounts of Stone-people.

6903 ff. Description in style of Ariosto and his imitators. Pictorial models: Correggio, Michelangelo, etc.

6951 *southeast* to Thessaly.

6953 *Peneus* chief river of Thessaly.

6955 *Pharsalus* city in Thessaly (site of Pompey’s defeat by Caesar, 48 B.C.—cf. 6957 and 7018 ff.).

6961 *Asmodeus* cf. n. to 5378.

6978 *Thessalian witches* the most famous witches of classical Greek folklore.

6994 *to dot the i’s* to obtain substantial existence (like that which Faust has vowed Helen shall have).

6997 f. traditional benefits of the Philosopher’s Stone (cf. n. to 1046).

7005–8487 *Classical Walpurgisnight* (cf. n. to 6566–10,038). Time is magically suspended. – Two stage sets (7005–8033 and 8034–8487), each representing several different places.

7005–39 Unrhymed (iambic trimeter, i.e., lines of six iambs without a marked caesura—the verse of dialogue in Attic tragedy). *Pharsalian Fields* are at first the battle field near Pharsalus, then other parts of the Thessalian Plain, which extends from the Pindus Mountains

- eastward to the Aegean Sea, and of Macedonia (cf. n. to 7463–68). *Erichtho* is the most famous Thessalian witch (cf. Lucanus' epic, *Pharsalia*).
- 7018 *battle* cf. 6955 ff. and note.
- 7077 *Antaeus's strength* depended on contact with the earth (his mother, Ge); a giant, he was slain by Hercules, who lifted him off the ground.
- 7083 *Griffins* half lion, half eagle.
- 7104 *Giant Ants* according to Greek folklore, as large as foxes.
- 7106 *Aramasps* one-eyed Scythian enemies of the Giant Ants.
- 7107 *how far* to Scythia.
- 7198 *slain by Hercules* a "labor" of Hercules invented by Goethe.
- 7199 *Chiron* a medically skilled centaur and teacher-sage whose most famous pupil was Achilles.
- 7210 *restrained by ropes* Homer, *Odyssey*, Bk. XII. Pictorial models: Pietro da Cortona, Annibale Carracci.
- 7220 *Stymphalian birds* the Stymphalides, man-eating birds with iron beaks and talons, slain by Hercules.
- 7227 *Hydra* serpent-monster slain by Hercules.
- 7235 *Lamiae* vampire-like ghosts.
- 7249 *Peneus* the god of the river, 6953.
- 7276 *once before* cf. 9603–20.
- 7277–312 No pictorial source, since Leda is not seen; the landscape suggests that in Leonardo da Vinci's treatments of Leda and the Swan.
- 7342 *doesn't do so well* Despite the help of Pallas Athena, who takes the form of Mentor, Telemachus' tutor, Telemachus' search for his father Ulysses is a failure (*Odyssey*).
- 7371 *Boreiads* sons of Boreas (the North Wind), hence winged warriors helpful to the Argonauts in fighting the Harpies.
- 7377 *Lynceus* (cf. Gk. *lýgkeios*, lynx-like) proverbial for his keen sight; hence 9218 ff. and 11, 143 ff. as name of a lookout or watchman.
- 7381 Hercules was an emblem of the model prince in Renaissance art (especially in France).
- 7403 f. for the commonplace, cf. Milton, *Paradise Lost*, IV, 844f.
- 7405–25 Chiron's assistance to Castor and Pollux in the Eleusian swamps near Athens when they rescue Helen from Theseus is Goethe's (Faust's) invention.
- 7434 ff. *Pherae* the Thessalian city to which Alcestis was returned after Hercules (Faust's "handsomest man," 7397) rescued her from



Hades. – The shades of Helen and Achilles were joined in marriage on Leuce (an island in the Black Sea sacred to Achilles), where a son Euphorion (cf. 9599, 9695 ff.) was born to them.

7450 f *Manto* daughter of the Theban soothsayer Tiresias and herself a prophetess, is here instead given Aesculapius, the god of medicine, as father, and is endowed with medical skill. (Her temple in Greece was at Delphi.)

7463–68 *place* Pydna (in Macedonia, just north of Thessaly), site of the battle in which the last Macedonian king was defeated (168 B.C.) by Roman legions under generalship of the Roman consul Aemilius Paulus.

7491 *Olympus* the mountain lies on the border between Thessaly and Macedonia (between Pydna and the Thessalian border).

7493 Goethe's (Faust's) invention.

7519 ff. *Seismos*. Earthquakes and emerging mountains on which vegetation appears were common theatrical effects in Renaissance masques. Pictorial models: Raphael cartoon and tapestry, *St. Paul Freed from Prison by an Earthquake*; Giulio Romano, *Fountain as a Giant*.

7533 ff. *Delos*, originally a floating island, was supposedly raised from the deep by Poseidon and subsequently anchored by Zeus to provide a secure resting place on which Leto could give birth to Apollo and Artemis. (Goethe—or Faust—conflates two myths and gives them a new protagonist.)

7562 ff. The ballgame is an invention of Goethe or Faust; the mountains were piled not on Parnassus, but on Olympus, by Giants seeking to scale heaven.

7622 *Dactyls* a race of metalworkers, here identified with Tom Thumb-like dwarfs (Gk. *dáktylos*, finger).

7646–53 In Greek myth the Cranes are enemies of the Pygmies because the latter have stolen their eggs; here Goethe or Faust invents a new motivation of the enmity.

7660 *The Cranes of Ibycus* legendary symbols of retributive justice (of guilt incautiously revealed—theme of ballad with this title by Schiller).

7680 ff. allusions to places in the Harz Mountains (cf. n. to 3835–4398).

7732 *Empusa* a protean vampire (whose power of metamorphosis is transferred paramythically by Goethe or Faust—7766–90—to the Lamiae).

7813 *Pindus* the Thessalian mountain range.

7836 *philosophers* Thales (d. 546 B.C.), who regarded Water as the First Principle, and Anaxagoras (d. 430 B.C.), who gave great importance to Air (here arbitrarily equated with Fire, which in *Faust* is a Mephistophelean element); the former represents Neptunism, gradual evolution, and conservatism; the latter, Vulcanism and impatient radicalism. (Neptunists were geologists who held that the major force in determining the earth's features was water; Vulcanists attributed more importance to subterranean fire.)

7855 Anaxagoras is said to have held that rocks represented condensed fire-vapors.

7873 *Myrmidons* here: the Giant Ants. (Myrmidon, a son conceived by Zeus when disguised as an ant, was the mythical ancestor of the Thessalian race, the Myrmidons.)

7914 *f. disc* not the moon, but a meteor.

7967 *The Phorcides* The Graiae (Phorcydes, Phorkyads, *sing.* Phorkyas) were sisters of the Gorgons (and hence of Medusa).

7989 *Ops and Rhea* Roman and Greek goddesses of fertility, usually considered identical.

8034–487 Water pageants were frequently used in Renaissance and Baroque masques.

8051 *ff.* Pictorial model (for bejeweled Nereids): Dürer, *The Rape of Amymone*.

8074 *Cabiri* minor deities of Samothrace whose form and significance were much disputed by German-romantic mythologists.

8082 *Nereus* sea-god, father of the Nereids, and famous for his prophetic wisdom.

8121 *Pindus' eagles* (cf. 7813) Thessalian warriors—the victorious Greeks—who have gained Troy.

8137 *the Graces of the sea, whom Doris gave me* (Germ.... *die Doriden*, Engl. *Nereids*) daughters by Doris.

8140 *ff.* Pictorial model: Raphael, *The Triumph of Galatea*.

8146 *Cypria* Aphrodite (as worshiped at Paphos on Cyprus), who has long since ceased to be a marine deity (although she was born of the sea).

8152 *Proteus* prophetic sea-god who could assume different shapes (in the Renaissance a common symbol of Nature).

8170 *Chelone's giant buckler* the shell of (a nymph who was changed into) a tortoise; shell-shaped boats were often used in water pageants.

- 8275** *Telchines* metal-workers at Rhodes, credited with forging Neptune's trident and the colossal statue of the sun-god Helios.
- 8343** *Paphos* town on Cyprus celebrated for its temple of Aphrodite—cf. n. to 8146.
- 8359** *Psylli and Marsi* tribes famous for their reptile lore (*Psylli*, Libyan dwarfs; *Marsi*, an early Italian people); here, Cyprian attendants of Galatea, the new Cypria. – Snake charmers and snakebite healers were figures in Italian Renaissance carnivals.
- 8371 f.** *Eagle ... Crescent* symbols of successive Roman, Venetian, Crusader, and Turkish sovereignty over Cyprus.
- 8424** *Galatea ... on her conch* Pictorial models: Raphael (cf. 8140), Domenico Feti, Annibale Carracci, L. Backhuyzen, F. Albani, etc.
- 8466 ff.** water “on fire” was a popular pageant-effect from the Renaissance on.
- 8488–10,038** Three stage sets, but no pause in the action. Many echoes of Homer and of Attic tragedy, especially of the plays of Euripides. (The placing of the Chorus on the stage is ancient-Roman, not Greek, theatrical practice, however.)
- 8488–9191** Unrhymed verse: iambic trimeter (cf. n. to 7005–39) alternating with ode-strophes and, occasionally, trochaic tetrameters (cf. n. to 8909).
- 8492** *Euros* Eurus, the southeast wind.
- 8493** *Phrygia* The area of Asia Minor in which Troy is located.
- 8498** *Pallas' Hill* Athens (as here translated); the German text of 8497 f. can also be read to mean: erected by Tyndareos near the slope of this hill sacred to Pallas Athena on his return (sc. from Aetolia in Asia Minor, where he married Leda).
- 8511** *Cytherea's shrine* the temple of Venus on Cythera (in the Ionian Sea, south of Sparta), the site of “The Rape of Helen” in the scene Knights' Hall.
- 8539** *Eurotas* chief river of Laconia (not navigable); Sparta lies inland on it.
- 8547** *Lacedaemon* founding king of Sparta (hence also called Lacedaemon).
- 8564 ff.** Renaissance conceit.
- 8677** Pictorial model: the figure Sleep of Michelangelo's *Medici Tomb* (Florence).
- 8704** *Discord* the goddess Eris.
- 8763** *Orcus* Hades.
- 8812** *Erebus* Darkness (son of Chaos).



- 8813 *Scylla* here the Homeric monster with six heads.
- 8851 *Aphidnus* A fortified town in Attica held by a friend of Theseus.
- 8855 *Pelides* Achilles, son of Peleus and friend of Patroclus.
- 8873 in both *Ilium* and *Egypt* The legend that the “real” Helen was transported by Mercury to Egypt, leaving Paris with a double, is the premise of Euripides’ *Helen*.
- 8876 ff. cf. note to 7435 ff.
- 8888 classicistic paraphrase of “(ravening wolves) in sheep’s clothing” (Matt. 7, 15), imitative of Renaissance Latin poetry on biblical themes (Vida, Sannazaro, etc.).
- 8909–29 Verse: trochaic tetrameter (eight trochees, often without the last unstressed syllable, and usually with a caesura after the fourth trochee); occasionally shortened in later passages to four trochees (e.g., 8970) with omission of the unstressed syllable of the fourth trochee.
- 8928 f. The fate of the twelve women-servants of Penelope whose conduct was dishonorable (*Odyssey*, XXII).
- 8996 *Taygetus* (Tāygētūs) a mountain range west of Sparta, extending southward from the frontier of Arcadia.
- 9014 *heroes* Achilles (*Iliad*, XXII. 346 ff.) expressing his hatred of the dying Hector.
- 9020 *Cyclopean* using irregular stone blocks without mortar (primitive Greek).
- 9135 *Pythoness* wise woman, soothsayer (in the Vulgate *pythonissa* is a witch; cf. Exod. 22, 18, and—for the witch of Endor—1 Sam. 28, 7).
- 9162 ff. allusion to the apple of Sodom (Dead Sea apple).
- 9170 ff. Pictorial models (for the canopy borne above Helen’s head): painters of the Venetian school; Correggio, *Madonna of St. Francis*.
- 9192–376 Faust and Helen speak in blank verse.
- 9218–45 Verse: quatrains (rhymed *abba*—in Spanish drama of the Golden Age: *redondillas*). *Lynceus* (cf. n. to 7377).
- 9273–332 Verse: quatrains (rhymed *aabb*).
- 9346–55 Verse: rhymed couplets.
- 9411–18 Verse: rhymed couplets.
- 9419–34 Verse: rhymed
- 9435–41 Verse: iambic trimeter.
- 9442–81 Verse: quatrains (rhymed *abab*).
- 9454 *Pylos* harbor-city on the west coast of the Peloponnesus.
- 9467–77 the provinces of the Peloponnesus (the capital Sparta represents Laconia).

- 9506–73 Verse: quatrains (rhymed *abab*).
- 9509 *center* Arcadia, the mountainous region north of Sparta.
- 9511 *almost-island* (Germ. *Nichtinsel*, non-island) The Peloponnesus—literally: Pelops’ island—is a peninsula connected to mainland Greece by the isthmus of Corinth).
- 9538 *Pan* as originally, an Arcadian deity of flocks and shepherds.
- 9573 *Arcadian* idyllic (post-classical idealization of the harsh simplicity of life in Arcadia).
- 9574 Pictorial model (of stage set): paintings of Poussin.
- 9578 *bearded elders* the exclusively male spectators of the ancient Greek theater.
- 9587 *idyllic* as in love idylls of epic romances.
- 9594 *f.* belief in the possibility of a subterranean world was widely held well into the 19th century.
- 9603 Pictorial model: Raphael, in the Vatican *Stanze*.
- 9611 *Antaeus* cf. n. to 7077.
- 9619 *f.* Pictorial models: Annibale Carracci, *The Genius of Fame*; Guido Reni, *Aurora*.
- 9644 *son of Maia* Hermes (Mercury).
- 9679–938 Rhymed verse (quatrains, couplets, opera libretto-like shorter lines, and—finally—*ababcdcd* stanzas).
- 9826 *Pelops’ island* cf. n. to 9511.
- 9901 *Icarus* traditional symbol of imprudence. Pictorial model: Cornells Corneliesz.
- 9902 the *well-known figure* of the stage direction is Lord Byron, who had died in 1824 at Missolonghi (on the coast of the Greek mainland north of the Peloponnesus) as a commander in the Greek army fighting for independence from Turkey.
- 9939–44 Verse: iambic trimeter.
- 9945–54 Blank verse.
- 9955–61 Verse: rhymed.
- 9962–91 Verse: iambic trimeter and strophes.
- 9992–10,038 Verse: trochaic tetrameter. The four parts of the Chorus become respectively Dryads, Oreads (and Echo Nymphs), Naiads, and Vineyard Nymphs, corresponding to the elements Earth, Air, Water, and Fire. Pictorial models: Poussin, Giulio Romano, Annibale Carracci, Claude Gillot, Daniel Höpfer (for the Dryads: also Hans Bol; and for the Vineyard Nymphs: also H. van Balen).
- 10,039–10,782 Stage set representing a variety of locations.
- 10,039–66 Faust still speaks in unrhymed verse (iambic trimeter; this

- is the last passage of unrhymed verse in *Faust*). Time: again the 16th century.
- 10,061 *image of love's dawn* a cloud looking like Margarete.
- 10,092 *princes of the air* cf. Eph. 2, 2 ("the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience").
- 10,094 cf. also Eph. 5, 12 f.
- 10,131 cf. Matt. 4, 8.
- 10,176 *Sardanapalus* ancient Assyrian tyrant and voluptuary (subject of a tragedy by Byron).
- 10,212–17 echo of Vergil, *Aeneid*, XI. 624–28.
- 10,284 cf. Ps. 85, 10 f. (motto of 16th and 17th century Papal coins).
- 10,304 In the Faust legend, Faust's magic is supposed to have helped the Emperor Charles V win an Italian campaign.
- 10,321 *Peter Quince* the organizer of the miserable amateur actors in *A Midsummer-Night's Dream*.
- 10,424 *prevision* foresight, preparedness (Lat. *providentia*, a word in the mottos of Trajan and the Emperor Maximilian I).
- 10,439 *Norcia* town near the northern end of the Sabine Hills, which were the Roman equivalent of Thessaly as a center of witchcraft.
- 10,488 *footstool* cf. Ps. 110, 1.
- 10,531 *Quickloot* (Germ. *Eilebeute*, Luther's translation of the second part of the Hebrew name in Is. 8, 1.).
- 10,547 ff. Phantom armies occur in W. Rowley's play *The Birth of Merlin* and in Calderonian drama—e.g., *La aurora en Copacabana*.
- 10,600 *a light the Dioscuri cast* St. Elmo's fire was regarded in ancient Greek folklore as an emanation of the spirits of Castor and Pollux.
- 10,624 f. Pictorial model: Giuseppe Cesari, *Roman Battle*.
- 10,719 ff. a popular stage effect (especially in masques and pageants).
- 10,849–11,042 Verse: alexandrine couplets (six iambs, with a caesura—normally—after the third iamb).
- 10,873–976 The honorific offices here created by the Emperor were actually established by the imperial Golden Bull of 1356; there were four secular and three clerical Princes Elector; one of the latter held the Arch-Chancellorship.
- 11,043–142 quatrains (rhymed or assonating *abab*).
- 11,059 and 11,069 *Baucis and Philemon* in classical mythology an aged Phrygian woman and her husband, rewarded for entertaining Zeus and Hermes traveling in disguise (and granted their wish that they might die simultaneously of old age); here, symbols of hospitable helpfulness. Pictorial models: Adam Elsheimer; Matthäus Merian,

the elder; J. W. Baur.

[11,143–843](#) Stage set with view into Faust's palace; continuous time.

[11,143](#) *Lynceus* cf. n. to 7377. – Pictorial models: harbor scenes of Claude Lorrain; baroque gardens with canals or lagoons (and the canal of Pope Pius VI in reclaimed Pontine marshes).

[11,167](#) *Three Mighty Men* civilian counterparts of the trio of 10,323.

[11,171 ff.](#) Pictorial model: Corneille de Wael, *Unloading the Galley* (in his series of engravings, *The Galley Slaves*).

[11,308 ff.](#) Pictorial models: Netherlandish artists specializing in conflagration scenes (e.g., Jan van der Heyden).

[11,384 f.](#) cf. Milton, *Paradise Lost*, IX. 12f.

[11,512](#) *Lemures* Roman nocturnal spirits (of the dead), represented in art—e.g., a bas-relief found near Cumae—as skeletons held together by mortuary wrappings and mummified sinews; here: supernatural grave-diggers.

[11,531–38](#) and [11,604–11](#) cf. *Hamlet*, V, i, 67ff. (song of First Clown, digging Ophelia's grave).

[11,594](#) cf. John 19, 30.

[11,644](#) *hell-mouth* (still used as late as the 17th century in masques) Pictorial models: cemetery frescos, Pisa; Taddeo Gaddi; Michelangelo; Luca Signorelli; etc.

[11,647](#) *Flaming City* Dis, not the god, but the city of that name in Dante's *Inferno*, VIII, 65–81.

[11,662](#) *my mark* cf. Rev. 19, 20.

[11,699 ff.](#) Pictorial models: Luca Signorelli, *Angels Strewing Roses* (fresco, Orvieto); Lodovico Carracci, *The Miracle of the Roses*.

[11,716](#) *bellows-devils* fire-spewing demons of Germanic folklore and statuary using such figures.

[11,809](#) cf. Job 2, 7.

[11,844 ff.](#) Single stage-set; time overlap ([11,934](#) continues from [11,824](#)). Pictorial models: Taddeo Gaddi, *Thebaian Hermits* (frescos, Pisa); Roelant Savery; Titian (?), *St. Jerome*; etc.

[11,854](#) *Pater Ecstaticus* title of various saints; here, a religious enthusiast and mystic.

[11,866](#) *Pater Profundus* title of St. Bernard of Clairvaux; here, a somewhat earth- and sense-bound hermit.

[11,890](#) *Pater Seraphicus* title of St. Francis of Assisi; here, a hermit and saint concerned with the welfare of others.

[11,890 ff.](#) Pictorial model: Correggio (cupola frescos in the cathedral of Parma.)

- 11,898** *born at midnight* reference to the popular belief that those born at midnight die in infancy.
- 11,956** *even cremated* (Germ. *wär' er von Asbest*, even if he were of asbestos) not to be purified by fire.
- 11,989** *Doctor Marianus* a hermit dedicated to the cult of (the Virgin) Mary, mother of Jesus and hence Mother of God.
- 11,994 f.** the constellation Virgo (the Virgin).
- 12,032** *Mater Gloriosa* the Virgin in Glory. Pictorial models: Titian, *Ascension of the Virgin*; Murillo, *La Immaculata*; etc.
- 12,037** *Magna Peccatrix* “the greatly sinful woman” in the eyes of Simon, the Pharisee. Pictorial models: Michelangelo; Rembrandt; L. Cranach, the elder; Correggio; Annibale Carracci; Guido Reni; Carlo Dolci; Poussin; etc.
- 12,045** *Mulier Samaritana* the woman of Samaria.
- 12,053** *Maria Aegyptica* former prostitute who was supernaturally prevented from entering the Church of the Holy Sepulcher and therefore did forty years’ penance in the desert where, as she died, she wrote in the sand a request that her father confessor pray for her soul. Pictorial model: Tintoretto (Venice, Scuola di S. Rocco).
- 12,104** *mysticus* mystic (the Latin avoids negative connotations—e.g., of mystifying obfuscation—of the German equivalent *mystisch*).
- 12,110** *Woman, eternally* (Germ. *das Ewig-Weibliche*, often translated “the Eternal Feminine”).